

[Standard copyrights and disclaimer.](#)



# Ropers Knots Page ()



The knot site on real knots in rope.

## What are the recent changes of the Roper Site ??

990825 [Breast plates](#). Some fancy knots. Because you want them so much. **NEW! NEW!**

## The Web Knot index

[A](#) [B](#) [C](#) [D](#) [E](#) [F](#) [G](#) [H](#) [I](#) [J](#) [K](#) [L](#) [M](#) [N](#) [O](#) [P](#) [Q](#) [R](#) [S](#) [T](#) [U](#) [V](#) [W](#) [X](#) [Y](#) [Z](#)

## Instruction Pages



[Stoppers](#) Terminal Knots  
Overhand-knot, (Flemish)eight and more



[bends](#) To bend two lines together.  
Reef-Knot, Sheet-Bend, Carrick-Bend, True-Lover's, and more



[Hitches](#) To tie on an object.  
Timber Hitch, Constrictor, The Eight, and more..



[Single Loops](#)  
Bowline, Bowstring, and more...



[The Noose](#)  
The running bowline, hangman, and more..



[Frequently Asked Knots.](#)  
The monkey fist, Dolly (trucker-hitch).



[Breast plates.](#)  
Some Fancy work



[Links to other knot sites](#)  
.At the base of realknots



[Books on Knots on the Web](#)  
Ashley, Klutz and more



[Links to pages with links to Roper's pages](#)  
. For finding people with the same interests..

---

## News in the knotting world

The newsgroup [rec.crafts.knots](mailto:rec.crafts.knots) is on line. And (perhaps also thanks to your support) I am able to join this news group!

---

## On Ropers Knot Site

If you like it you can [subscribe](#) to mail notification on major changes. (about once a fortnight.)

Ropers Knot Site is optimized for fast loading, even for non high performance connections. This to make it possible to enjoy the art of knotting all over the WEB.

Not all the knots are safe for children to play with. You can access Ropers knot pages also via [bonus.com](http://bonus.com) which blocks all unsafe links, also those to the nooses, but needs a high performance browser and connection. (Sorry).

For the next year (or two) there will be no fancy knotting in the [instruction part](#) of Ropers Knot Site.

Other knot sites on the web are listed in [Roper's Link Page](#). If you found one or made one I missed, please [let me know](#).

---

## Subscribe

**If you register your e-mail address you will get a mail each time I make an update in this site.**

(You will be asked to retype it by the URL minder)

**Your complete Internet e-mail address (user@domain):**

---

## Awards



Because I am proud of my awards I will show them.  
Because I am proud of the number of supporting mail that thank me for fast loading, I will keep them small.



[Rating 3](#) (of 5) from [Clearinghouse](#). December '96



Editor's choice from [Bonus](#) The super site for kids. February '97



[Rating 4](#) (of 4) from and [reviewed](#) by [Equipped To Survive](#) In June '97

[A review](#) from YPN: Home & Family: Hobbies: Knotting



[Safe site](#) rated by [RSACi](#) In August 97.



[Rating 3](#) (of 5) from and [reviewed](#) by [Web-magazine](#) In December '97

[A review from the New York Times](#) A Virtual Helping Hand For Tying Up Loose Ends . July '98

---

Any comment, suggestions, anything mail me:  *qqqq*

*at realknots.com with subject "question"*

All mail without thr right subject is flussed unred.  
automaticly.

I am sorry I had to remove the mail link. The mailgrabbers  
and spammers won. But.... I have a few hidden mail address  
for them to mail to each other after they grabbed it.

.....

I can and will not allow junk mail nor spam. Therefor commercial, non-personal and bulk mail will be charged with handling costs of \$100 per mail.



[Standard copyrights and disclaimer.](#)



Search  
the  
Helpware  
Member

This is not an official document of the organization, sponsors, officers, employees, or individual members that are included on the homepages or web pages. It is the sole work and responsibility of the homepage or web page maintainer who can be reached at *webmaster at realknots.com* with subject **FROM DISCLAIMER**. The homepage or web page maintainer is not responsible for errors, omissions, accuracy, or use of the information presented herein. The homepage or web page maintainer is not responsible for the contents found in links to other URL's and other sites. Please honor all copyrights and acknowledge the work of others whether or not it is requested to do so in the materials. **All original work of the homepage or web page maintainer where applicable is copyrighted (Copyright© 1996/1997) under the laws of the Netherlands of Europe and under the international applicable laws. All Rights Reserved.** It is expressly understood that the homepage or web page maintainer intends that all of the information presented herein is solely for non-commercial or educational purposes and will not be used by others for commercial purposes. **Distribution of the information in whole or in part for commercial or unlawful purposes is strictly prohibited.**

**DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTIES:** The homepage or web page maintainer, and any representatives, **makes no warranty, express or implied, including, but not limited to, the warranties of merchantability, fitness for a particular purpose, and freedom from infringement**, nor assumes any legal liability or responsibility, for the accuracy, completeness, or usefulness of any information, apparatus, product, or process disclosed, in any of these materials. The homepage or web page maintainer, and any representatives, specifically disclaims any other warranties, guarantees, and promises, whether or not stated in full in this document.

The homepage or web page maintainer can not make any guarantees or promises as to the accuracy, timelines, or quality of information that is provided on these web pages or to links to other web pages or sources of information.

**IDENTIFICATION OF INDIVIDUALS AND ORGANIZATIONS:** If any individuals or organizations do not want their names or identities used in any of these materials, they must immediately notify the homepage or web page maintainer by E-mail at *webmasters at realknots.com* with subject **REMOVE KNOT LINK** that they do not want to be identified in the manner that appears in these web pages for which the homepage or web page maintainer is responsible for maintaining. However, the homepage or web page maintainer is not responsible for any liability and damages, in any form, whether foreseeable or not, including consequential damages, for revealing the identities of any individual or organizations, in any manner.

I am sorry to state the mail addresses in words. Automated mailgrabbers made this neccesserry. So if I state to mail to a at b you mail to a@b. All mail with other subjects as stated in the pages will be flushed unred.

Return to [Ropers Knot Page](#)

# Touwslager's Knopen Pagina



De knopen site met echte knopen.

## Wat zijn de meest recente wijzigingen op deze site ??

De engelse knopen index

[A](#) [B](#) [C](#) [D](#) [E](#) [F](#) [G](#) [H](#) [I](#) [J](#) [K](#) [L](#) [M](#) [N](#) [O](#) [P](#) [Q](#) [R](#) [S](#) [T](#) [U](#) [V](#) [W](#) [X](#) [Y](#) [Z](#)



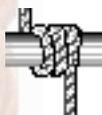
### [Knopen aan een eind](#)

Overhandsknoop, (Vlaamse)acht



### [Knopen om touwen aan elkaar te knopen](#)

Platte Knoop, Schootsteek, Karaak steek, Zoeteliefjes en meer...



### [Knopen om touw aan iets anders vast te maken](#)

Mastworp, Constrictor, De acht, en meer..



### [Enkele Lussen](#)

Paalsteek, Boogpees knoop, en meer..



### [De Schuifknoop](#)

De lopende paalsteek, beulsknoop, en meer..



### [Links naar andere knopen-sites](#)



### [Books on Knots on the Web](#)

Ashley, Klutz en meer



### [Links naar pagina's met links naar \(Touwslager's\) Roper's pagina's](#)

---

## Nieuws uit de knopen wereld

De nieuwsgroep [rec.crafts.knots](mailto:rec.crafts.knots) is on line.

Ik heb weer hulp van een corrector. De nederlandse versie van de site zal daarom weer groeien.

---

## Over Touwslagers Knopen site.

Als je wilt kan je je [abonneren](#) op een mailbericht na wezenlijke wijzigingen in deze site.  
(ongeveer eens per veertien dagen.)

Touwslagers Knopen Site is geoptimaliseerd om snel te laden, ook op niet al te beste verbindingen.  
Dit maakt het voor iedereen mogelijk om van deze knopen te genieten.

Niet alle knopen zijn veilig voor kinderen om mee te spelen. Daarom heeft [bonus.com](http://bonus.com) deze site voor kinderen opgenomen. Alle "gevaarlijke" links zijn daarin geblokkeerd. Helaas heb je daar wel een krachtige processor en snelle verbinding voor nodig.

De komende paar jaar zullen er geen sierknopen worden opgenomen in het [instructie deel](#) van Touwslagers Knopen Site.

Andere knopen sites zijn te vinden via [Roper's Link Page](#). Als je wat gevonden hebt wat daarin thuis hoort terwijl het er niet staat, [laat het even weten](#).

---

**Als je hier je e-mail adres registreert krijg je bericht per mail telkens als er een update van deze site geweest is.**

(De URL minder vraagt nogmaals om je e-mail adres ter verificatie.)

**Je complete Internet e-mail adres (user@domain):**

---

Commentaar, ideeën, suggesties mail me:  *qqqq at realknots.com with subject "question"*

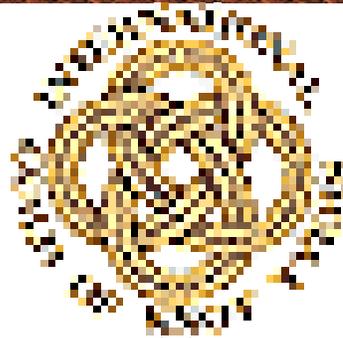
Alle mail zonder het juiste onderwerp worden automatisch, ongelezen weggemikt..

Het spijt me dat ik de mail link weg heb moeten halen. De Mailgrabbers hebben gewonnen.

Maar.... Ik heb een paar verborgen mail adresjes opgenomen zodat ze elkaar plat kunnen spammen nadat ze mijn "junk"gegrabbed hebben....

.....

Omdat dit een niet commerciële site is kan en wil ik geen junk-mail of "spam" behandelen. Daarom behoud ik mij het recht voor om voor niet persoonlijke mail, bulk-mail en andere reclame uitingen f250,- afhandelings-kosten PER mail in rekening te brengen.



Deze Site wordt gesponsord door: even nog door niemand



(96/02/02)

# Breast Plate Designs



to make and wear . . . . .

Brian E.Fields made a booklet : "Breast Plate designs." Because I liked it and because there was a great demand for fancy knots I aksed and got permission to publish a part of this work on the WEB.

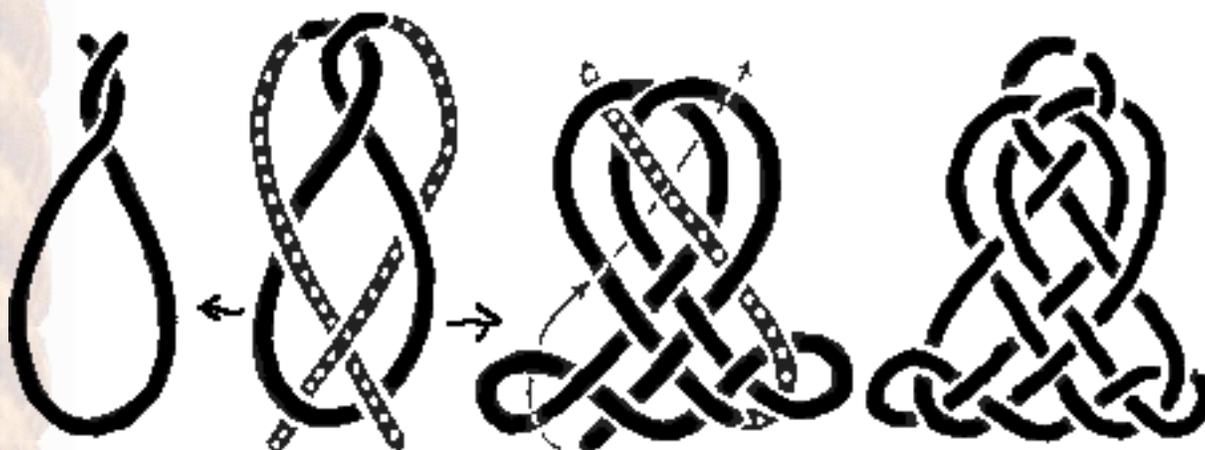
If you like it and want the complete booklet you can find detailed information on how to buy it on [The IGKT store](#)

In the booklet you will find about 20 breast plates and about 5 mats. On this page you find a sample of 5 breastplates from his booklet.

These breastplates are small enough to be tied in the hand, but if you have ten thumbs, by all means use a board and pins.

A nine feet, three meter, fathom and a half lenght of two mm line is sufficient to make and double all these designs and form the neck loop. When tieng a knot start in the middle of the line and work with one end and then the other.

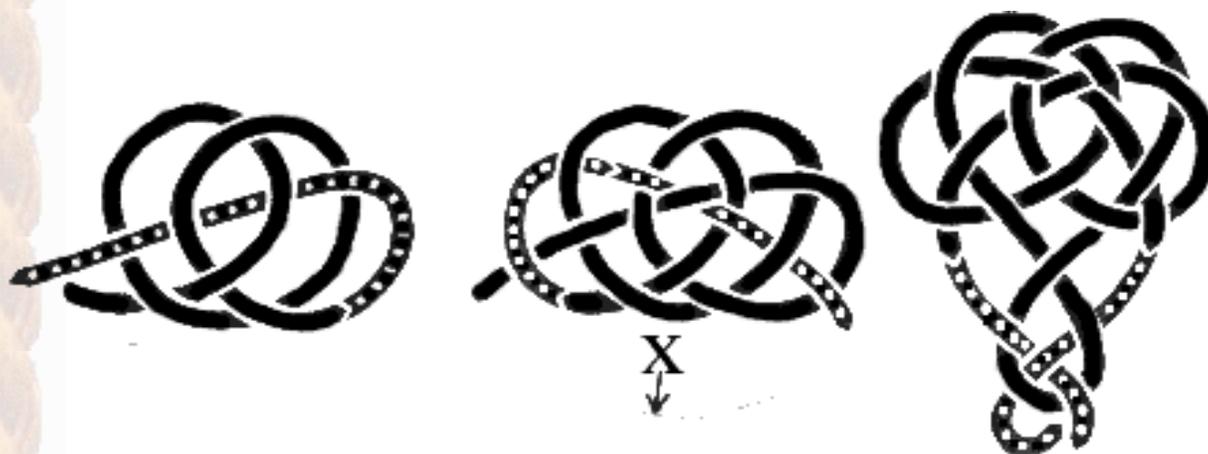
## The Bell



Start with a twist .. and lock it in position aby using the ends (see diagram right). Extend the bottom loop in the directions shown by the arrows.

The extended bottom loop is twisted to produce a locked bight on either side and these bights are held in position by passing the right side end as shown and then using the left end to lock and finish the knot.

# Double Headed Carrick



Start with two interlinked half hitches and pass one end as shown.

The second end may now be passed in a regular over and under weave to

complete the first part of the knot. Next work slack around the to extend bight x which is then twisted to lock.

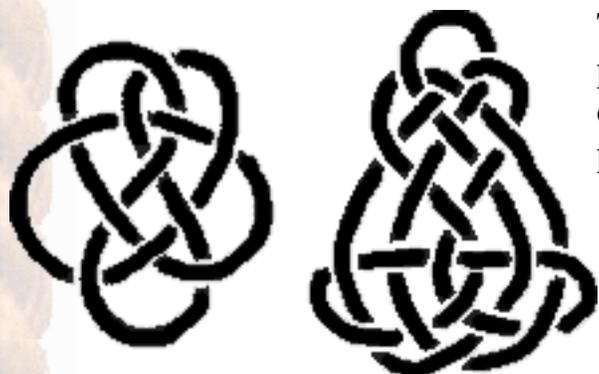
The working ends are then used to lock the twisted bight in position and the knot is ready for doubling.

# Handcuff Hitch Breasplate



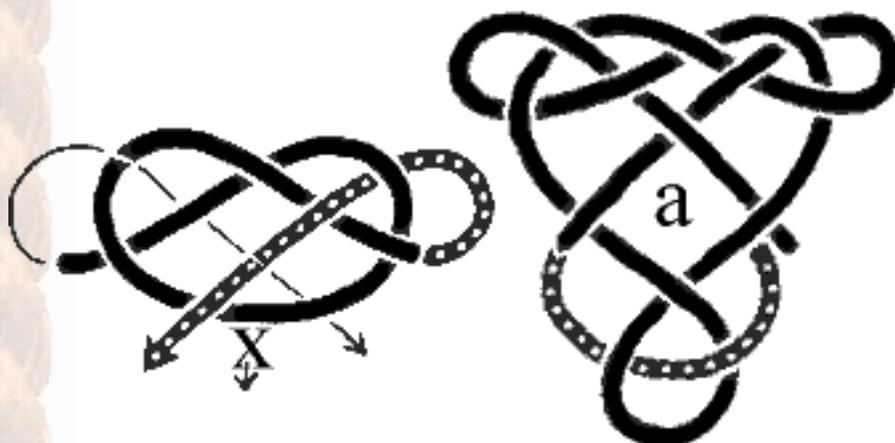
Start with a half knot and lengthen the two bights. Twist the bights to lock them (this will produce a regular over and under weave). Lay one bight over the other (check that the sequence is correct by examining the rectangle r) Take one end and lock the bights as shown.

Arrange the doubling so that both ends finish at x ~ this is the top loop of the knot.



The finished design is small but does form a basis for other patterns such as the design on the right. How to develop one from the other is your problem! (Solved on the next page in the booklet.)

# Mors du Cheval (second Method)



Start with two bights (unlocked half knot) and lock by passing the ends as shown. Extend bight x. Twist the extended bight so as to lock it, (check the rectangle a. just to make sure the twist was correct), and pass the end as shown to complete the knot. Double (or preferably treble).

I believe this must have been the method used by the Viking who made

the Bornhol pendant (dated 800ac-100 ac). He worked with three strands of wire rather than face the problems of trebling, and the work hardening that would inevitably affect the wire when bent as often as required by the tripling technique.

## D-N



Start with Mors du Cheval (see previous knot) and extend the two center bottom bights. Twist these extended bights to lock them and place one over the other, as shown.

The working ends are then passed as shown in a regular over and under weave to lock and complete the knot.

Its not quite a 'Tribulation', but it was still a d--- n--- work out ~ hence the title.



Any comment, suggestions, anything mail me:  **qqqq**  
*at realknots.com with subject "question"*

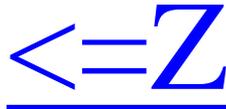
All mail without thr right subject is flussed unred.  
automaticly.

I am sorry I had to remove the mail link. The mailgrabbers  
and spammers won. But.... I have a few hidden mail address  
for them to mail to each other after they grabbed it.

.....

Because this is an non-commercial site I can and will not allow junk mail nor spam. Therefore commercial, non personal and bulk mail will be charged  
with handling costs of \$100 per mail.



[Back To](#)  


# A

[A](#) [B](#) [C](#) [D](#) [E](#) [F](#) [G](#) [H](#) [I](#) [J](#) [K](#) [L](#)  
[M](#) [N](#) [O](#) [P](#) [Q](#) [R](#) [S](#) [T](#) [U](#) [V](#) [W](#)  
[X](#) [Y](#) [Z](#)

[Back To](#)



[Ropers Knot Page](#)

- **Adjustible bend**
  - [22nd Farnworth Scout Group](#)(Right part need correction.)
- **[The Adjusable Hitch](#)** Also called the Jamming Hitch.
  - [22nd Farnworth Scout Group](#)
- **Albright Knot** A Fishermans knot, used for joining lines of different diameter to line or wire
  - [On the Fishernet.](#)
- **Alpine Butterfly** See [Butterfly](#)
- **Anchor hitch or Anchor bend** See [Fishermans bend](#) (The bend that is a hitch)
- **Arbor Knot** A Fishermans knot, used to tye a line to a reel
  - [On the Fishernet.](#)
- **[The Artillary loop.](#)** A usefull temporary loop for carrying things.



[A<=To](#)

# B

[A](#) [B](#) [C](#) [D](#) [E](#) [F](#) [G](#) [H](#) [I](#) [J](#) [K](#) [L](#) [M](#) [N](#) [O](#) [P](#) [Q](#) [R](#) [S](#) [T](#) [U](#) [V](#) [W](#) [X](#)  
[Y](#) [Z](#)[Back To](#)[Ropers Knot  
Page](#)

- **Bachman climbing knot**
  - [On a Climbing Knot Dictionary \(Among others in\)](#)
- **Back Splice.**
  - [On The Scout Association Of Australia page.](#)
- **Barrel Knot.** A Fishermans knot. Also called "the Blood knot" Used to join lines of different diameter, as in fly fishing.
  - [On the Fishernet.](#)
  - [On another Fishernet.](#)
  - [The fishing knots.](#)
  - [BRMRG Knot Primer](#) Good Picture But this is the fishermans bend..on mountain site
- **Bao knot.**
  - [The Bao Knot. A fancy chinese knot](#)
- **Boatswain's Whistle Knot**
  - [Northnet Ropeworks](#) Clear instruction.
  - [Northnet Ropeworks](#) Excelent Animation
- **The Bimini-twist.** a fixed loop in fishline.
  - Link lost

- **Bindary Knot.** How to tye a pakkage
  - Link Lost
  
- **Blackwall Hitch.**
  - [Blackwall Hitch on Forty Boy Scout Knots](#)
  
- **[Blood Knot.](#)** A stopper knot. Also called the dubble overhand
  - Blood Knot. (Fisherman) Also called "Barrel Knot".
  - Blood Bight Knot. A fixed loop for fishline.
  - [The fishing knots.](#)
  
- **Bow Knot.**
  - [Bow Knot on Forty Boy Scout Knots](#)
  
-  **Bög = [Overhand knot.](#)**
  - [Csomók.](#)
  
- **[Bowline.](#)** A famous fixed loop.
  - [How is the bowline called in other languages?](#)
  - [Bowline Game \(for scouting 8-10 y \)](#)
  -  [Csomók.](#)
  - [42nd Brighton \(Saltdean\) Scout Group, UK](#) Animated
  - [On The Scout Association Of Australia page](#)
  - [In climbing.](#) A climbing knot Among others in the Climbing Knot Dictionary
  - [Animated Knots](#) Requires plugin
  - [Canoe Certificate Course](#) Session 4 - Ropes & Lines
  - [NautBob's Knots](#) 4 well known copies of knots.
  - [Animated Knots for Scouts](#) No plugin needed
  - [one of Forty Boy Scout Knots](#)

- **Bowline on the Bight.**
  - [Ropework](#) Exelent instruction
  - [one of Forty Boy Scout Knots](#)
  
- **[The Bowstring knot.](#)** A permanent loop at the end of a rope.
  - **Bowtie Knot.**
    - [A Tie Knot amongs a view others..](#)
  
  - **The Brubakker Loop knot.** A fishermans loop
  
  - **[The Buntline Hitch.](#)**
    - [How is the buntline called in other languages?](#)
  
  - **[The Butterfly](#)** An Excellent loop in the middle of a rope.  
Link lost

To=>C

[Back To](#)[B](#)**C**[A](#) [B](#) [C](#) [D](#) [E](#) [F](#) [G](#) [H](#) [I](#) [J](#) [K](#) [L](#) [M](#) [N](#) [O](#) [P](#) [Q](#) [R](#) [S](#) [T](#) [U](#) [V](#) [W](#) [X](#)  
[Y](#) [Z](#)[Back To](#)[Ropers Knot](#)  
[Links](#)

- [Carrick Bend](#). The nearest thing er have to the perfect bend. Also called the Josephine Knot when used in macrame.
  - [A poet on this famous knot.](#)
- Cat's Paw.
  - [one of Forty Boy Scout Knots](#)
  - [Website Gert](#) Animated
- Cleath knot. Or How to belay a cleath
  - [Northnet Ropeworks](#) Clear instruction.
  - [Northnet Ropeworks](#) Excelent Animation
- Clinch Knot. A fishermans knot. Terminal to a tackle
  - [On the Fishernet](#) (Improved) ???.
- [The Clove Hitch](#).
  - [How is the clove hitch called in other languages?](#)
  - [On the Scout Association Of Australia page.](#)
  - [On the Yachtnet](#) = Beautyfull but large page..
  - [Website Gert](#) Animated
  - [42nd Brighton \(Saltdean\) Scout Group, UK](#) Animated
  - [Lehigh Samson](#) (among other drawings with small description)
  - [Quick Clove Hitch](#) Good instruction for one way of tying.

- [Animated Knots](#) Requires plugin
- [Canoe Certificate Course](#) session 4 - ropes & lines
- [NautBob's Knots](#) 4 well known copies of knots.
- [Animated Knots for Scouts](#) No plugins needed
- [one of Forty Boy Scout Knots](#)
- [Clovehitch Relay \(game for youg scouts\)](#)

- [The Constrictor Hitch.](#)

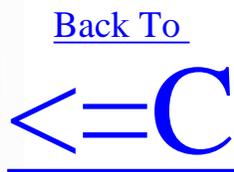
- [Northnet Ropeworks](#) Clear instruction.
- [Northnet Ropeworks](#) Excelent Animation

- [The Cow Hitch](#)

-  Csónak~ = Slip Knot

- [Csomók.](#)

To=>D



# D

[Back To](#)



[A](#) [B](#) [C](#) [D](#) [E](#) [F](#) [G](#) [H](#) [I](#) [J](#) [K](#) [L](#) [M](#) [N](#) [O](#) [P](#) [Q](#) [R](#) [S](#) [T](#) [U](#) [V](#) [W](#) [X](#)  
[Y](#) [Z](#)

- **Diagonal Lashing.**
  - [Northnet Ropeworks](#) Clear instruction.
  
- **Double Carrick Bend.**
  - [on of Forty Boy Scout Knots](#)
  
- **[Double Constrictor Hitch.](#)**

Probably the strongest hitch. Best use for temporary whipping.
  
- **[Double Eight.](#)** Probably the strongest 'double-stopper' knot
  -
  
- **[Double Figure-of-eight loop.](#)**
  - [one of Forty Boy Scout Knots](#)
  
- **[Double Fisherman's Knot.](#)** A Fishermans knot. Used to join lines of different diameter, as in fly fishing.
  - [On the Fisher net.](#) Used to join lines of different diameter, as in fly fishing.
  -
  
- **[Double Marline Hitch.](#)**

- [Double Overhand Knot](#). Stopper.
  - [On the Climbing Knot Dictionary \(Among others\)](#)
  - [one of Forty Boy Scout Knots](#)
- Double Turle Knot. To Tye a hook with eye on a line
  - [The fishing knots.](#)
- Doubled Overhand.
  -
- Double sheetbend
  - [Animated Knots for Scouts](#)
  - [Website Gert](#)Animated
  - [one of Forty Boy Scout Knots](#)
- The Dropper Loop. A loop in fishline.
  - [The fishing knots.](#)
- [The Dutch Marine Bowline.](#)

To=>E

[Back To](#)



# E

[Back To](#)



[A](#) [B](#) [C](#) [D](#) [E](#) [F](#) [G](#) [H](#) [I](#) [J](#) [K](#) [L](#) [M](#) [N](#) [O](#) [P](#) [Q](#) [R](#) [S](#) [T](#) [U](#) [V](#) [W](#) [X](#)  
[Y](#) [Z](#)

- Eye Splice.

- [Ropework](#) Exelent instruction
- [On the Scout Association Of Australia page.](#)

[To=>F](#)

[Back To](#)

# F

[Back To](#)

[A](#) [B](#) [C](#) [D](#) [E](#) [F](#) [G](#) [H](#) [I](#) [J](#) [K](#) [L](#) [M](#) [N](#) [O](#) [P](#) [Q](#) [R](#) [S](#) [T](#) [U](#) [V](#) [W](#) [X](#)  
[Y](#) [Z](#)

- Farmers hitch.
  -
- Fiador.
  - [Tie a First Class Rope Halter With Fiador Knot](#)
- [Figure eight knot](#). Stopper.
  - [On the Scout Association Of Australia page.](#)
  - [On the Yachtnet.](#) A beautifull but large page
  - [Website Gert](#)Animated
  - [A short climbing page on this knot.](#)
  - [42nd Brighton \(Saltdean\) Scout Group, UK](#)Animated
  - [climbing knot Among others in the Climbing Knot Dictionary](#)
  - [Library of knots.](#)(among other drawings)
  - [Canoe Certificate Course](#) Session 4 - Ropes & Lines
  - [Knots, Bends and Hitches](#) Between 4 other knots.
  - [on Animated Knots for Scouts](#)
  - [on of Forty Boy Scout Knots](#)
  - [BRMRG Knot Primer](#) Good Picture on mountain site
  - [Northnet Ropeworks](#) Clear instruction.
  - [Northnet Ropeworks](#) Excelent Animation

- 
- **Figure eight Lashing.**
    - [On the Scout Association Of Australia page.](#)
  
  - **[Figure eight Loop](#)**
    - [Northnet Ropeworks](#) Clear instruction. In the Bight
  
  - **Figure-of-nine knot.**
    -
  
  - **Filipino Lashing.**
    - [On the Scout Association Of Australia page.](#)
  
  - **Fisherman's Bend.** The Hitch wich is called a bend and is (K)not.
    - [Lehigh Samson](#) (among other drawings with small description)
    - [Knots,Bends and Hitches](#) Between 4 other knots.
  
  - **[Fisherman's knot= True Lovers](#)** Most common 'double-stopper' knot
    - [How is the fisherman's knot called in other languages?](#)
    - [Website Gert](#)Animated
    - [42nd Brighton \(Saltdean\) Scout Group, UK](#)Animated
    - [On the Scout Association Of Australia page.](#)
    - [climbing knot](#) Among others in the Climbing Knot Dictionary
    - [on Animated knots for Scouts](#)
    - [on of Forty Boy Scout Knots](#)
  
  - **Fisherman's Loop.**
    - [How is the fishermans loop called in other languages?](#)

- 
- [Flamish Eight = Eight.](#)
  - Flower knot.
    - [The flower Knot. A fancy chinese knot](#)
  - Four-In-Hand Knot
    - [A way to tye your tie.](#) A page with four knots
    - [On a fashion site. \(Same drawings as previous link!\)](#)
  - The Float Stop. A knot ON a fishline.
    - [The fishing knots.](#)
  - Floor Lashinhg
    - [Northnet Ropeworks](#) Clear instruction.
  - French knots
    -
  - Frost knots
    - [BRMRG Knot Primer](#) Good Picture on mountain site
  - French Prussic
    - [climbing knot Among others in the Climbing Knot Dictionary](#)

- Friendship Knot

- [Jazzman site!](#)

To=>G

[Back To](#)



# G

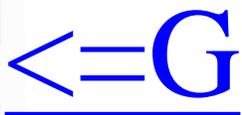
[Back To](#)



[A](#) [B](#) [C](#) [D](#) [E](#) [F](#) [G](#) [H](#) [I](#) [J](#) [K](#) [L](#) [M](#) [N](#) [O](#) [P](#) [Q](#) [R](#) [S](#) [T](#) [U](#) [V](#) [W](#) [X](#)  
[Y](#) [Z](#)

- [Gallow Knot.](#)
  - [Lehigh Samson](#) among other drawings with small description
- Girth Hitch
  - [BRMRG Knot Primer](#) Good Picture on mountain site
- [Granny.](#) Do not forget to forget this knot
  - [on of Forty Boy Scout Knots](#)
- Gordian Knot
  -

[To=>H](#)

[Back To](#)

# H

[Back To](#)

[A](#) [B](#) [C](#) [D](#) [E](#) [F](#) [G](#) [H](#) [I](#) [J](#) [K](#) [L](#) [M](#) [N](#) [O](#) [P](#) [Q](#) [R](#) [S](#) [T](#) [U](#) [V](#) [W](#) [X](#)  
[Y](#) [Z](#)

- [The Half Hitch](#)
-  Halász = [Fisherman's knot= True Lovers](#) Most common 'double-stopper' knot
  - [Csomók.](#)
  - [on of Forty Boy Scout Knots](#)
- Halyard knot
  - [on of Forty Boy Scout Knots](#)
- Half-Windsor A Tie Knot.
  - [A page with four Tie knots](#)
  -
- [Hangman.](#)
  - [Lehigh Samson](#) among other drawings with small description
  - [The fishing knots.](#) Drawn as Scaffold...
- Harvester Hitch A truckers knot.
  - [Canoe Certificate Course](#) Session 4 - Ropes & Lines
- Hedden knot.
  - [On a caving page.](#)

- Highwayman's Hitch climbing knot
  - [On Climbing Knot Dictionary Among others](#)
  - [Canoe Certificate Course](#) Session 4 - Ropes & Lines
  
- Hunters Bend. = Zeppelin Knot
  - [On the Scout Association Of Australia page.](#)
  
- Huffnagle knot.
  - [Tying the Huffnagle](#) for heavy shock leaders to class tippets.

[To=>I](#)

[Back To](#)

[<=H](#)

# I

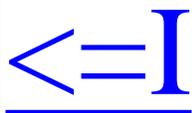
[A](#) [B](#) [C](#) [D](#) [E](#) [F](#) [G](#) [H](#) [I](#) [J](#) [K](#) [L](#) [M](#) [N](#) [O](#) [P](#) [Q](#) [R](#) [S](#) [T](#) [U](#) [V](#) [W](#) [X](#)  
[Y](#) [Z](#)

[Back To](#)



- Improved clinch knot A fishersknot.
  - 
  - 
  - [NautBob's Fishin' Knots](#) between 5 other knots.
- Italian/Munter Hitch.
  -

[To=>J](#)

[Back To](#)

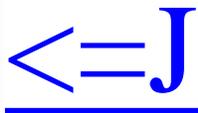
# J

[Back To](#)

[A](#) [B](#) [C](#) [D](#) [E](#) [F](#) [G](#) [H](#) [I](#) [J](#) [K](#) [L](#) [M](#) [N](#) [O](#) [P](#) [Q](#) [R](#) [S](#) [T](#) [U](#) [V](#) [W](#) [X](#)  
[Y](#) [Z](#)

- [The Jamming Hitch](#) Also called the Adjustable Hitch.
- The Jansik. For connecting a hook to a fishline.
  - [The fishing knots.](#)
- Japanese Square Lashing.
  - [On the Scout Association Of Australia page.](#)
- [The Josophine Knot](#) A Macrame knot same as the Caric Bend
- Jug Sling Hitch.
  - [How is the Jug Sling Hitch called in other languages?](#)
  - [Northnet Ropeworks](#) Clear instruction.

[To=>K](#)

[Back To](#)

# K

[Back To](#)

[A](#) [B](#) [C](#) [D](#) [E](#) [F](#) [G](#) [H](#) [I](#) [J](#) [K](#) [L](#) [M](#) [N](#) [O](#) [P](#) [Q](#) [R](#) [S](#) [T](#) [U](#) [V](#) [W](#) [X](#)  
[Y](#) [Z](#)

- **King Sling** A fishermans knot. Allows you to make a nutaral presentation.
  - [On the fisher net.](#)
- **Kleimheist** climbing knot
  - [On the Climbing Knot Dictionary \(Among others\)](#)
- **Kreuzklem** climbing knot
  - [On the Climbing Knot Dictionary \(Among others\)](#)

[To=>L](#)

[Back To](#)[<=K](#)

# L

[Back To](#)[A](#) [B](#) [C](#) [D](#) [E](#) [F](#) [G](#) [H](#) [I](#) [J](#) [K](#) [L](#) [M](#) [N](#) [O](#) [P](#) [Q](#) [R](#) [S](#) [T](#) [U](#) [V](#) [W](#) [X](#)  
[Y](#) [Z](#)

- [The Lap-Knot](#). Excelent 'native' knot.
- Lark's head.
  - [How is the Lark's head called in other languages?](#)
  - [42nd Brighton \(Saltdean\) Scout Group, UK](#) Animated
- Lark's Food climbing knot
  - [On the Climbing Knot Dictionary \(Among others\)](#)
- [The Lineman's Loop = The Butterfly](#) An Excellent loop in the middle of a rope.
- [The Lobster Buoy Hitch](#)

[To=>M](#)



# M

[Back To](#)



[A](#) [B](#) [C](#) [D](#) [E](#) [F](#) [G](#) [H](#) [I](#) [J](#) [K](#) [L](#) [M](#) [N](#) [O](#) [P](#) [Q](#) [R](#) [S](#) [T](#) [U](#) [V](#) [W](#) [X](#)  
[Y](#) [Z](#)

- **Manharness Knot.**
  - [On the Scout Association Of Australia page.](#)
- **[Marline Hitch.](#)** Also called the marling hitch
  - [Knots, Bends and Hitches](#) Between 4 other knots.
- **Masthead Knot**
  - [Northnet Ropeworks](#) Clear instruction.
- **Mauls**
  - [Northnet Ropeworks](#) Clear instruction.
- **[Monkey Fist.](#)** The nice knot used as ropers logo.
  -  [Klabautermann Knotentafel](#) Excelent
  - [Northnet Ropeworks](#) Excelent "alternative" way.
  - [Knot of the month June 97](#) Animanted two steps.
- **Mooring Hitch**
  - [Northnet Ropeworks](#) Clear instruction.
  - [Northnet Ropeworks](#) Excelent Animation
- **[Multiple Overhand Knot.](#)** Stopper

- Munter/Italian Hitch.

To=>N



[Back To](#)

[<=>M](#)

N

[A](#) [B](#) [C](#) [D](#) [E](#) [F](#) [G](#) [H](#) [I](#) [J](#) [K](#) [L](#) [M](#) [N](#) [O](#) [P](#) [Q](#) [R](#) [S](#) [T](#) [U](#) [V](#) [W](#) [X](#)  
[Y](#) [Z](#)

[Back To](#)



- [The Noose.](#)
-  Nyolcas = [Figure eight knot.](#)
  - [Csomók.](#)

[To=>O](#)

[Back To](#)



# O

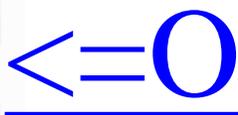
[Back To](#)



[A](#) [B](#) [C](#) [D](#) [E](#) [F](#) [G](#) [H](#) [I](#) [J](#) [K](#) [L](#) [M](#) [N](#) [O](#) [P](#) [Q](#) [R](#) [S](#) [T](#) [U](#) [V](#) [W](#) [X](#)  
[Y](#) [Z](#)

- [Overhand knot](#). Stopper
  - [Ropework](#) Exelent instruction
  - [insigne District award of merit van BSA](#). a small gif picture.
  - [Library of knots](#). (among other drawings)
  - [BRMRG Knot Primer](#) Good Picture on mountain site
- [Overhand Loop](#) climbing knot
  - [On the Climbing Knot Dictionary \(Among others\)](#)
- [Orvis knot](#) A fishersknot.
  - [NautBob's Fishin' Knots](#) between 5 other knots.

[To=>P](#)

[Back To](#)

# P

[Back To](#)

[A](#) [B](#) [C](#) [D](#) [E](#) [F](#) [G](#) [H](#) [I](#) [J](#) [K](#) [L](#) [M](#) [N](#) [O](#) [P](#) [Q](#) [R](#) [S](#) [T](#) [U](#) [V](#) [W](#) [X](#)  
[Y](#) [Z](#)

- **Palomar knot** A fishersknot.
  - [On the fisher net.](#)
  - [The fishing knots.](#)
  - [Why KNot.](#) Fisher knots
  - [NautBob's Fishin' Knots](#) between 5 other knots.
- [The Pendant-Hitch.](#) A Knot for breas-plates and necklace's
- **Pile Hitch.**
  - [How is the pile hitch called in other languages?](#)
- **Pizen Knot** A fishersknot.
  - [On flyfishing sub-page.](#)
  - [On another flyfishing sub-page.](#)
- **Pratt Knot** A Tie knot
- **Prussic Knot.** A very important climbing knot, also written as prussik prusik prusick
  - [How is the Prussick called in other languages?](#)
  - [On the Scout Association Of Australia page.](#)
  - [On the Climbing Knot Dictionary \(Among others\)](#)
  - [Prusik Rappel "Safety"](#) No picture, No drawing, but a plain tekst rappel for safety.



[Back To](#)

[<=>P](#)

Q

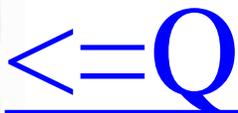
[A](#) [B](#) [C](#) [D](#) [E](#) [F](#) [G](#) [H](#) [I](#) [J](#) [K](#) [L](#) [M](#) [N](#) [O](#) [P](#) [Q](#) [R](#) [S](#) [T](#) [U](#) [V](#) [W](#) [X](#)  
[Y](#) [Z](#)

[Back To](#)



I am still looking for a knot with a Q on the web...

[To=>R](#)

[Back To](#)

# R

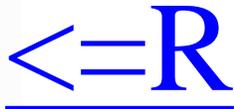
[Back To](#)

[A](#) [B](#) [C](#) [D](#) [E](#) [F](#) [G](#) [H](#) [I](#) [J](#) [K](#) [L](#) [M](#) [N](#) [O](#) [P](#) [Q](#) [R](#) [S](#) [T](#) [U](#) [V](#) [W](#) [X](#)  
[Y](#) [Z](#)

- [Reefknot = Square Knot.](#)
  - [Ethicon Knot Tying Manual](#) How Surgeons Tie the reefknot.
  - [How is the Reefknot called in other languages?](#)
  - [On the Scout Association Of Australia page.](#)
  - [Website Gert](#) Animated
  - [42nd Brighton \(Saltdean\) Scout Group, UK](#) Animated
  - [On the yachtnet.](#) A beautyfull but large page
  - [insignes van BSA.](#) a 32k gif image with all BSA insignes.
  - [Lehigh Samson](#) (among other drawings with small description)
  - [Library of knots.](#) (among other drawings)
  - [First Aid Book.](#)
  - [Animated Knots](#) Requires plugin
  - [NautBob's Knots](#) 4 well known copies of knots.
  - [Knots, Bends and Hitches](#) Between 4 other knots.
  - [BRMRG Knot Primer](#) Good Picture on mountain site
  
- [Reverse Eight noose.](#)
  
- [Reversed Half Hitches](#)
  
- [Ringbold Hitching](#)
  - [Northnet Ropeworks](#) Clear instruction.

- [Rolling Hitch](#). Also called the Magnus Hitch
  - [Best description on the WEB of the Rolling Hitch](#) (probably gone...)
  - [On the Scout Association Of Australia page](#).
  - [42nd Brighton \(Saltdean\) Scout Group, UK](#) Animated
  - [Library of knots](#). (among other drawings)
  - [Canoe Certificate Course](#) Session 4 - Ropes & Lines
  
- Round Lashing.
  - [On the Scout Association Of Australia page](#).
  
- Round Turn.
  - [How is the Round Turn called in other languages?](#)
  
- Round Turn and two half Hitches
  - [On the Scout Association Of Australia page](#).
  - [42nd Brighton \(Saltdean\) Scout Group, UK](#) Animated
  - [On the yachtnet](#). Beautyfull but large page.
  - [Animated Knots](#) Requires plugin

To=>S

[Back To](#)  


# S

[Back To](#)



[A](#) [B](#) [C](#) [D](#) [E](#) [F](#) [G](#) [H](#) [I](#) [J](#) [K](#) [L](#) [M](#) [N](#) [O](#) [P](#) [Q](#) [R](#) [S](#) [T](#) [U](#) [V](#) [W](#) [X](#)  
[Y](#) [Z](#)

- [Scaffold Knot](#). A Noose.
  - [The fishing knots](#). Drawn as double marline.
  
- Sheep Shank.
  - [On the Scout Association Of Australia page](#).
  - [Website Gert](#) Animated
  - [Picture from http://genius.ttk.bme.hu/MuszPed/Cserk/hir1.html](http://genius.ttk.bme.hu/MuszPed/Cserk/hir1.html) A moving gif-picture from a hongarian page. Probaly gone..
  
- [Sheetbend](#).
  - 
  - [On the Scout Association Of Australia page](#).
  - [On the yachtnet](#) = Beautyfull but large page
  - [climbing knot Among others in the Climbing Knot Dictionary](#)
  - [Lehigh Samson](#) (among other drawings with small description)
  - [Library of knots](#). (among other drawings)
  - [Website Gert](#) Animated
  - [42nd Brighton \(Saltdean\) Scout Group, UK](#) Animated
  - [Animated Knots](#) Requires plugin
  - [Canoe Certificate Course](#) Session 4 - Ropes & Lines
  - [NautBob's Knots](#) 4 well known copies of knots.
  - [Northnet Ropeworks](#) Clear instruction.
  
- (Tucked) Sheetbend.

- [The fishing knots.](#)
- [Single Hitch](#)
- [Simple Noose.](#)
- Snelling Knot.
  - [The fishing knots.](#)Snelling a hook
  - [Fisherman's Knots](#) A page on 7 knots
- Spanish Windlass
  - [Northnet Ropeworks](#) Clear instruction.
- Spider hitch.A fishing knot
  - [Why KNot.](#) Fisher knots
- Square Lashing.
  - [Ropework](#) Exelent instruction
  - [On the Scout Association Of Australia page.](#)
- [Square Knot = Reef Knot.](#)
- [Strangle Knot.](#)
- [Strangle-snare.](#)
- Srurgeon Knot.(Realy used by surgeons!)
  - [USSC Sutures -- Knot Tying -- TOC](#) Best site on the Surgeon Knot.(How can I

improve this??)

- [Ethicon Knot Tying Manual](#) How surgeons tie it..
- [Lehigh Samson](#) (among other drawings with small description)
- [The fishing knots.](#)
- [Why KNot.](#) Fisher knots
  
- **Srurgeon End Loop.**
  - [The fishing knots.](#)
  
- **The Swivel Knot.**For attatching a swivel to a fishline.
  - [The fishing knots.](#)

To=>T

[Back To](#)  


# T

[Back To](#)



[A](#) [B](#) [C](#) [D](#) [E](#) [F](#) [G](#) [H](#) [I](#) [J](#) [K](#) [L](#) [M](#) [N](#) [O](#) [P](#) [Q](#) [R](#) [S](#) [T](#) [U](#) [V](#) [W](#) [X](#)  
[Y](#) [Z](#)

-  Takács~ = [Reefknot = Square Knot](#).
  - [Csomók](#).
- Tape KnotClimbing knot
  - [On the Climbing Knot Dictionary \(Among others\)](#)
- [The Tautline Hitch](#) Also called the Midshipmans Hitch
  - [Animated Knots](#) Requires plugin
  - [Northnet Ropeworks](#) Clear instruction.
- [The Thief knot](#)
  - [42nd Brighton \(Saltdean\) Scout Group, UK](#)Animated
- Timber Hitch.
  - [How is the Timber Hitch called in other languages?](#)
  - [Website Gert](#) Animated
  - [42nd Brighton \(Saltdean\) Scout Group, UK](#)Animated
  - [Lehigh Samson](#) (among other drawings with small description)
  - [Library of knots](#). (among other drawings)
  - [Animated Knots](#) Requires plugin
-  Toldó1~ = [Carrick Bend](#). The nearest thing er have to the perfect bend. Also called the Josephine Knot when used in macrame.

○ [Csomók.](#)

● [The Transom knot](#) A perfect cross knot for your kite.

● [True Lovers = Fisherman's knot/bend](#)

● Trilene Knot A fishersknot.

○ [NautBob's Fishin' Knots](#) between 5 other knots.

● Truckers Hitch

○ [Canoe Certificate Course](#) Session 4 - Ropes & Lines

● [Thief Knot](#) Sailors security bend

● TRIPOD LASHING

○ [Northnet Ropeworks](#) Clear instruction.

● [Two Half Hitches](#)

● [Library of knots.](#) (among other drawings)

● [Knotty Knots](#) Outdoorsman Activity Badge

● The Turks Head Knot. Or Woggle

● [Northnet Ropeworks](#) Plain

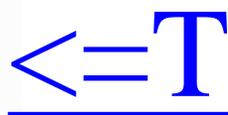
● [Northnet Ropeworks](#) Animated

● The Turle.

● [The fishing knots.](#)



[Back To](#)



# U

[Back To](#)



[A](#) [B](#) [C](#) [D](#) [E](#) [F](#) [G](#) [H](#) [I](#) [J](#) [K](#) [L](#) [M](#) [N](#) [O](#) [P](#) [Q](#) [R](#) [S](#) [T](#) [U](#) [V](#) [W](#) [X](#)  
[Y](#) [Z](#)

- **Uni-Knot** An All purpose fishersknot.

- [On the Fisher net.](#)
- [The fishing knots.](#)
- [Why KNot.](#) Fisher knots

[To=>V](#)

[Back To](#)

[<=>U](#)

V

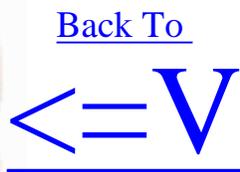
[A](#) [B](#) [C](#) [D](#) [E](#) [F](#) [G](#) [H](#) [I](#) [J](#) [K](#) [L](#) [M](#) [N](#) [O](#) [P](#) [Q](#) [R](#) [S](#) [T](#) [U](#) [V](#) [W](#) [X](#)  
[Y](#) [Z](#)

[Back To](#)



I have not found a knot with a v on the web yet...

[To=>W](#)



# W

[Back To](#)



[A](#) [B](#) [C](#) [D](#) [E](#) [F](#) [G](#) [H](#) [I](#) [J](#) [K](#) [L](#) [M](#) [N](#) [O](#) [P](#) [Q](#) [R](#) [S](#) [T](#) [U](#) [V](#) [W](#) [X](#)  
[Y](#) [Z](#)

- **Water Knot.**
  - [How is the Water Knot called in other languages?](#)
  - [BRMRG Knot Primer](#) Good Picture on mountain site
  
- [What Knot](#) A trick knot.
  
- [The Weaver-Eight](#) The waevers 'heavline knot'.  
 The best weavers knot I know.
  
- [The Weaver Knot](#) The waevers 'sheetbend'.  
 The most common weavers knot.
  
- **Whipping.**
  - [How is the Whipping called in other languages?](#)
  - [On the Scout Association Of Australia page.](#)
  - [Northnet Ropeworks](#) Clear instruction.
  
- **Woggle.**
  - [41 steps over 4 pages. Clear instructions on how te make a woggle.](#)
  
- **Windsor Knot**
  - [A way to tye your tie.](#) A page with four Tie knots
  - [Hoe knoop je je stropdas.](#) Een Nederlandse Stropdas pagina.

To=>X



[Back To](#)



# X

[Back To](#)



[A](#) [B](#) [C](#) [D](#) [E](#) [F](#) [G](#) [H](#) [I](#) [J](#) [K](#) [L](#) [M](#) [N](#) [O](#) [P](#) [Q](#) [R](#) [S](#) [T](#) [U](#) [V](#) [W](#) [X](#)  
[Y](#) [Z](#)

I have not found a knot with an X on the web yet...

[To=>Y](#)

[Back To](#)

[<=>X](#)

Y

[A](#) [B](#) [C](#) [D](#) [E](#) [F](#) [G](#) [H](#) [I](#) [J](#) [K](#) [L](#) [M](#) [N](#) [O](#) [P](#) [Q](#) [R](#) [S](#) [T](#) [U](#) [V](#) [W](#) [X](#)  
[Y](#) [Z](#)

[Back To](#)



- Yosemite Bowline.

- [On a caving page.](#) Link probaly lost...

[To=>Z](#)

[Back To](#)



# Z

[Back To](#)



[A](#) [B](#) [C](#) [D](#) [E](#) [F](#) [G](#) [H](#) [I](#) [J](#) [K](#) [L](#) [M](#) [N](#) [O](#) [P](#) [Q](#) [R](#) [S](#) [T](#) [U](#) [V](#) [W](#) [X](#)  
[Y](#) [Z](#)

-  Zászló~ = [Sheetbend](#).
  - [Csomók](#).
- Zeplin knot. by exident also called the Hunters bend
  - [On the Scout Association Of Australia page](#).

[To=>A](#)

[Back To](#)[Standard copyrights and disclaimer.](#)[Back To](#)[Ropers Knot Page](#)

# Stoppers (🚫)

Knots on the end.

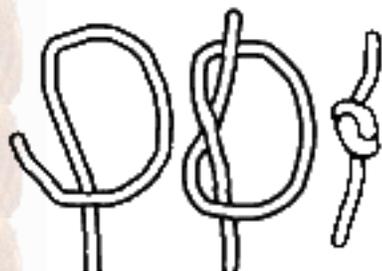
[Ropers Knot Page](#)

Knots on the end of a rope or yarn. There are a lot of situations where you need a knot like this.

Every application has its own special demands for knot properties. So you have to choose carefully. You can use a stopper to prevent a rope or yarn from unfolding, but please do that only in cheap rope/yarn. Use a proper whipping in all other cases.

## The Overhand Knot

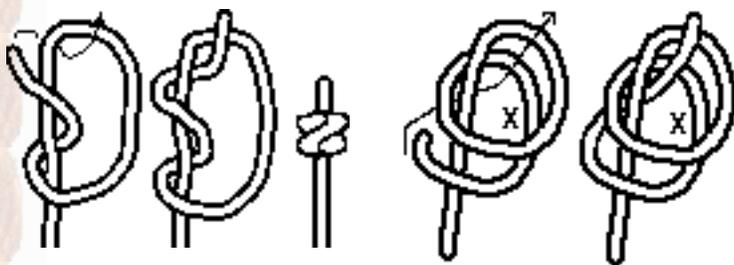
### The Overhand Knot or Half Knot



This is the simplest knot. Therefore probably the most used. The knot is very useful to support knots in yarns. The loose ends become a bit thicker. When this support makes the total bend too bulky you have to look for another bend. The overhand knot is not strong, so it is not used in situations where you might expect great force. It also reduces the strength of the rope or yarn by about 50%. But as an "anti-slip-knot" it does not have to withstand a lot.

[This knot on the WEB.](#)

## The Double Overhandknot



The double overhand knot is beautiful, thicker than the common overhand knot, but not any stronger. But use it with caution. The double overhand knot is also called the bloodknot when it is used at the end of a whip. This knot has several ways of tying and in principle two ways of working up.

Both ways of tying shown here also show both results. The bloodknot shown in the middle is the preferred way of working up the second way of tying marked with the crosses. The bloodknot is very hard to untie after it has been under stress. If you put an object through the cross-marked hole the knot will work up as the [strangleknot](#). It is usefull to practice this way.

[This knot on the WEB.](#)

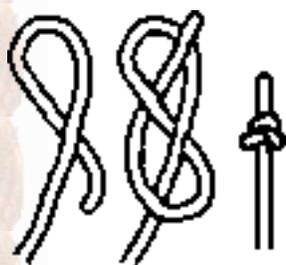
# the Multifold-Overhand-knot



If you make more than two turns in the overhand knot it will be fatter. (But hardly stronger.) In twined rope it is important to work up the knot very carefully. (It will not only look neater, it wil prevent 'kinking' which will weaken the rope even more!)

[This knot on the WEB.](#)

# The (Flemish) Eight



This knot is larger, stronger and more easy to untie than the overhand knot. It does not harm your rope as much as the overhand knot does. So therefore sailors use this knot in most cases. (! not for bend support, where the smaller overhand is used, or in rope, a permanent small stopper)

[This knot on the WEB.](#)

Any comment, suggestions, anything mail me:  [qqqq](mailto:qqqq)  
at [realknots.com](http://realknots.com) with subject "question"

All mail without thr right subject is flussed unred.  
automaticly.

I am sorry I had to remove the mail link. The mailgrabbers  
and spammers won. But.... I have a few hidden mail address  
for them to mail to each other after they grabbed it.



Because this is an non-comercial site I can and will not allow junk mail nor spam. Therefore comercial, non-personal and bulkmail will be charged with  
handling costs of \$100 per mail.

[Back To](#)



[Ropers Knot Page](#)

[Standard copyrights and disclaimer.](#)

[Forward To](#)



[The Bends](#)

[Standard copyrights and disclaimer.](#)

[Back To](#)  
[Stoppers](#)



[The](#)

# Bends ( )

To 'unite' two ropes.

[Back To](#)  
[Ropers Knot Page](#)



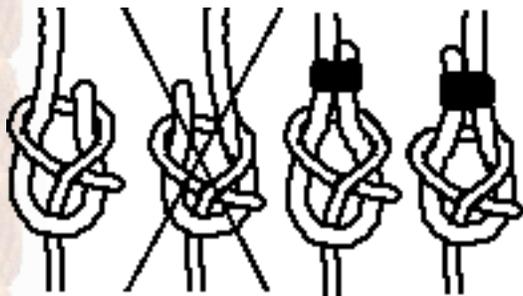
## The reef-knot



The reef-knot is only useful in simple applications. Ashley says "it is a true Binder Knot, for which it is admirable, but under no circumstances should it be used as a bend." It is easy tied and will not jam, so it is always easy to untie. It is used to tie packages, and as a base for the shoe-bow. Sailors used it for binding rolled sails or better reefed sails. And that is where it got its English name from. Americans call it the square knot. Probably because it looks square, or because it was much used on square-rigged-ships, but that is a total guess of me. Its relatives, the granny, the thief-knot and the what-knot all have their purposes, but not as a trustful knot.

For more information on the reef-knot-family you may visit the [Reef-knot Family](#).

## The Sheet Bend



The sheet bend is my favorite bend. Be careful. With the loose end on the wrong side you have an other, weaker knot (Left-hand sheetbend). If the knot is well seized it does not matter if it is tied right or left handed

For more information on the reef-knot-family you may visit the [Sheetbend Family](#).

## The Carrick Bend / The Josephine Knot





Also known as Full carrick Bend, Sailor's Knot and Anchor Bend. Beware! There are not many knots with so much wrong drawings as this bend. The ends have to be on opposite sites and the crossings always are alternating up/down/up/down... The Carrick Bend is one of the best knots. Ashley states it is possible the nearest thing we have to a perfect bend.

It does not easily slip, not even if the rope is wet. And it is always easy to untie, also after a heavy load. If used as a Hawser bend in heavy material it is always seized and parceled to save wear.

### The Josephine Knot

In the Macrame this knot is called the Josephine Knot. It is self evident the Josephine knot is not seized nor pulled tight.

## The True Lovers or Fishermans's Knot



The True Lovers, or Fisherman's Knot may be laid in two different ways. Which of both the is the stronger, I do not know.

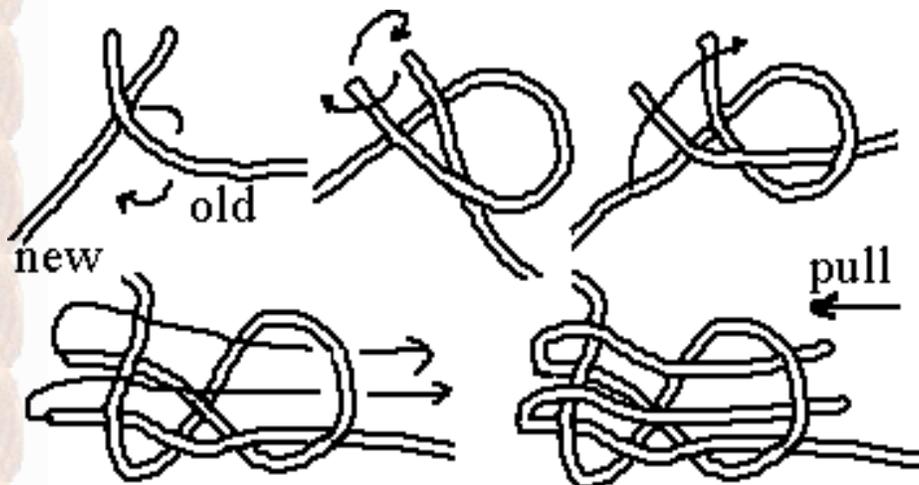
With two equal [overhandknots](#) it is symmetrical. This is probably the most used variant.



With two different overhand knots you get the most beautiful version (always work it up neatly!)

Only ... The double eight is stronger, easier to untie after use and as decorative from all sides as the true lovers at best.

## The Weavers-Eight



This is the best weaver knot I know. Although it looks difficult to tie, it is actually very easy. Fast to tie with small material, and reliable for wool, linen and most other weaver materials. Because both loose ends fall back over the standing part, it has an almost perfect lead.

Hold both threads together on the crossing between your thumb and finger. (first drawing)

Twist both threads together while you hold the cross in two simple movements. (first/Second

drawing)

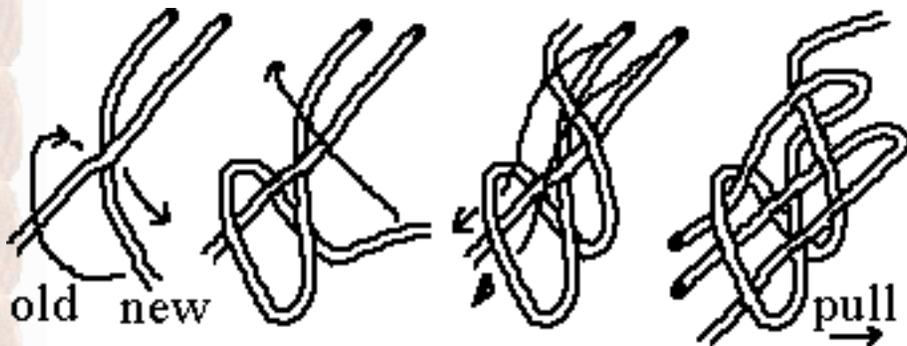
Now, you pull over the standing part of the line you tie on, (third drawing)

And put both loose ends over the line you tie on through the loop you just created.

Now let loose the cross and hold the loose ends fixed to the standing part of the line you tie with and pull the knot tight.

This knot is related with [The \(Flemish\) Eight](#). You can observe this by removing the thread you tied the knot with, leaving the thread you tied the knot on unchanged. If you have difficulties in learning this knot, you can start by practicing the flemish eight in the thread you want to tie on, using an imaginary thread to tie with.

**For the other direction**



A weaver on a traditional weaving loom never knows in advance in what direction the next line has to be tied. Therefore he has to know two ways of tying the weaver knot. One for each direction. This is the same Weavers-Eight but tied different. Tied this way the knot points to the other direction.

Any comment, suggestions, anything mail me:  **qqqq**  
*at realknots.com with subject "question"*

All mail without the right subject is flushed unread automatically.

I am sorry I had to remove the mail link. The mailgrabbers and spammers won. But... I have a few hidden mail addresses for them to mail to each other after they grabbed it.



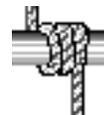
Because this is a non-commercial site I can and will not allow junk mail nor spam. Therefore commercial, non-personal and bulkmail will be charged with handling costs of \$100 per mail.

[Back To Ropers Knot Page](#)



[Standard copyrights and disclaimer.](#)

[Forward To Hitches](#)



[Back To](#)[The Bends](#)

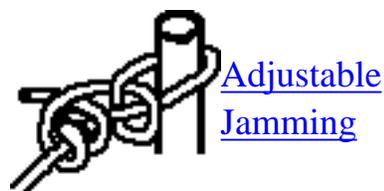
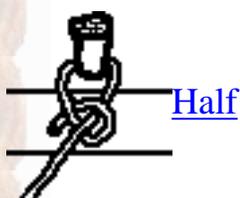
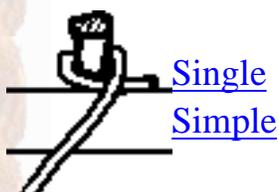
# Hitches ( )

[Back To Ropers Knot  
Page](#)

Knots to tie a rope on ... something.

## 'Elementary' Hitches

In this table you find the most elementary hitches. The hitches in each column are closely related. The top hitch is tied round a pole or other object. I will refer to them as primary-elementary Hitches. The hitches there under are 'the same' but tied round the standing part of the rope. I will refer to them as secondary-elementary Hitches. But beware, the application of the variants are very different. The primary-elementary Hitches will spill if the object is removed. The secondary-elementary hitches will not. Some of the secondary-elementary hitches are 'capsized' bindery knots. As for all knots working the knot well is for these knots extremely important. Work it wrong and you might end up with another (probably unwanted) knot. For example, capsizing the two half hitches might end up in a granny knot, one of the worst of all knots. On the other hand if you know what you are doing, you might tie the wrong knot on purpose and capsize it to the hitch you want. Take care!



# The Single Hitch

(also called **The Simple Hitch**)



Although this is probably the simplest knot of all, you have to be a skilled knot-tyer to know how to tie and use it in a safe way. The loose end of the rope is nipped against the object and the standing part. The best nip is obtained against an edge or shoulder. If the load is released and the standing part shaken, the hitch is spilled instantly.



It is used to attach rope to a belay-pin, a weaver needle or even to a tree branch, to start belaying, to start winding or as a temporary easy to spill made-fast.

[The Single Hitch on the WEB.](#)



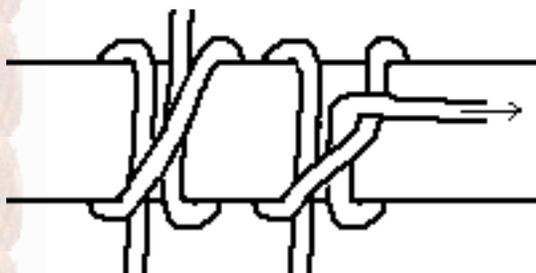
# The Half Hitch

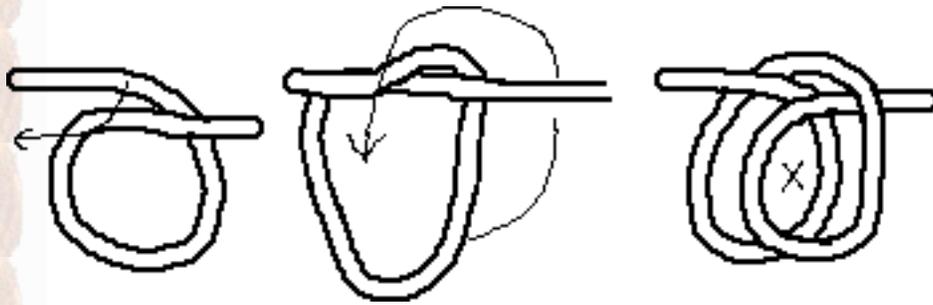


This is the capsized overhand knot. It is very useful to carry light loads which have to be removed easily. Ashley recommends it to use it for hanging store to out of reach for mice. It should not be disturbed.

[The Half Hitch on the WEB.](#)

# The Clove Hitch





This is a very important knot of only theoretical value. Without extra support, it is untrustworthy in any situation, except as a crossing knot. You have to learn it for scouting and at sailing schools. If you have to use it, work it up properly; pull length-wise only at both ends before you load the working end. It is better to use [The Rolling Hitch](#) instead.

[The Clove Hitch on the WEB.](#)

## Two Half Hitches



The two half hitches is used for tying a rope with a right-angle pull to a pole or ring. It should be constant under load. (Not under constant load). It does not jam. If the object you tie it on has a small diameter it is better to use the "Round Turn with Two Half Hitches". This is the same knot but with an extra turn round the

object.

[The Two Half Hitches on the WEB.](#)

## Buntline Hitch



The Buntline Hitch is (was) used to tie a buntline to a square sail. It is a secure knot, but it tends to jam, so it is not easy to untie. Therefore, it is useful for work that will be left unattended for longer periods, since it will not untie suddenly.

[The Buntline Hitch on the WEB.](#)

## The Rolling Hitch or Magnus and Magner's Hitch



The best simple hitch for lengthwise pull. It needs to be laid very carefully and pulled firmly before loading. Never use it for right angle pull, for it will spill.

[The Rolling Hitch on the WEB.](#)



## Midshipmans Hitch Or Tautline Hitch



This is a remarkably useful knot. It is adjustable AND trustworthy. Each sailor should know how to tie this knot in any circumstance. Especially to tie himself to a rescue rope thrown to him in the water. On the lifeline he has to hold the loose end securely to the standing part. This gives a good grip and a useful goal in this critical situation (HOLD!)

Anyone who uses a tent should know this knot. It is the best way to adjust your lines to the tent-poles.

It is the most simple of the adjustable knot family.

[The Tautline Hitch on the WEB.](#)

## Adjustible or Jamming Hitch



This brother of the midshipmans Hitch is just a bit less important. This is because it tends to jam. When jamming is desirable, this knot is o.k., as when work will be left unattended. Ashley states it was used by cotton brokers in New Bedford to tie their cotton samples they took from mill to mill. The packages could be opened and closed at will, and still be secure when left alone at travel.

[The Adjustible or Jamming Hitch on the WEB.](#)

## The Cow Hitch



This hitch is really useful for tying a cow to a pole so it can graze round it. I myself would add an overhand knot at the loose end as a stopper. But I am not a farmer. Sailors use it to secure a lanyard to a shroud.

[The Cow Hitch on the WEB.](#)

## Reversed Half Hitches



This knot is used to tie guy-ropes to tent-poles. But it is inferior to the [Tautline Hitch](#). The only reason I have included it in the elementary hitches is because its topology places it there. I see no use for it. (Please let me know if you know an application where this knot is the best knot to use.) A keen eye will recognize a capsized Reefknot in it.

[The Reversed Half Hitches on the WEB.](#)

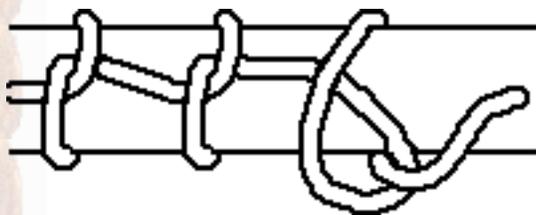
## Lobster Buoy Hitch



The Lobster Buoy Hitch is almost as secure as the Buntline Hitch, but more easy to untie. It is used to tie timber.

[The Reversed Half Hitches on the WEB.](#)

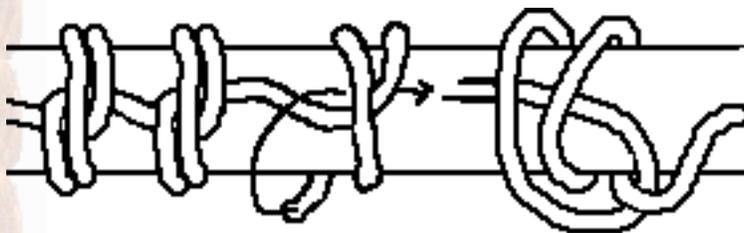
## Marline Hitch or Single Hitch



This hitch is very practical to lash long objects. The working end needs only one tug and will not slip easy. Before the 'tiewrap' (or how are they called) this hitch was used by electrical engineers to tie 'wiring-trees'. A row marlhitches is best started and ended with a [double marlhitch](#).

[The Marline Hitch on the WEB.](#)

## The Strangle Knot or Double Marline Hitch



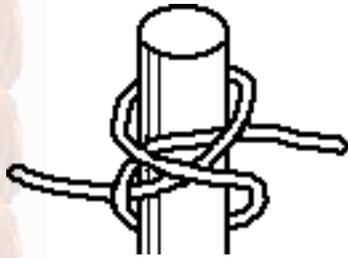
The strangle knot is important as temporary whipping and as permanent binding from which you need more in line. Laid well it is virtually impossible to untie without tools (needle or knife). So never use it if you need to untie. Used as marlhitch it is best used as

first and last in a row. Or when a row becomes 'dangerously' long this hitch is used as ensurance between shorter rows.

Be careful!. Tied in this way the working end (or the bundle) needs only one tug, but it is not enough to pull once, it needs to be worked up properly!

[The Strangle Knot on the WEB.](#)

# The Constrictor Hitch



The constrictor knot is important as temporary whipping and as permanent binding from which you need more than one in a row, but not in line (when you should use the strangle knot). Laid well, it is virtually impossible to untie without tools (needle or knife). Never use it if you need to untie it. It is almost the strongest among the 'simple' hitches. Only the double constrictor is stronger. Because the constrictor may be tied in a bight, it is often preferred over the strangle knot. For more information on the constrictor-knot-family you may visit the [Constrictor-knot Family](#).

Any comment, suggestions, anything mail me:  **qqqq**  
at [realknots.com](mailto:qqqq@realknots.com) with subject "*question*"

All mail without thr right subject is flussed unred.  
automaticly.

I am sorry I had to remove the mail link. The mailgrabbers  
and spammers won. But.... I have a few hidden mail address  
for them to mail to each other after they grabbed it.

.....



Because this is an non-comercial site I can and will not allow junk mail nor spam. Therefore comercial, non-personal and bulkmail will be charged with handling costs of \$100 per mail.

[Back To](#)



[Ropers Knot Page](#)

[Forward To](#)



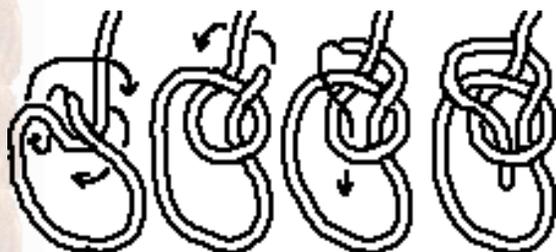
[The Loops](#)

[Back To](#)[The Hitches](#)[Standard copyrights and disclaimer.](#)

## Single loops ( )

[Back To](#)[Ropers Knot Page](#)

### The Bowline



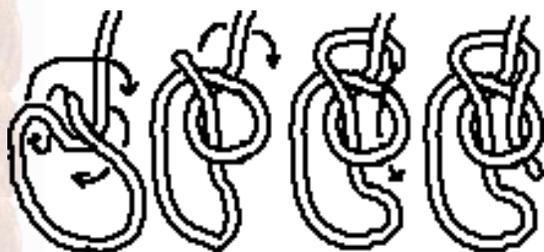
The Bowline Knot is one of the most used loop knots. This variant is most used in the world. Probably due to its simplicity, security, and its relationship with the Sheet bend. Keep the cross point in step A between a finger and thumb and make a clock-wise turn with your wrist. Without the loop in between, it is the same knot.

If the loop is expected to be heavily loaded, the bowline is, in fact, not secure enough. There is a rule of thumb which states that the loose end should be as long as 12 times the circumference for the sake of safety.

#### The Bowline

"Lay the bight to make a hole  
Then under the back and around the pole  
Over the top and thru the eye  
Cinch it tight and let it lie"

### The Dutch Marine Bowline / or The Cowboy Bowline



The Dutch Navy uses this variant of the bowline. And, of course, the Dutch sailor says this one is superior. The working end is not so easy pushed back by accident, they say. I think it is just a difference in culture.

There is a rule of thumb which states that the loose end should be as long as 12 times the circumference for the sake of safety.

### Double Figure-of-eight loop.



The double eight is a knot used by climbers. It is easy to tie and safer as the bowline. There is a discussion whether there should be a stopper at the end of the loose end or not. Speed of (un)tying is a safety factor itself.

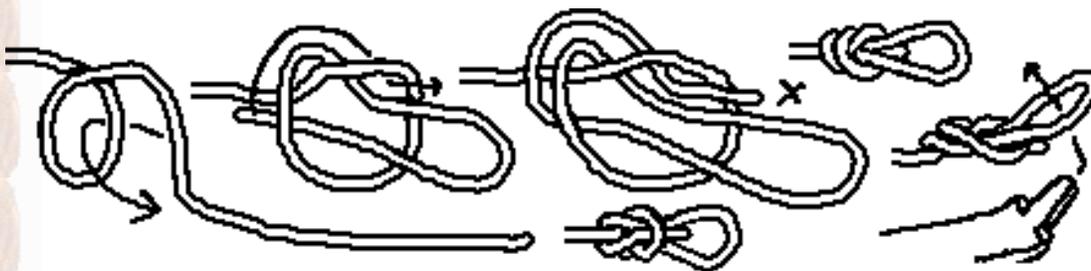
The first way of tying is equal to the way of tying the [flamish eight](#), but now in a double rope. The 'loose-end' is the loop. This way is only applicable when the loop is 'empty' during tying.



If the loop is to be tied round something (round "your waist" for instance) you first tie an eight then lay the loop and double the eight. It is important to have enough rope for the loop. It requires experience, so start practicing.

[The Double Figure-of-eight loop on the WEB.](#)

## The Bowstring Knot



The Bowstring Knot is an ancient knot that is used as an eye for bowstrings. The knot is simple and strong. Once tied and pulled firmly, you do not want to untie it: you might call it a

good 'tie-once' loop knot.

The bowstring knot is appreciated because it is small, strong, secure, and easy to tie. It's neat because it does not have loose ends.

Modern archers prefer fixed spliced loops.

If the loose (cross marked) end is not secured within the loop between the bow and loop, it is wise to add a small [overhand knot](#) as stopper.

[The Bowstring Knot on the WEB.](#)

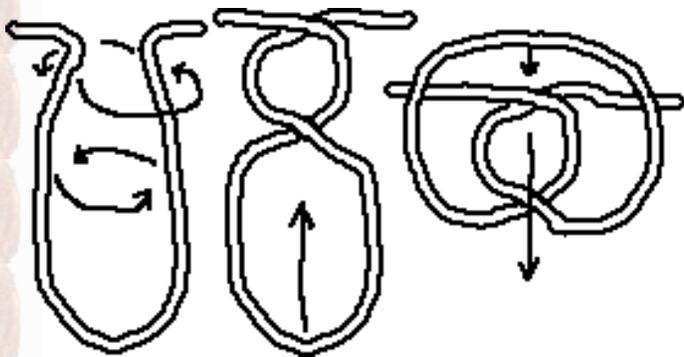
## The Tucked Double Overhand



what it is made for.

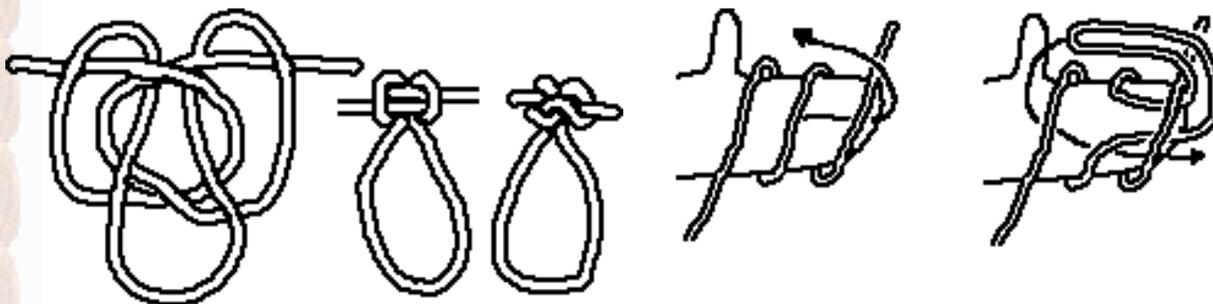
If you need a good looking and strong loop this is a good candidate. The Loose end must be at least two to three rope diameters long. But if you make the loose end inflexible with for instance glue, resch or by melting and you can hide it almost completely inside the two round turns. The "tucked double overhand" is a permanent loop. It jams badly, but that's

## The Butterfly or Lineman's Loop

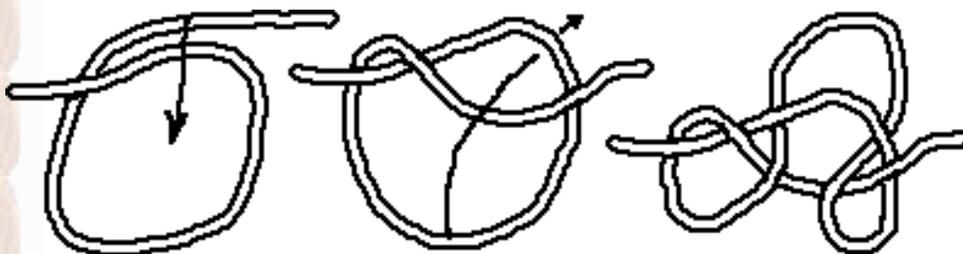


An excellent easy to tie loop for applications needing a loop in another place than the rope-end, but somewhere in the middle. It has an excellent lead, and is secure even if the forces on both ends are stronger than the load in the loop.

[The Butterfly loop on the WEB.](#)



## The Artillery Loop

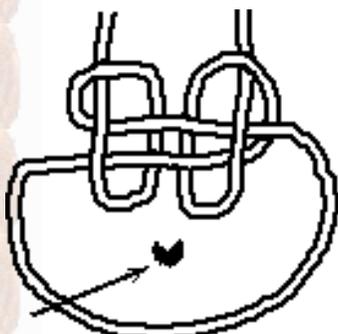


A practical and easy to tie loop for applications needing a loop in another place than the rope-end but somewhere in the middle. It is not as strong as the [butterfly](#) but is a bit faster to tie and untie. As the name already suggests it was used

by the artillery (for carrying their guns over the shoulder.) Do not pull the rope too hard when the loop is not loaded. It is best used as temporary knot for carrying things. As always, work up the knot neatly!

[The Artillery loop on the WEB.](#)

## The Pendant Hitch



A hitch to tie a pebble or a breastplate to a necklace. You have to make sure the object is secured in the loop. If you use a loop (this loop) to tie a pebble or other nice stone to a neck loop without extra (visible) support it is wise to use a leather neck loop. Make a cut in the length of the inside of the loop. Not too deep; it is only to roughen the surface to improve the grip of the knot. And last but not least..... use a good shoemakers glue. The result is surprising.

The pendant hitch is closely related to the [The True Lovers or Fisherman's Knot.](#)

Any comment, suggestions, anything mail me:  *qqqq*  
*at realknots.com with subject "question"*

All mail without thr right subject is flussed unred.  
automaticly.

I am sorry I had to remove the mail link. The mailgrabbers  
and spammers won. But.... I have a few hidden mail address  
for them to mail to each other after they grabbed it.



Because this is an non-commercial site I can and will not allow junk mail nor spam. Therefor commercial, non-personal and bulk mail will be charged with a handling  
cost of \$100 per mail.

[Back To](#)



[Ropers Knot Page](#)

[Standard copyrights and disclaimer.](#)

[Forward To](#)



[The Noose](#)

[Back To](#)[The Loops](#)

# The Noose (🇩🇪)

[Back To](#)[Ropers Knot Page](#)

Nooses, snares and lasso's.

## The Noose in General

**WARNING!! The noose is not a knot to play hangman with. Too many accidents already killed children who thought they could release it in time. Even not strong pulled nooses can be dangerous round your neck.**



There are three basic ways to make a noose. The first way is running the 'tail' of rope through a fixed loop on the end of that same rope. This may be a spliced-loop or a knotted-loop like the bowline. (In fact the [bowline](#) is used very often as the running loop by sailors.) The simple noose itself is used as a running knot for swift running loops.



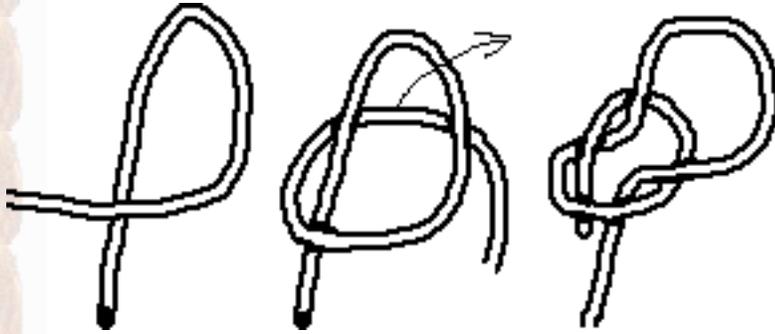
The second way to make a noose is to tie a running knot (a simple knot or hitch) round the standing part of the rope in a way that pulling on the knot-side closes the loop. This is the most common way for making nooses. It makes the loop to close almost as easy as a noose using a fixed loop as a running knot.



The third way is to tie a running knot in a way that pulling the knot is opening the loop. I only know one practical application for this way of tying this noose: for tying the rope to a yo yo, with the eight as running knot. But in packing bags and loads you will find it sometimes as an intermediate loop. It is also often the result of tying the running knot the wrong way.

[The noose on the WEB.](#)

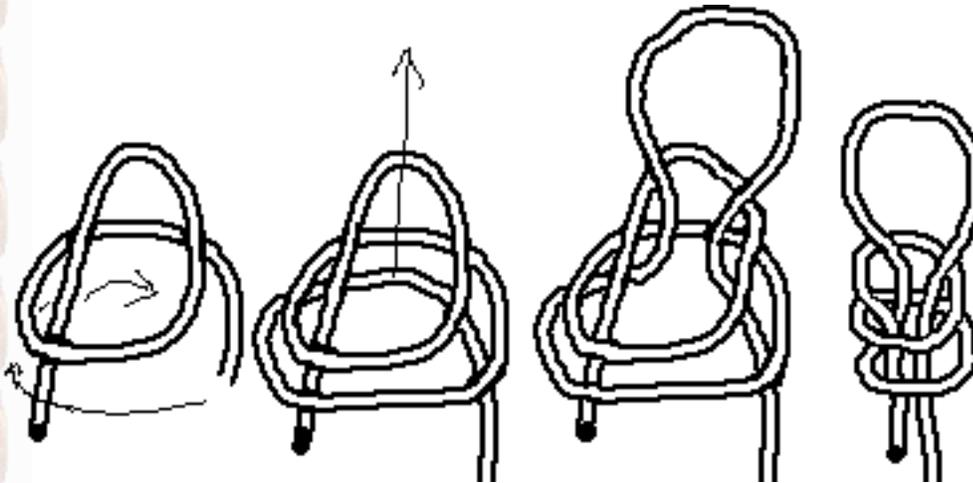
## The Simple Noose



This is the simplest of the nooses. Its used mostly as a base for further work. It is a close relative of the [overhand-knot](#) and the [Marline Hitch or Single Hitch](#). If used as noose it is best to add an overhand-knot in the end. This noose is used as a poor snare for catching small birds.

[The noose on the WEB.](#)

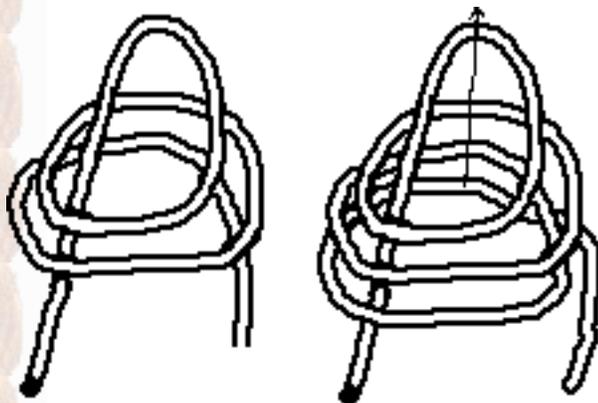
## The Strangle-Snare



The [strangle-knot](#) is an excellent knot to be used a running knot for a snare. The pull is easy adjustable. The more force is applied from inside the loop the more firmly the running knot prevents opening of the loop.

[The Strangle-Snare on the WEB.](#)

## The Scaffold knot or Gallows Knot.



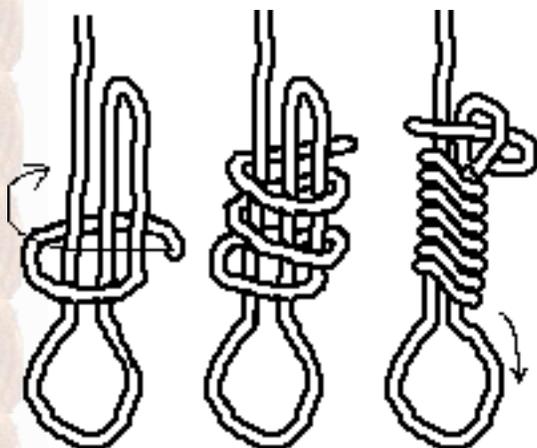
The third noose is based on the [the Multifold-Overhand-knot](#). As its second name already suggests it has a dark history.

It is also used as a knot to tie angling-rods to fishline.

**Never play hangman. It can really kill.**

[The Scaffold knot or Gallows Knot the WEB.](#)

# The Hangman's Knot.



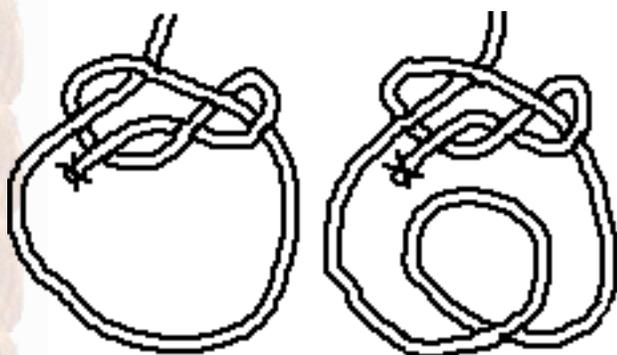
This knot is used for the gallows-tree as well. The force to close it is adjusted better than with the gallows knot. And because it is bigger in the neck it is believed to break the neck more easy. That would make it more mercy-full as the gallows-knot which kills by strangeling.

The Hangman is also used as a knot to tie angles to fishline.

**Never play hangman. It can really kill.**

[The Hangman's Knot the WEB.](#)

# The Reverse Eight-noose.



This is (so far) the only 'wrong' running noose I know applications for. It to tie a package and ... for tying YoYo's. Experts use one loop to make it possible to let the yoyo spin on the end and to call it up with a little firm pull. The yoyo has to spin fast and the noose has to be trimmed carefully.

Starters use two loops and tie it firmly.

Use eventually an overhand-knot on the cross-marked ends.

(This is not the best way to fasten your YoYo. If you want to use the best technique you have to un-twine a line with two yarns and re-twine one of the yarns by doubling it with the YoYo in the middle. Free-spinning the YoYo my wear out the loop.) [The Reverse Eight-noose the WEB.](#)

Any comment, suggestions, anything mail me:  **qqqq**  
at [realknots.com](http://realknots.com) with subject "**question**"

All mail without thr right subject is flussed unred.  
automaticly.

I am sorry I had to remove the mail link. The mailgrabbers  
and spammers won. But.... I have a few hidden mail address  
for them to mail to each other after they grabbed it.

.....



Because this is an non-commercial site I can and will not allow junk mail nor spam. Therefor commercial, non-personal and bulkmail will be charged with handling costs of \$100 per mail.

[Back To](#)



[Ropers Knot Page](#)

[Standard copyrights and disclaimer.](#)

[Forward To](#)



[The Links](#)

[Back To](#)[The Noose](#)[Standard copyrights and disclaimer.](#)

# FAK

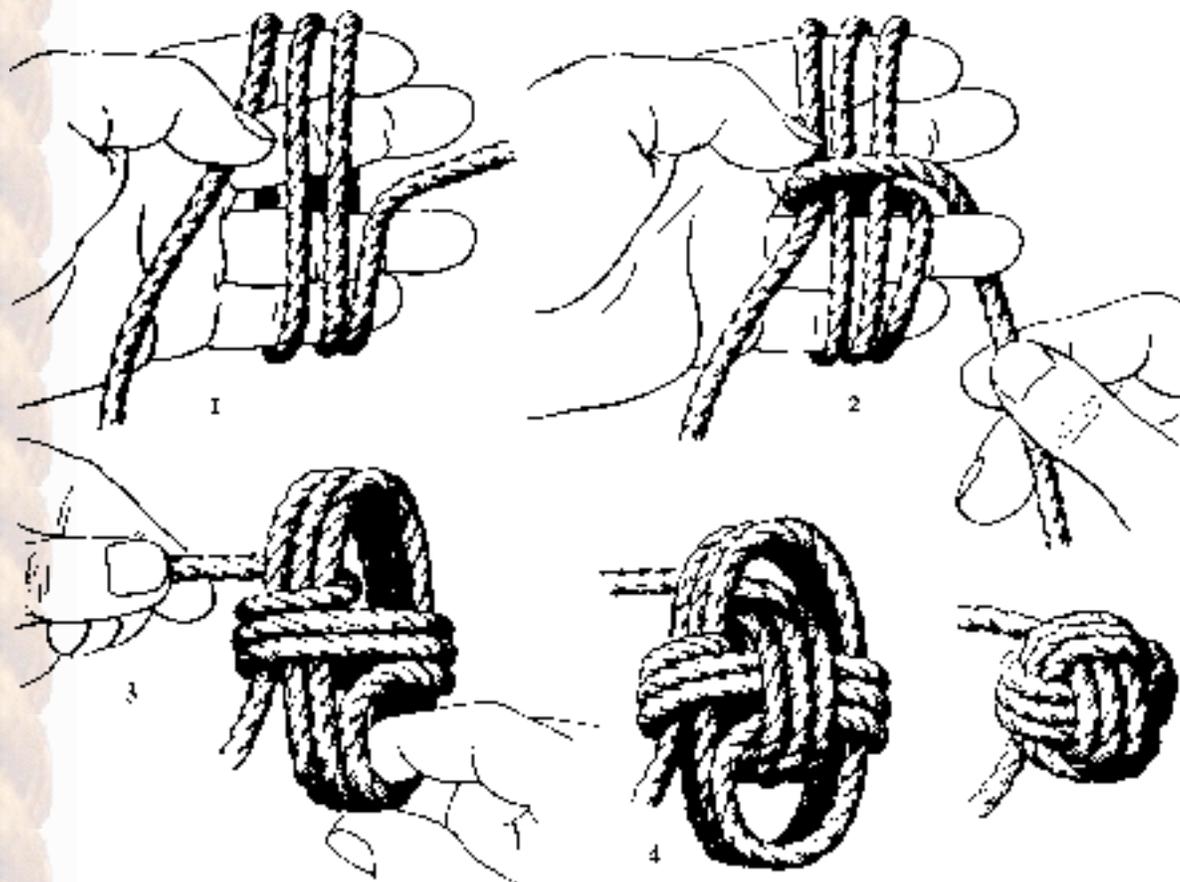
frequently Asked Knots.

[Back To](#)[Ropers Knot Page](#)

Following knots were asked for very often last year. For frequently asked questions on knots also try: [rec.crafts.knots FAQ](#)

This page is more or less made to publish these "FAQ-knots" so I can add them in the knot index.

## The Monkey Fist



The Monkey Fist is used as an end knot for a heaving line. A heaving line is a line used for throwing from one location to another. This enables a larger line that could not be thrown over the distance to be pulled over. The most common use of a heaving line is at sea, to pull a cable to shore from a ship. A cable is not easily thrown over a distance of 10m [

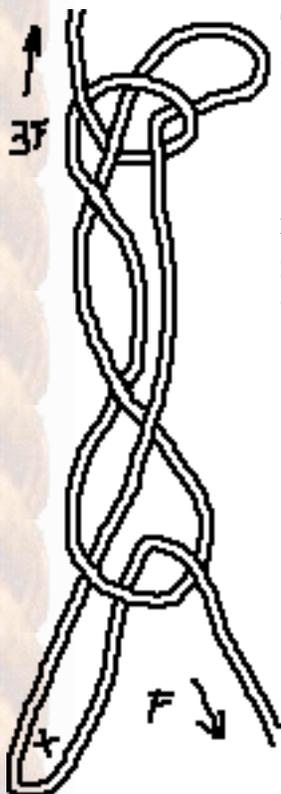
ft] or more, so instead one throws a heaving line. The line is tied to the cable and when it has been received the cable can then be pulled over. To make it easier to throw one needs to connect a weight on the end of the line - usually a stone, lead-ball or a small bag of sand is connected to the end. Better still a small rope ball is tied on the end. It is neat, it will endure many tosses last long and it is easily thrown. That is what the monkey fist is was originally used for. Now it is also used as fancy knot for key-rings, necklaces and so on. The knot can be done with or without a central

core (i.e. a round stone or ball bearing) to add extra weight but it is recommended to use extra loops depending on the size of the object.

The instruction drawing is made by Hervey Garrett Smith and copied from the dutch translation of his book "[The Marlinespike Sailor](#)". I got permission of "International Marine/Ragged Mountain Press" to use the instruction drawing on my site.

(I got 3 to 5 requests a week for this knot. That is why I am sure it is most wanted.)

## The Dolly



This is probably the most famous truckers knot. I never realized it was so wanted. I got 2 to 4 requests per month for it.

You need to hook in the cross marked place. The force  $F$  you apply at the loose end is multiplied by (almost) 3 on the standing part. You may say it is only a rope tackle. Beware, it wears out your precious rope fast, so if you use it often it is wise to use a form of protection in the bight where the loose end is pulled through. A folded paper will do, a smooth piece of leather is much better.

I do not have experience with this knot myself. But I have been told it will hold as long as the force is applied. And because that is also the case with its closest relative, the sheep shank, I think it will.

Any comment, suggestions, anything mail me:  *qqqq*  
at [realknots.com](http://www.realknots.com) with subject "*question*"

All mail without thr right subject is flussed unred.  
automaticly.

I am sorry I had to remove the mail link. The mailgrabbers  
and spammers won. But.... I have a few hidden mail address  
for them to mail to each other after they grabbed it.

.....

Because this is an non-comercial site I can and will not allow junk mail nor spam. Therefore commercial, non-personal and bulkmail will be charged with a handling cost of \$100 per mail.



[Back To](#)



[Ropers Knot Page](#)

[Standard copyrights and disclaimer.](#)

[Forward To](#)



[The Links](#)

[Standard copyrights and disclaimer.](#)



# Ropers Knots Page ()



The knot site on real knots in rope.

---

## What are the recent changes of the Roper Site ??

---

## The Web Knot index

[A](#) [B](#) [C](#) [D](#) [E](#) [F](#) [G](#) [H](#) [I](#) [J](#) [K](#) [L](#) [M](#) [N](#) [O](#) [P](#) [Q](#) [R](#) [S](#) [T](#) [U](#) [V](#) [W](#) [X](#) [Y](#) [Z](#)

---

## The Roper's Knot Pages



[Ropers Knot Page](#) The English 'root' of this knot-site.

 [Touwslagers knopen pagina](#) De Nederlandse 'root' van deze site.

[The WEB's Knot Index](#) (All the knots I found on the web)

[Books on Knots on the Web](#)

[Reverse Links](#) Links To Pages with links to Roper's

Page's

## International Guild Of Knot Tyers



[The International Guild of Knot Tyers](#) 𐀀

[Texas Branch](#) 𐀀

[North American Branch](#) 𐀀

### Other Knot (link) pages.

 [Klabautermann Knotentafel](#) 𐀀

[Frequently Asked Questions](#) 𐀀

[Knot Knowledge](#) Photo-Illustrations

[Knot Notes](#) 𐀀 Great site, Knots and links.

[Knots on the Web \(Peter Suber\)](#) 𐀀 An other (GOOD) site.

Differently orderd than this one.

[The Art of Knot Tying](#)

[RopeCraft](#)

[The Argus Clearinghouse Knots](#) (vanity) Peter and me.

[Knot Tying Resources](#)

[FUN WITH KNOTS](#)

 [Knopar på svenska och engelska](#)

### Knots in Rope



[FM 5-125, Rigging](#) 𐀀 Great site, but o so large, Not always "on line".

[Get Knotted! Animated Knots for Scouts](#) 𐀀 42nd BRIGHTON (Saltdean)

[Six Exploding Knots.](#) Fast untying slipknots.

[Some useful knots mpeg!](#) 4 'movies' three ok, the sheetbend wrong.

[Lehigh Samson](#) (among other drawings with small description)

[S.A.Kids knots](#) Requires netscape 3.0 with plugin.

[Ropeworks](#) Clear instructions, A sample taste of a book.

[Marlinspike Knot of the Month](#) A new knot each month

[The BRMRG knot review](#)

 [Josella's 2. HomePage](#) A few great knot pictures.

 [Välkommen till Monicas Hemsida](#) Knopar och Macrame. 4 great pictures.

[Marlinspike Knot of the Month](#) Animated. b u t s\_\_l\_\_o\_\_w.

[Programs Knots](#) Examples of knot instruction programs.

[Knot](#) Some nice drawn interweaved knots.

[Troop 480 knots](#)  Lots of Knots, indexed by name an use.

## Sailing



[Baidarka Instruction Manual](#) Halfway the document a pipe lashing.

 [Nós de Marinheiro](#)

[Marine news: Knots](#) 7 sailors knot

[Boating knots](#) 4 essential well known knots.

## Scouting



 [Australian Scouts- Index of Knots](#)

[Index to Troop 24 Graphic Images](#)

[Canoe Certificate Course](#) Redcliffe Scout District

[Knots, Bends and Hitches](#) Instruction on 4 knots.

[Knots](#) From a BSA group

[Canoe Certificate Course](#) session 4, Ropes and Lines

## Fishing



[Fishing Knots](#)  A great sample of important knots.

[Useful Knots.](#)

[Dave Whitlock-- Knots: Putting it All Together](#)

[Fishing Knots](#) Grant's Guide - by Ern Grant

[Fishing In Early Medieval Times](#) A bit of history.

[Knots](#) Good fish knots

## Climbing And Caving



[The Alpine Butterfly](#) With an animated gif

[The Prusik Knot](#)

 [Caving Knots](#) [More Like This]

## Math.



[The KnotPlot Site](#)  An entry to wonderful pictures.

[Tie me up, tie me down](#)  Great site.

[Knots and Braids \(and\) Links](#) a math index to other sites

[The Knot Square](#)

[Knot--from Eric Weisstein's World of Mathematics](#)

[Pictures from knots and links](#)

[Math art gallery](#)

[A math page](#)

[Flaming Pear:Products:Knot](#) Advertizing page for a knotdrawing program

[Design Any Knot from DNA](#) A trefoil knot

## Celtic Knots



[Celtic Knot Construction#1](#)

[Computer Drawn Celtic Knotwork](#)

[Celtic Knot Puzzle](#) This knot's not right, fix it!

[Celtic Design Series](#) A Home page on Celtic knots.

[Celtic Knots](#) A Celtic Knot Home Page.

## Knot Art



[Chinese Knotting](#) Some Fancy knots

[No Title](#) Some Artistic knots

[Not Knot](#) A light sculpture by Scott Kim

[Fair Winds design](#) Woven Jewelry - Turksheads - Celtic Knots

[Hand-crafted Knot Jewelry:](#) Decorative Marlingspike Seamanship.



[Art of Braiding](#) Beautiful pictures of braiding work.

## Poetry

[Single Carrick Bend](#) A poem on this famous knot.

## The Tie



[Marvin Minsky Rope Tie](#) How to Tie A Tie

[MBA Style magazine](#) Really a Tie of rope

[The world headquarters for ties...X](#)

[Tie Yourself in Knots](#) More than only tie knots.

## Div.

[Forensic Knot Analysis](#)

[The Sword Knot Collection](#)

[Gimp](#)  YES! a site on fancy knotting!!

[Amaze Your Friends](#) A 'magic' trick

[Teach yourself knots and splices.](#) A 60 minutes video.

[Riggers Page](#)

[Splicing a Rope on a 30 hour Longcase Clock](#) Splicing woven rope

[How to Count Rug Knots....](#) Tapis/carpet knots

[Types of Knots](#)

[The ins and outs of shoelace tying!](#)

[The Better Bow](#)

[Ian Fieggen's Site: How to tie an "Ian Knot"](#)

About knots.(texts)

[Knot So Fast.](#)  A proposal for regulating the world knot tying speed record.

[Knots, Bends, and Hitches](#) A great tekst on knots.

## Knot Shops

[MARLINESPIKE, LTD](#)

[Knot\\_tyer's Home Page](#)



---

Any comment, suggestions, anything mail me:  *qqqq*  
*at realknots.com with subject "question"*

All mail without thr right subject is flussed unred.  
automaticly.

I am sorry I had to remove the mail link. The mailgrabbers  
and spammers won. But.... I have a few hidden mail address  
for them to mail to each other after they grabbed it.

.....

I can and will not allow junk mail nor spam. Therfor commercial, non-personal and bulkmail will be charged with handling costs of \$100 per mail.

---



[Back To  
The Link Page](#)

# Books on Knots on the Web

[Back To  
Ropers Knot Page](#)

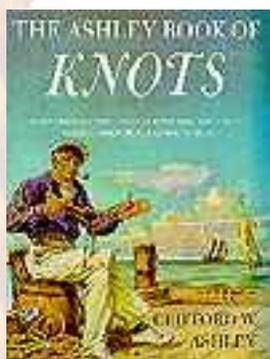
## Bibliographies on the Web.

[Knots&Splices](#)  I can not beat this excellent list!

[Series on Knots and Everything](#) is a book series polarized around the theory of knots.

[Celtci Bibliography](#)

## The Ashley Book of Knots



By: Clifford W. Ashley

Publisher: Faber and Faber,  
London & Boston.

ISBN: 0-385-04025-4

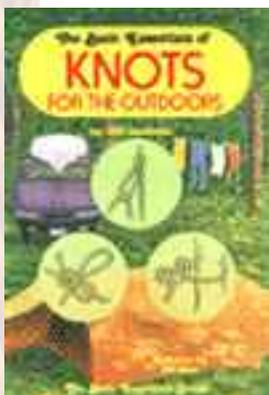
The book on knots. About 3800 different knots, 7000 drawings. It covers almost every practical knot and gives clear instructions on how to tie them. It gives some history from the knots and tells you where the author found them.

## The Basic Essentials of KNOTS FOR THE OUTDOORS

By: Cliff Jacobson

Publisher: ICS Books

[Online Sports  
Mountain Zone Bookstore](#)

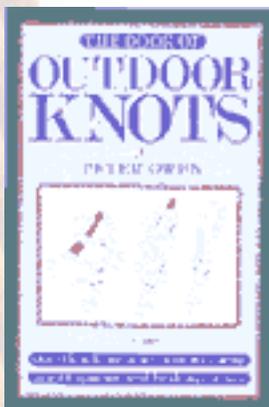


ISBN: 0-934802-57-2

Is unusual, if not unique, in having knot-tying instructions for lefthanders as well as righthanders.

[Table Of Contents](#)

## The Book of Outdoor Knots



By: Owen, Peter

Publisher: Lyons & Burford

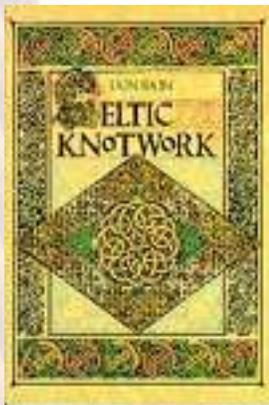
[Mountain Zone Bookstore](#)

[The Adventurous Traveler Bookstore](#)

ISBN: 1-55821-225-6

This book illustrates in a simple handbook format seventy of the most common knots for the outdoors. [Table Of Contents](#)

## Celtic Ropework



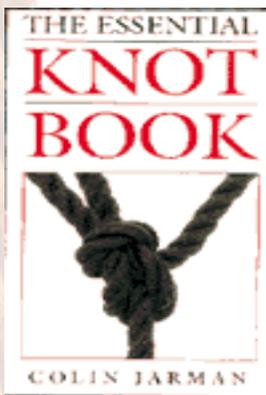
By: Iain Bain

Publisher: Sterling Publishing Co., Inc., New York

[Danno's Celtic Site](#)

ISBN: 0-8069-8638-7

## The Essential Knot Book



By: Colin Jarman

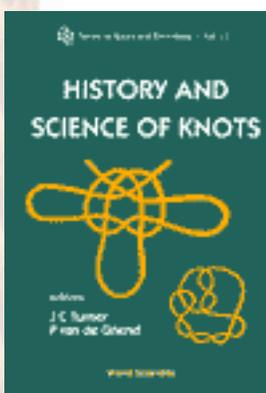
Publisher: International Marine/Ragged Mountain Press, A Division of the McGraw-Hill Companies

[Red Sky at Night](#)

ISBN: 0-87742-221-4

Here are the 43 most important knots and splices you need to use aboard your boat.

## History and Science of Knots



By: J C Turner & P van de Griend

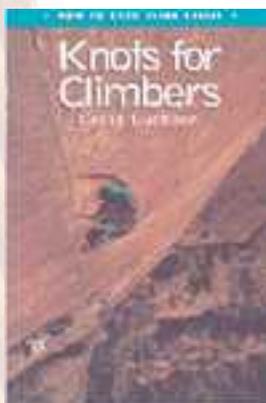
Publisher: World Scientific

[singnet](#)  
[Series on Knots and Everything, Volume 11](#)

ISBN: 981-02-2469-9

This book brings together twenty essays on various topics in the history and science of knots. It is divided into five parts, which deal respectively with knots in prehistory and antiquity, non-European traditions, working knots, the developing science of knots, and decorative and other aspects of knots.

## How to Rock Climb, Knots for Climbers



By: Luebben, Craig

Publisher: Chockstone Press

[Online Sports](#)  
[Mountain Zone Bookstore](#)

ISBN: 0-934641-58-7

This book is from the popular series on How to Rock Climb. In this book you will find detailed information with illustrations on the most popular knots used by rock climbers. A chapter in the book is also devoted to some of the equipment used by rock climbers. [Table Of Contents](#)

## The Klutz Book of Knots



By: John Cassidy

Publisher: % %

ISBN: % %

## Knots and Lines Illustrated

By: Paul Snyder

Publisher: % %

ISBN: % %

## Knots and Splices



By: Jeff Toghill

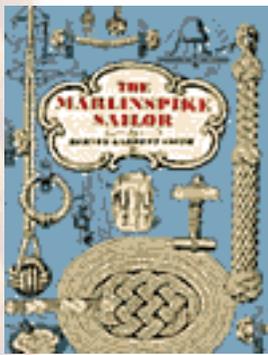
Publisher: Fernhurst Books, Duke's Pat

ISBN: 0 906754 11 9

A booklet on all the common knots and splices with their uses and applications. I got complaints having this book on my page. The first edition should contain too much errors.

## The Marlinespike Sailor

By: Hervey Garret Smith



Publisher: International Marine, division of McGraw-Hill, Inc.

[Knots & Marlinspike](#)

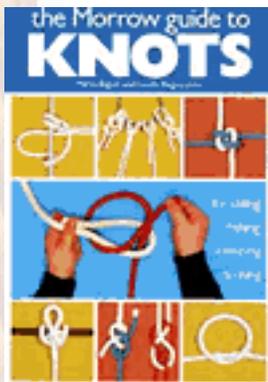
Three books on knots

ISBN: 0-87742-412-8

A reprinted/revised version of a popular book on knots. With sections on basic knot tying, decorative rope-work, canvas-work and wood carvings.

## The morrow guide to Knots

By: Mario Bigon, Guido Regazzoni



Publisher: William Morrow Company, New York

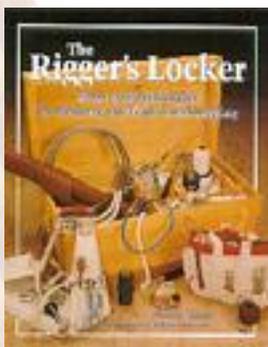
[Mountain Zone Bookstore](#)

ISBN: 0-668-01225-4 (paper)  
0-668-01225-6

[Table Of Contents](#)

## Rigger's Locker

By: Brion Tos



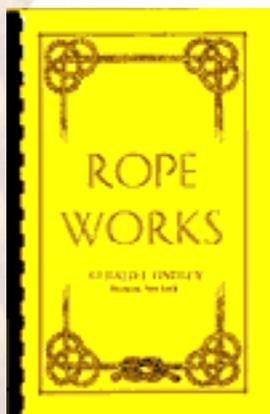
Publisher: International Marine

ISBN: 0-87742-961-8

## Rope Works

By: Gerald L. Findley

[Rope Works](#)

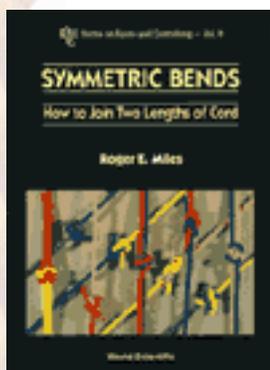


Publisher: Gerald L. Findley

ISBN: ????????

A book of knots, hitches, splicing, lashing and rope making. Whether for scouting or for outdoors recreation, you will learn to tie knots with confidence.

**Symmetric Bends** How to Join Two Lengths of Cord



By: Roger E Miles

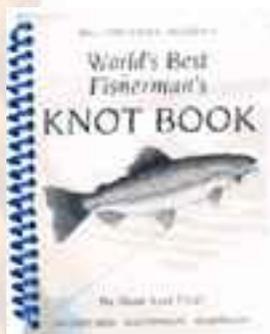
Publisher: World Scientific Publishing Co.  
Pte. Ltd.

[Series on Knots and Everything, Volume 8](#)

ISBN: 981-02-2194-0

Sufficiency: The Elementary Symmetric Bends; Necessity: Geometry and Planar Representations; Topological Considerations and a Theorem; Practical Considerations and Triple Symmetry; Sixty Symmetric Bends (Includes 16-page colour section); Miscellany; How to Invent Symmetric Bends.

**World's Best Fishermans's KNOT BOOK**



By: Bill Nelson

Publisher: ????

ISBN: ????

This is a pocket size, waterproof, tearproof book that shows the 11 knots and 5 loops every fly fisherman needs to know.

No Junk Mial

Any comment, suggestions, anything mail me:

[mail](mailto:question@realknots.com) [question@realknots.com](mailto:question@realknots.com)

All knot Ropers Web Site related mail and questions are answered for free!

No Junk Mail

Because this is an non-comercial site I can and will not allow junk mail nor spam. therefor commercial, non-personal and bulkmail will be charged with handling costs of \$100 per mail.

[Back To](#)

home

[Ropers Knot Page](#)

[Forward To](#)

revlink

[The Reverse Links](#)

[Back To](#)[The Books](#)

# Roper's Reverse Links

[Back To](#)[Ropers Knot Page](#)

Here are the links to pages I found (or that are told to me) with a link to [Ropers Knot Page](#) -(The knots home page) or one of the other page's of the virtual knot site, and not concerning knots directly. (Otherwise you find them on my [Roper's Link Page](#). Still these pages might be interesting because they all have at least one thing in common... They are interested in knotting (for whatever reason.) If you have a link to one of the Roper's Knot Pages, and there is no reverse link to your page here you can always let me know.  [question@realknots.com](mailto:question@realknots.com)

## revlinks

All references without a flag are in english/american

## General

[Crafts,Skills and Hobbies Internet Sites](#)

## Scouting



[The Scout Association of Hong Kong](#)



[fXfJfEfefBf“fO•îñ](#)



[½°Ä«¿ìÆ@¼¼°è·Î Ç×ÇØ,!.](#)

[Cub Scout Arrow of Light Board](#)

[Cub Scout Pack 46, Sam Houston Area Council](#)

[Cubitems's Home Page](#)

[Scouting Tips and Info Bits](#)



[Grupo Escoteiro Pingo D'Água - 126 / PR](#)

[Hawk Patrol Cool Web Sites](#)

[Internet Resources for Scouts, Golden Arrow District](#)

[Jim Speirs' Scouting Page](#)

 [Joti 98 The Scout Association of Hong Kong](#)

[Junior Forest Wardens](#)

 [Links naar andere scouting sites](#)

 [Mõningaid linke nii huviks kui kasuks:](#)

 [Mõningaid linke nii huviks kui kasuks: 2](#)

[Nerd World : SCOUTING](#)

[Open Directory - Recreation: Scouting: How\\_To's](#)

[Pacific Skyline Council](#)

[PHGSC - Inside our Cottage](#)

[PVGSC - Getting Connected! Just for Girls!](#)

[Royal Rangers ... A Ministry to Boys](#)

[Royal Ambassadors Camcraft](#)

[Scouting and Other Web Sites](#)

[Scouting by Nerd world media\(TM\)](#)

[Scouting Links to the Web](#)

 [Scouting on the net](#)

 [Scouting op het internet](#)

[Scouting skills and activities](#)

 [Speider relaterte linker](#)

 [Spy scout Alguns Links Interessantes.](#)

 [The NetCommish ©1997-2000 M.F. Bowman - Knots & Ropes](#)

[The Scouting JumpStation](#)

[TROOP 237's WEBPAGE](#)

[What's new on the InterNETional Scouting Pages](#)

[Troop 8 BSA Favorite Links](#)

[User Homepages](#)

[VVKSM - Links - Hoofdpagina](#)

## Climbing

[Climbing gyms](#)

[Free Climbing](#) A climbing search engine

[Jim Frankenfield - Climbing Page](#)

[RockList](#)

[TMRU Links](#)

[VER Sales Cable Rigging & Supply](#)

 [ÀÌ 1æÀ° »ê°ú °ü·ÃÇÑ ±13» ¿ÜÀÇ WebSite.¡ ¼Ò°³ÇÑ °ÍAÔ ĨÙ.](#)

## Sailing / Boating

[Buzzards Bay Home Page](#) Sailing

[Chelmarsh Sailing Club](#)

 [Das HochSeilNest](#)

 [De Boot](#)

[Hot Marine Links](#)

 [Jumbo](#)

[J30 "Awesome" Lake Michigan Sailboat Racing](#)

[Links](#)

[links](#)

 [Links des DK-Yacht-Service](#)

[Links to other interesting web sites for sailors and rope users](#)

[NauticalNet -- Nautical Links](#)

[Open Directory](#) - Recreation: Boating: Sailing: Education

[Randy's Links - sailing;boating;marine;weather;knots - PART 2](#)

 [Sailing-Links](#)

[Sailors Choice : Seamanship and Navigation](#)

[Seattle Times: Want to build a boat? Go sailing? Go online](#)

[Usefull Links for classic boating](#)

 [VAART! FLITS - wekelijks E-zine over Scheepvaart & Internet](#)

 [Varazze Club Nautico](#)

[Ventura County Boating - Home Page - Sailing - Marine Weather - Directory - Race Results - Motoryachts](#)

 [Yacht: Links - Tips](#)

## Outdoor sport

[Ask the Chief Links](#)

[Camping/ Instruction and Training](#)

[Cadedian Outdoor Technologies](#)

[Homestead.org - Crafts, Skills and Hobbies Internet Sites](#)

[I.A.T.S.E. Local #21 Home Page](#)

[PE253](#)

[ReelOutdoor Adventure & Recreation--ROAR!!!](#) !Under construction !

[Wrolin Camping 'Round the World's Special Sites](#)

[Yahooligans Sports and Recreation](#)

## Fishing

[Courtesy Web Links Resource](#)

[Living and working at sea](#)

[The Great Fly Fishing Page](#)

## Kiting

[InfoJump : Web Directory/Recreation/Kites](#)

[Kite info on the Internet](#)

## Math

 [Pri..a o ..vorovima](#)

## Div

["A Pirate's Life for Me!!"](#)

 [Æääòûâ ñòðàìèöû. ÄÅÕÑÊÀß ÏËÛÀÄÊÀ.](#)

[Curriculum Connections](#)

[Educational links](#)

[Harris Diving Links](#)

 [IRM Zuerich - Forensische Internet-Ressourcen](#)

[IOWA CITY FIRE DEPARTMENT](#)

[Links from the Club](#)

[sailordaveQ&A](#) School Project on ship wreks

[Web Site of the Day - Archives](#) North High School Library

## Cool link sites

 [+âÅ](#)

[Cool Sites](#)

[FLATTY'S HOT-SPOTS](#)

 [FreeLinks - editie1.14](#)

[Harris \( a.k.a. River Rat \) dive links](#)

[The junkie.com -- eclectic junkie resources](#)

 [Länkar - Linkejä - Links](#)

 [My Cool Site](#)

[munford.com's Best of the Web](#) Hobbies

[Online Infoage / Internet magazine](#)

[Uncle Al's Search Engines - 3.72](#)

## Private Bookmarks

 [Adrenalin T.rman.... ve Do..a Sporlar.. - Do..a sporlar.., da..c..l..k, seyahat ve kamp](#)

[Bob & Geri's home page](#)

[Brand's Links](#)

 [Christina's Homepage!](#)

[Folie One -- Links](#)

 [Henscon - Links, links, links](#)

[Heimdahl9's Home Page](#)

 [Junioravd Odjuren](#)

 [Kirres hemsida](#)

[Mark L. Hessenflow Vanity Page](#)

 [Merenkulku ja veneily](#)

[Michel T. Talbot's Bookmarks](#)

[Oh no, not another Home Page!](#)

[Other Stites](#)

 [Rickards hemsida](#)

[SchoonerMan Rope Locker](#)

 [Stephen Jones's Bookmarks](#)

[Unols Rvtec Link-O-Rama](#)

## Just Fun

---

## Engines





Any comment, suggestions, anything mail me:

[question@realknots.com](mailto:question@realknots.com)

All knot Ropers Web Site related mail and questions are answered for free!



Because this is an non-comercial site I can and will not allow junk mail nor spam. therefor commercial, non-personal and bulkmail will be charged with handling costs of \$100 per mail.

[Back To](#)



[Ropers Knot Page](#)

[Back To](#)



[Ropers Knot Page](#)

**BONUS.COM**®

**Fun and Games**



**Space Invasion**



**Chase**



**Battlefield!**



**Game Chest**



**Monster Games**



**Football**



**Baseball**

### Welcome to Bonus.com!

We hope you'll enjoy all of our great entertaining and educational content.

**▼ If you're seeing this page it means that your browser is having a little trouble with our site ▼**

Bonus.com is best viewed with Internet Explorer version 4.0 or higher; or Netscape Navigator version 4.0 or higher. If you have one of these browsers please be sure that your JavaScript (or ActiveX script) option is enabled, it's well worth the effort. Hope to see you soon.



**Holidays**



**Money!**



**Bonus Junior**



**Board Games**



**Cities & States**



**Homework Help**



**Beakman & Jax**

## Ropers Knot Page

---

### Navigation

[Search/Browse](#)

[Main Page](#)



[Recreation](#)



[hobbies and  
crafts](#)



[knots](#)



[Guide  
Information](#)

### Guide Information

<http://www.realknots.com/knots/index.htm>

#### Keywords

[knots](#)

#### Compiled by

Ed Prins (erpprs@dds.nl)

#### Rating

Overall: 

Resource Description: **2**

Resource Evaluation: **2**

Guide Design: **5**

Organization Schemes: **5**

Guide Meta-information: **3**

([Rated](#) 11/2000)

**Last Checked by Argus Clearinghouse**

June 24, 2000



# The Argus Clearinghouse

*The Clearinghouse is no longer being actively maintained. Please see [this notice](#) for further details.*

## Navigation

[Search/Browse](#)

[Internet Searching Center](#)

## Site Information

[FAQ](#)

[Submit a Guide](#)

[Digital Librarian's Award](#)

[Ratings System](#)

[Contact Us](#)

## Categories

[Arts & Humanities](#)

[Business & Employment](#)

[Communication](#)

[Computers & Information  
Technology](#)

[Education](#)

[Engineering](#)

[Environment](#)

[Government & Law](#)

[Health & Medicine](#)

[Places & Peoples](#)

[Recreation](#)

[Science & Mathematics](#)

[Social Sciences & Social Issues](#)

 Copyright © Argus Associates, Inc.



What are you looking for?

[Advanced SEARCH](#)

**NOW AVAILABLE!**

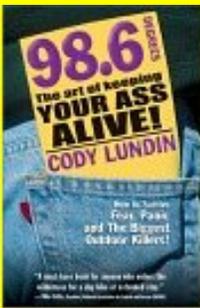


**Doug Ritter designed Pocket Survival Pak 3.9 oz LIFE SAVER**

**NEW: BUY NOW!**



Doug says "a must read..."



Doug says "Not your father's survival manual..."

All material on this site is copyrighted (see © notice below)

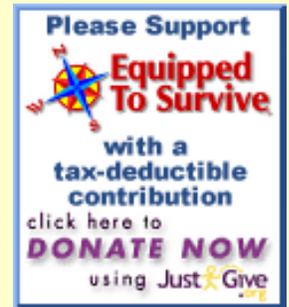


# Equipped To Survive™

The Definitive Source for Independent Reviews & Information on Outdoors Gear and Survival Equipment and Techniques

*Chance favors only the prepared and equipped.™\**

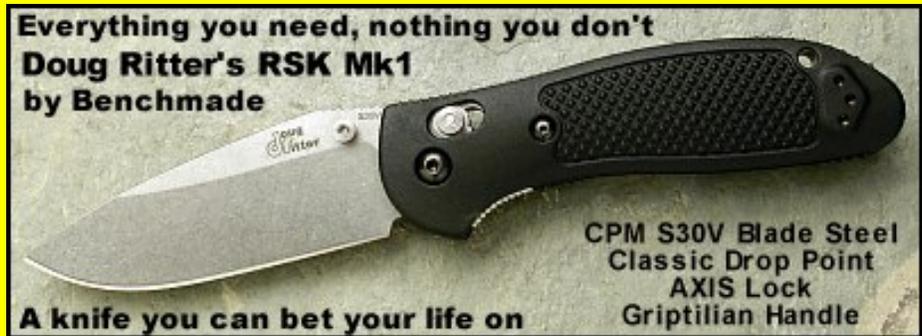
Equipped To Survive™ is the most comprehensive online resource for independent reviews of survival equipment and outdoors gear, as well as survival and Search and Rescue information. Equipped To Survive™ will help you determine the best choices to prepare for anything from a hike in the park to a life threatening emergency or disaster. **Please note that this is not a "survivalist" site.** The Equipped To Survive™ Web site is supported by the non-profit 501(c)(3) [Equipped To Survive Foundation](#) and edited by noted survival authority, [Douglas S. Ritter](#).



Before proceeding, please review the [WARNING & DISCLAIMER](#) about information on this site.

**Support Equipped To Survive™**

**N  
E  
W  
!**



**N  
E  
W  
!**

**Mini-RSK Mk1™ NOW AVAILABLE!**

Doug Ritter has designed an extraordinary new utility/survival folding knife with every feature you need—and it's affordable! [GET THE DETAILS](#) and [find out how to place your order now!](#)

Proceeds support Equipped To Survive Foundation and this Web site.

A very few LIMITED EDITION Equipped To Survive™ Chris Reeve Sebenzas are still available. [Order NOW before they're all gone!](#)

Proceeds support Equipped To Survive Foundation and this Web site.



## The Survival Forum™

[The Survival Forum™](#) offers you a place to ask questions about emergency preparedness, survival equipment and outdoors gear. Whether you are experienced or just starting, we [welcome you to our community](#).



Free Consulting  
for U.S. Military  
Members

## Sections

[More Features](#)  
[Show Reports](#)  
[Survival Forum](#)  
[Survival Stories](#)  
[Gear & Equipment](#)  
[Medical / First Aid](#)  
[Disaster Prep](#)  
[Survival Kits](#)  
[Aviation Survival](#)  
 Including:  
[Ditching](#)  
[Life Rafts](#)  
[Life Vests](#)  
[Marine Survival](#)  
[Urban Survival](#)  
[D.R.'s Survival Kits](#)  
[Commercial Kits](#)  
[Manufacturers](#)  
[Retail Suppliers](#)  
[Skills & Technique](#)  
[Survival For Kids](#)  
[Schools & Courses](#)

Including:  
[Survival Schools](#)  
[Wilderness Medical](#)

## Publications

Including:  
[Survival Books](#)  
[Wilderness Medicine](#)  
[Surv. & Med. Videos](#)

## Survival Links

[Other Links](#)  
[Commentary](#)  
[Web Rings](#)  
[Letters & Stuff](#)  
[About ETS](#)  
[ETS Foundation](#)  
[Doug Ritter's  
Web Site](#)

[Read the ETS  
Privacy Policy](#)



We participate on GuideStar,  
the on-line standard for  
nonprofit accountability



## Equipped Briefings

[A Quick Look At New Gear: Triple Aught Design Gear Life Capsule Alpha • Water Storage Alternatives for PSKs](#)

### If McMurdo Calls, Will Rescue Come?

**UPDATED!** 7/13/2004

All GPS-equipped 406 MHz Emergency Beacons are not created equal. ETS has completed an extraordinary ground breaking evaluation of these beacons under real-world conditions. A 200+ page report details the findings of tests of six GPS-enabled EPIRBs and PLBs from three manufacturers. Excerpts from this report and details of the testing and results are now available on ETS, along with the 17 critical Conclusions about what works and what doesn't and 23 Recommendations for action to address the problems uncovered. [Equipped To Survive™ once again takes the lead exposing deficiencies in lifesaving products.](#) **UPDATED!** McMurdo advisories and press release on their own test results added.



### AMK Introduces Pocket Survival Pak by Doug Ritter

It's been two and a half years in the making, but Adventure Medical Kits is finally shipping the Pocket Survival Pak designed by Doug Ritter. After a decade of evaluating others' kits and hoping someone would do an affordable kit that would be worth trusting your life to, Doug hooked up with AMK to develop this kit. [Finally, an affordable pocket survival kit that really could save your life.](#)



### Second Edition of ETS Survival News Published

*ETS Survival News* is an irregularly published compendium of news related to survival, survival gear and search and rescue. [Please check out \*ETS Survival News\*](#)

### SHOT Show 2004 Review

The first installment of our SHOT Show review for 2004 is available. [In this portion we take a look at the sharp stuff--knives and multi-purpose tools.](#)



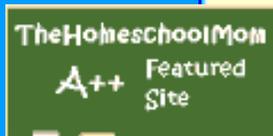
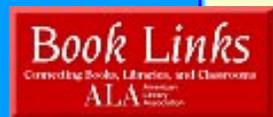
### PLB Wars Heat Up With ACR TerraFix Intro

**FIRST LOOK!** The 2004 Outdoor Retailer Winter Market saw the introduction of ACR Electronics' next generation 406 MHz Personal Locator Beacon (PLB), the TerraFix 406 GPS. The TerraFix is quite a departure from ACR's utilitarian-looking designs of the past and is available in both external and external/integral GPS models. Combined with aggressive pricing, this is the opening salvo of the next battle in the PLB wars and [we take a first look at this new PLB.](#)

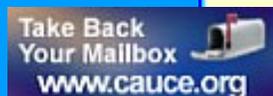
### First PLB Save in Contiguous U.S. Credits Equipped To Survive™

A Cleveland, Ohio, man is the first to be rescued using a 406 MHz Personal Locator Beacon (PLB) since they became legally available for use in the contiguous U.S. on July 1, 2003. [Carl J. Skalak, Jr. credits Equipped To Survive™ for his having the PLB in the first place.](#) The ACR Electronics 406 PLB worked exactly as designed using the COSPAS-SARSAT satellite alerting system to assure a quick rescue.





Online initiatives  
ETS visitors may  
find of interest:



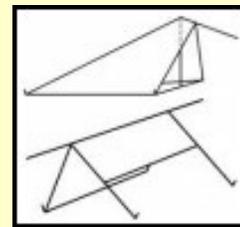
## Lessons Learned: Surviving The Hurricane

Members of The Survival Forum discuss their experiences, what worked and what didn't and the valuable lessons learned from this relatively mild

hurricane. [The best way to prepare is to learn from those who have been there already. Please join the discussion, or just stop by and learn something for next time.](#)

## Tarp-Shelters - An Introduction

The tarp is the epitome of a basic shelter, but that hardly means it is limited in how it can be used. David B. Macpherson provides an excellent introduction to the subject. There's a wealth of information on their use and construction, covering everything from the most basic immediate action shelter to sophisticated multifaceted structures. [Review the multitudes of shelters that can be created from a simple tarp.](#)



## NOAA Opens Online 406 MHz Beacon Registration

NOAA's online United States 406 MHz Beacon Registration Database is finally operational. This online registration capability will be a boon to both 406 MHz PLB, ELT and EPIRB owners and to the SAR forces that go out to rescue them. [Read about the many advantages online registration offers.](#)

## Lights Out Wake Up Call

The recent blackout to hit the Eastern U.S. and Canada served as a wake up call for many. A little emergency preparedness effort can go a long way towards illuminating the darkness. Let Equipped To Survive™ guide you in preparing for these sorts of widespread, short term urban emergencies. [Review our Disaster Preparedness section today.](#)

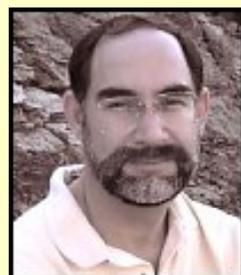


## Ultimate Personal Locator Beacon FAQ

Personal Locator Beacons, also known as PLBs, are finally here and everyone seems to have questions. We've got your answers with the most complete FAQ on PLBs you will find anywhere. [Everything you always wanted to know about Personal Locator Beacons \(PLBs\), including some answers to question you maybe didn't even know to ask.](#)

## PLBs Finally Approved for U.S. **UPDATED!** 6/28/2003

You'll finally be allowed to legally purchase and use a 406 MHz PLB (Personal Locator Beacon) in the U.S., but not until July 1, 2003. So, make sure you don't need one to save your life until then. PEPiRBs (Personal EPIRBs) are also on the near horizon for boaters. [Get the details on relatively affordable technology that could save your life.](#)



## Survival Stories Are Key To ETS Goal - Saving Lives

The recent brouhaha involving Aron Ralston serves as a reminder as to why Equipped To Survive™ exists. Damn near anything can happen out there and survival stories are a big part of how we learn and how we encourage people to be Equipped To Survive™ [Doug shares a few thoughts on the subject of survival stories.](#)

**Blue Ribbon Campaign**

for online freedom of speech, press and association

**Awards**

Selected as a USA TODAY Education Best Bet Web Site

**Evaluations of Eight Personal Survival Kits**

It is spring cleaning time and we've cleared the desk, adding eight new commercial personal survival kit (PSK) reviews, including some of the best we've seen to date:

- There are [five new reviews of Personal/Pocket Size Survival Kits](#).
- There are [three new reviews of One-Person Belt Pouch/Cargo Pocket Size Survival Kits](#).

**Care Package and Equipment Suggestions for Deployed Military**

Doug Ritter has been asked what our deployed service members would find useful in a "Care Package" or as better-than-issued equipment. [Here's an annotated list of what will be most appreciated, gleaned from those who have "been there, done that," as well as better gear recommendations.](#)

**Doug Ritter's Evaluation of READY.GOV**

Now that the government's Department of Homeland Security has made its terrorism preparedness suggestions on their READY.GOV Web site, Doug Ritter has evaluated their preparedness checklists. You might not be too surprised to learn that [Doug has found them wanting in some respects](#).



[his cure is worth it.](#)

**Travel Safe - Travel Smart**

Canadian outdoorsman Bill Layman is plenty upset at those who abuse the Cospas-Sarsat emergency beacon system and cost taxpayers plenty for no good reason. In this opinion piece Bill offers up some suggestions that could reduce or eliminate the problem. With the coming availability of PLBs, [you decide if](#)

**WSI Gold Label and Mini Survival Kits**

We launch a new section on larger personal or "one-person" survival kits, large/cargo pocket or pouch size, with reviews of two kits by World Survival Institute's Chris Janowsky. [These personal kits will generally provide more gear, or more capable gear](#), than the traditional everyday carry PSK.

**Ranger Rick's Special Ops Survival Necklace**

A different approach to the concept of a personal survival kit; you wear this kit around your neck. It is also unique in that it doesn't come ready to use--"assembly & modifications required." [It's unique, but is it any good?](#)

**Water Or Trees?**

Given the choice in a forced landing, is it better to choose trees or water? Paul Bertorelli has the answer, and it might not be as clear cut as you expect. [See what Paul's research turned up.](#)

**Innovative Rescue Laser Flare Reviewed**

**UPDATED!** 4/2/2002

When we first saw Greatland Laser's prototype "Rescue Laser Flare" in 1999 we were greatly impressed as it seemed to herald a significant improvement in nighttime signaling. Nearly three years later we have finally had an opportunity



\_\_\_\_\_ to test the recently released first production model. [Read our exclusive review to see if the Rescue Laser Flare lives up to expectations.](#)

## **Barry Schiff Takes Ditching Lessons**

Thirty years ago Barry Schiff ditched a Super Cub in Alaska. Back then he was ill-prepared to get out of the aircraft when it flipped. Still, like most, he managed. [Join Barry as he visits Aircraft Egress Systems in Canada and learns the right way to egress a ditched aircraft.](#) No muss, no fuss.



## **LifePac Survival Kit In A Sardine Tin**

We seem to be awash in personal size survival kits. The LifePac, also marketed as Survival Kit In A Sardine Can, aims to provide for your survival in an inexpensive sealed package. Should you trust your life to the LifePac? [See what we discovered when we opened it up.](#)

## **Bob Cooper's Australian MkIII Survival Kit**

Yet another personal/pocket size survival kit, this time from down under. This kit has attained a reputation of almost mythical proportions it seems. It's taken a while for us to get one, but [it's now here and you can see for yourself if it lives up to its rep.](#)



## **The Life Raft: Don't Leave Your Ship Without It**



Renowned marine survival authority and author Steven Callahan, a survivor of 76 days adrift himself, shares some insights about what to expect from a life raft. All life rafts are a compromise, [Callahan offers some thoughts on these compromises from his unique perspective.](#)

## **Lessons Learned: So Near, Yet So Far**

You don't need to be stranded a hundred miles from civilization to find yourself in a survival situation. Chris Kavanaugh found himself stranded on an island within view of one of the largest metropolitan areas in the world. [Chris tells the story](#) of how he and four others were stranded and how he relied on basic survival skills and equipment to survive and signal for rescue. [Doug Ritter analyzes how Chris and his companions did and the lessons learned.](#)



## **LED Flashlight Review**

We gathered up all the white LED flashlights we could find, and some other colors as well, and now present Equipped To Survive's™ humongous [LED Flashlight Review](#). You'll find both single and multi-LED lights, from pocket size on up to 24 LED monsters. [Read all about the the best and the worst](#) in this hot new product category.

## **Lessons Learned: Sailing to Hawaii...The First Attempt**

After two years' fastidious preparations, he thought he was prepared. [Arnold Rowe recounts the story of his ill-fated voyage to Hawaii](#), replete with equipment failures, medical problems and a helicopter rescue by the Coast Guard. Images from video clips of the rescue included! [Doug Ritter analyzes what went right and what went wrong.](#) Rowe's real life experience also validates some findings from the Marine Life Raft Tests.



## **Survival Gear For An Air Race**

Simon T was entered in the London To Sydney Air Race. ETS Editor Doug



Ritter's job was to make sure he was Equipped To Survive. With weight a major concern and diverse environmental requirements, that made for quite a challenge. [Read all about Simon's custom built and assembled survival gear and supplies.](#)

## **Stay Alive™ Survival Simulator**

ETS is pleased to present this innovative Survival Simulator that was developed as an independent student project for the ThinkQuest competition. While somewhat simplistic, it does get you thinking about a myriad of survival issues and it is entertaining. Have a go at it and [see if you know how to Stay Alive™.](#)



## **Aviation Life Raft Review 2000**

This is the most comprehensive review of aviation rafts ever published. [Check out the life rafts: The Good, The Bad & The Ugly.](#)

## **Doug Ritter's Personal Mini Survival Kit**

ETS Editor Doug Ritter has repacked and updated his personal mini survival kit. Small enough to fit in a pocket, [check out this latest version.](#)



## **Lessons Learned: A Long Wet Night**

It was nighttime and raining when Ray Clamback successfully ditched 300 miles northeast of Hawaii. But for some extraordinary good luck they might well have perished. This narrative, based on interviews with the survivors and U.S. Coast Guard pilots, tells [the story of that ditching and survival experience and analyses the lessons learned.](#)

## **Abandon Ship Bag Recommendations** **UPDATED!**

ETS takes a detailed look at [what equipment and supplies should be included in an Abandon Ship Bag.](#) More than just a list, this article provides the information you need to set priorities and make decisions about what to include.



## **"A Question Of Survival"**

Two wilderness aircraft crashes. The pilots in both survive the crash. But, two very different endings--one lives, the other dies. [William Waldock examines the question: Why the difference?](#)

## **Multi-Media International Plagiarises ETS Material**

Multi-Media International of New York City has [plagiarized significant amounts of copyrighted work from the Equipped To Survive™ Web site; click for more information on this theft](#)

**[Click here for More Features, Notable Additions, Updates & Changes](#)**

**[Click here for Trade Show Reports](#)**

Equipped To Survive™ used to be a member of a large number of Web Rings related to the content on this site. The take over of these Web rings by Yahoo! Web Ring resulted in unacceptable requirements and problems, so we were forced to drop all Yahoo based rings. [These remaining Web Rings](#) will take you to other sites which relate to that Web Ring's subject matter:

[Emergency & Survival Web Ring](#)   [SurvivalRing Web Ring](#)   [Emergency 911 Web Ring](#)

---

[ISSN 1526-212X](#)

**Executive Publisher and Editor:** [Doug Ritter](#)

Email: [Doug Ritter](#)

**Survival Forum™ Administrator and Sysop:** Chris Kavanaugh

**[Equipped To Survive Foundation, Inc.](#)**

Publisher of Equipped To Survive

**Executive Director:** [Doug Ritter](#)

Email: [Doug Ritter](#)

**Equipped To Survive™** is always interested in submissions of articles for publication. Please review our [Submission Guidelines](#) before making a submission or query.

**[Equipped To Survive Foundation, Inc.](#)** needs your help! If you are interested in volunteering to assist in publishing this Web site or in assisting in our research or outreach programs, please check out our [Volunteer page](#) for information and specific skills we could really use.

URL: <http://www.equipped.org/home.htm>

Revision: 251 August 31, 2004

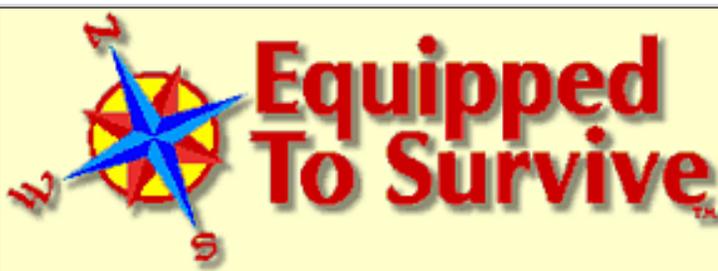


Email to: [info@pulvertch.com](mailto:info@pulvertch.com)

This entire Web site is © 1994 - 2004 Douglas S. Ritter & Equipped To Survive Foundation, Inc.

All rights reserved.

Check our [Copyright and Trademark](#) page for additional information.



Where do you want to go on ETS?

using Just Give

## Survival Links

This list of Survival related sites is hardly comprehensive in and of itself. However, within this list are a number of sites which focus purely on links to other survival resources and taken together they catalog just about everything worthwhile on the Web about the subject of survival, in all its variations.

 Inclusion in this listing does not infer an endorsement of any survival concepts, techniques, products, services or other information on or linked to the site. Nor is it an endorsement of any philosophies that may be espoused by the operator of the site or in any files located on the site or linked to the site. **The ratings are for the quality of the information on and presentation of the Web site and have nothing whatsoever to do with the organization that may operate the site.**

Links open in new browser window.



### [Pack Light, Eat Right](#)

Published by a backpacking dietitian who holds a Ph.D. in Biochemical Nutrition, this site is aimed at backpackers who must travel light and sustain their body while enduring rigorous exercise. There's a good deal of practical nutritional information, backed by understandable technical explanations for those interested, that could also be of use to those preparing for an emergency situation.



### [Primitive Skills Network Links](#)

A group of primitive skills and wilderness survival enthusiasts and instructor links.



### [Primitive Skills Group Archives](#)

An archive of messages from the Primitive Skills Group mailing list, organized by survival topic. More than just "primitive skills," it includes plenty of excellent general survival information.

([Information on subscribing to the Primitive Skills Group mailing list](#))



### [Primitive Technology Home Page](#)

Excellent link page to primitive technology resources. Included are links to Web sites and subscription information for a number of primitive technology related Email subscription groups.



### [Red Hot Dot Children's Fire and Kidnapping Safety](#)

A commercial site selling children's fire safety books and pamphlets with good online content on the subject of fire safety and kidnapping prevention and escape.



### [Rocky Mountain Survival Group](#)

Billed as "A Survival Information Clearinghouse," it does indeed gather together a huge amount of valuable information on survival of all kinds and descriptions, with both articles on-site and many more links to articles and pages on other sites. A large and growing treasure trove of interesting and useful information on all aspects of survival.

★★★★★ [Roper's Knot Page](#)

Excellent site with all you ever wanted to know about knots. Included are diagrams and instructions for many useful knots. Many have links to other sites with additional illustrations and instructions, including some with animated GIFs demonstrating how to tie them. A very comprehensive link page to just about anything having to do with virtually every kind of knot.

★★★★★ [SafetyAlerts.com](#)

The most comprehensive and up to date source for food contamination alerts and faulty product warnings, recalls, etc. Email notification of the latest alerts available.

★★★ [Simply Survival](#)

Small, but growing, another site that's a work in progress with lots of potential. Survival instructor Greg Davenport is adding more good stuff on survival techniques and "The Art of Adapting" on a regular basis.

★★★ [The Survival Bible 2001](#)

Richard Perron's large files contain a compendium of survival information on many subjects from many sources. Ranges from excellent to poor. Not very well organized, nor particularly scintillating prose, but there is **lots** of it. However, well worth the effort if you're seriously interested in the subject. Be warned that this site includes some "survivalist" materials that some may find objectionable.

★★★★★ [United States Coast Guard \(USCG\)](#)

"They have to go out; they don't have to come back." Sadly, sometimes they don't. Every hour of every day the USCG rescues survivors who are in peril, unfortunately, more often than not, due to their own stupidity. In my estimation, the USCG probably has the highest proportion of true heroes of any of our military services. There's some valuable information here, and a lot of other stuff that's just plain interesting.

★★★★★ [U.S. Rescue & Special Operations Group](#)

Aimed at military operators with advice covering all aspects of survival, most of the information will be useful to anyone interested in the subject. The recommendations for technique and equipment are based on the cadre's real life experiences fighting and survival around the world. Includes tests with answers.

★★★ [Wilderness Way Online](#)

Wilderness Way is a primitive survival magazine. The site contains articles and a section of user submitted [Survival Tips](#).

**If the information here helped you,  
won't you please help us with a  
tax-deductible contribution?**



[« Prev.](#)



[Next »](#)

**SELECT AND USE OUTDOORS AND SURVIVAL EQUIPMENT, SUPPLIES AND TECHNIQUES AT YOUR OWN RISK.** Please review the full [WARNING & DISCLAIMER](#) about information on this site.

Publisher and Editor: [Doug Ritter](#)

Email: [Doug Ritter](mailto:Doug.Ritter)

URL: <http://www.equipped.org/urls.htm>

Revision: 039 November 6, 2003



Email to: [info@pulvertech.com](mailto:info@pulvertech.com)

© 1994 - 2003 Douglas S. Ritter & Equipped To Survive Foundation, Inc.

All rights reserved.

Check our [Copyright Information](#) page for additional information.

[Read the ETS](#)

[Privacy Policy](#)

★★★★ [American Red Cross Disaster Services - Being Prepared](#)

Information on basic disaster preparedness, from soup to nuts.

★★★ [Captain Dave's Survival Center](#)

This site covers a lot of ground including survival equipment lists from a variety of sources, some equipment reviews, survival techniques and general articles relating to the subject of long term survival. Dave's "Survival Guide" is a survival handbook work in progress.

★★ [Civil Air Patrol](#)

CAP performs over 90% of all aerial search and rescue for missing aircraft in the U.S. They also participate in other SAR operations, disaster relief and assist national, state and local emergency services in many other ways. The official auxiliary of the U.S. Air Force, many unfortunately take this military relationship a little too seriously.

If you have large reserves of patience, like paperwork as much as flying and have an extraordinarily high tolerance for B.S., then CAP may be for you. When all is said and done, the bumbling organization succeeds in spite of itself and does a pretty damn good job.

★★ [Colorado Firstrax - Winter Survival](#)

Tips for survival in winter snow and mountainous conditions.

★★★ [Common Sense Survival Guides](#)

A collection of advice on a wide variety of survival and disaster scenarios from the author's book of the same name.

★★★★ [Disaster! Finder](#)

Links dealing with disaster related information and an included search engine by the NASA Solid Earth and Natural Hazards Program.

★★★★ [DonRearic.com](#)

Focus on rational and practical self defense techniques, along with reviews of self-defense related products including knives, lights, impact weapons, etc.

★★★ [Earthquake Preparation Advice](#)

Some good, basic and sensible advice on disaster preparedness, with the focus on earthquakes, from [The American Rescue Team International](#).

★★★★ [FEMA - Preparing For A Disaster](#)

FEMA (Federal Emergency Management Agency) is the government agency that's supposed to organize help after any widespread natural or man-made disaster in the U.S. While they are often criticized for being unprepared, slow and even incompetent at times, this site offers a lot of very good suggestions and advice about preparing for a disaster. Additional useful emergency preparedness information can be found perusing the virtual shelves of [the FEMA Library](#).

★★★★ [Frugal Squirrel's Home Page](#)

The granddaddy of survival archival sites. Like any good squirrel, he's stashed away an abundance of good stuff. Includes one of the Web's best survival links page. Be warned that this site contains "survivalist" sort of materials and links that some may find objectionable.

★★★★ [The Gear Addict](#)

A great commercial site focused on outdoor gear with reviews submitted by users. Good links to manufacturers sites.

★★★ [The Gear Page](#)

Outdoor gear reviews, searchable by manufacturer and category

★★★ [Hoods Woods](#)

Ron Hood, a survival instructor, provides useful information on wilderness survival. His on-line survival manual, "Survival, The Last Laugh," is a work in progress and contains much useful and practical information written in an engaging manner. Navigation of the site is a bit rough, but well worth the effort.

★★★★ [Hug A Tree](#)

★★★★ [Hug A Tree and Survive - Coloring Book - Survival Training for Children](#)

The "hug a tree" program has proven very successful in imparting important survival information to children who are often inclined to do exactly the wrong thing when they get lost in the wilds. This program teaches them to stay put, "hug a tree," until they are rescued. If you have a child, this program could prove to be a lifesaver.

★★ [Hurricane Preparations](#)

Some common sense basic advice about how to prepare for a hurricane. Much is equally applicable for any similar natural disaster for which you have time to prepare.

★★★ [Lightweight Hiking & Backpacking](#)

Commercial site, lots of useful information, especially for those with weight or volume restrictions. Good links.

★★ [Modern Survival Magazine \(ModernSurvival.net\)](#)

A subscription online-only magazine (sample articles each issue freely available) from Jim Benson, former editor of *American Survival Guide*, that covers a wide range of survival issues and equipment. Be warned that this site has a "survivalist" bent that some may find objectionable.

★★★ [Mountain Rescue Association](#)

A volunteer organization dedicated to saving lives through rescue and mountain safety education. Don't let "volunteer" confuse you, these are serious professionals who rank among the best in the world in what they do, mountain rescue.

★★★★ [Air Cavalry - Survival](#)

The survival section of the site provides a complete survival manual based on the USAF and U.S. Army survival manuals. A very good primer on survival and survival techniques with U.S. Army Air Cavalry specific information (such as kits).

# Recreational Software Advisory Council

## RSAC

RSAC no longer exists. In 1999 it was "folded into" a new organization, the Internet Content Rating Association (ICRA). The original aims of RSAC, to protect children from potentially harmful content while preserving free speech on the internet, continue to provide the cornerstone for ICRA's work, backed by the biggest names online.

Please follow the links to the ICRA website below to find the information you're looking for:

- For general information about ICRA, please [click here](#).
- For information about labelling your website, please [click here](#).
- If you are looking for **technical support**, particularly with Microsoft Internet Explorer's Content Advisor, please note that we are not responsible in any way for this software, however, we are able to offer advice on its use. The most frequently asked of frequently asked questions (Content Advisor's "Missing information" error message) is answered in FAQ 3.3. For ICRA's support pages, please [click here](#).



host centric

Click Here

**ONE HOUR  
SETUP!**

on  
**Self-Managed  
Hosting**

Up to  
**600 GB  
Bandwidth**

Microsoft Windows Server 2003  
Red Hat Linux

only  
**\$89.00**  
/mo.

Click Here

host centric



host centric

Click Here

**ONE HOUR  
SETUP!**

on  
**Self-Managed  
Hosting**

Up to  
**600 GB  
Bandwidth**

Microsoft Windows Server 2003  
Red Hat Linux

only  
**\$89.00**  
/mo.

Click Here

host centric

Home

Site Index

Site Search

Forums

Archives

Marketplace

EVERY DAY

CAMPAIGN 2004

The New York Times  
nytimes.com

July 16, 1998

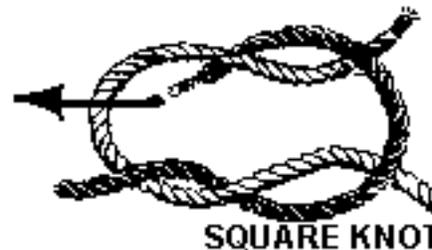
## A Virtual Helping Hand For Tying Up Loose Ends

By MICKEY MEECE

**Y**ou're stranded on a mountain. You have the handheld computer you brought to do some writing, a cellular phone and a few emergency supplies. You're lost, and it looks as if rain is on the way.

To make a shelter, you pull some rope and a poncho out of your pack. But after a few feeble attempts to tie a simple but secure knot to a tree, you turn to the Internet, of course.

You connect the computer to the phone (which has a wireless modem) and go on line. A Metacrawler search using "ropes and knots" calls up a number of promising sites, including the [Ropers Knots page](#).



SQUARE KNOT



MAN-HARNESS KNOT

Knot Tying for Fun

Whether you're lost on a mountain or sitting comfortably at home in front of a PC, the Ropers Knots page is a good primer on rope tying. Ed Prins, 43, of Delft, the Netherlands, set up the page in February 1996 in Dutch and English.

"One of my great hobbies is knots," Prins said in a phone interview. "I like more of the technical side: how I can join two knots together, why a knot is good in one application and not in another."

Prins, who works as an information specialist at the Schiphol Airport in Amsterdam, said he had built the site with sailors, climbers, scouts and novices in mind. "Most people can find what they want," he said, and if not, there are plenty of links for more specific information.

The Ropers Knots page takes a minimalist approach. Prins said he kept images simple so people with slow modems could load his site without delays. For animation or gimmicks, you have to go elsewhere.

For example, the Ropers Knots page is linked to [a site created by the 42d Brighton Scout Group of East Sussex, England](#).

There, under Animated Knots, are a number of knots shown in two dimensions. In the clove hitch, a red rope slithers around a brown post over and over.

The simplicity of the Ropers Knots page, which is divided into sections with -- what else? -- a rope, both appealed to and frustrated Celina Monte, 17, a senior Girl Scout who knows a little something about knots. Celina is a summer intern at the Girl Scout Council of Greater New York on West 23d Street in Manhattan. With a rope in hand, she sat in front of a computer in the council's office recently to check out the site.

"A big Girl Scout knot is the clove hitch," she said. The diagram she found looked complicated, but she was able to produce a clove hitch.

"I think that this page is for people who already know about knots," she said.

In addition to the links, Prins maintains a [Books on Knots page](#), where he reviews a number of books.

While children can access the Ropers Knots page, there are areas they shouldn't see, like the section on the hangman's noose. Prins put in red a warning: "The noose is not a knot to play hangman with. Too many accidents already killed children who thought they could release it in time."

The Ropers Knots site in English gets about 200 hits a day, while the Dutch site gets about 20, Prins said. He tries to answer each question he gets via E-mail, which keeps him busy. "If you're not stimulated," he said, "you end up with a rope in front of you, and for what?"

---

### **Related Sites**

Following are links to the external Web sites mentioned in this article. These sites are not part of The New York Times on the Web, and The Times has no control over their content or availability. When you have finished visiting any of these sites, you will be able to return to this page by clicking on your Web browser's "Back" button or icon until this page reappears.

- [Ropers Knots page](#)
- [42d Brighton Scout Group of East Sussex, England](#)
- [Books on Knots page](#)
- [Knot Tying for Fun](#)

---

[Home](#) | [Site Index](#) | [Site Search](#) | [Forums](#) | [Archives](#) | [Marketplace](#)

[Quick News](#) | [Page One Plus](#) | [International](#) | [National/N.Y.](#) | [Business](#) | [Technology](#) | [Science](#) | [Sports](#) | [Weather](#) | [Editorial](#) | [Op-Ed](#) | [Arts](#) | [Automobiles](#) | [Books](#) | [Diversions](#) | [Job Market](#) | [Real Estate](#) | [Travel](#)

[Help/Feedback](#) | [Classifieds](#) | [Services](#) | [New York Today](#)

[Copyright 1998 The New York Times Company](#)



[Statistics](#)



[MyNedstat](#)



[Service](#)



[Catalogue](#)

NEDSTATBASIC

- [Here and now](#)
- [When](#)
- [Where from](#)
- [How](#)
- [With what](#)



Ropers Knot Page - (Clubs and societies)

3 September 2004 07:24

**NEW GSMWEB.NL**  
 95 gratis gsm's | losse abc

- [Nokia 6230 gratis](#)
- [Nokia 6310i gratis](#)
- [Nokia 6610i gratis](#)
- [Nokia 7200 gratis](#)
- [Meer Nokia's gratis](#)
- [Samsung e600 gratis](#)
- [Samsung e710 gratis](#)
- [Samsung e800 gratis](#)
- [Meer Samsungs gratis](#)
- [Ericsson K700i gratis](#)
- [Overige 87 gratis](#)

**EXCLUSIEF**  
 500 minuten SamenBellen voor maar 2,50 PM

Summary	
Measuring since ...	29 July 1996
Total number of page views up till now	1356881
Busiest day so far	20 August 2003
Page views	1511

**Forecast for today**

On average 31 percent of the daily visits are made before 7:24. Based on the number of visitors of 211 today so far, today your site may have 661 page views (+/- 31).

Last 10 visitors			
1.	3 September	06:54	America Online, United States
2.	3 September	06:54	Comcast Communications, Beech Grove, United States
3.	3 September	06:55	Genuity/ BBN Technologies, United States
4.	3 September	06:56	Genuity/ BBN Technologies, United States
5.	3 September	07:06	Comcast Communications, Beech Grove, United States
6.	3 September	07:07	Road Runner, United States
7.	3 September	07:18	Singapore (any.sg)
8.	3 September	07:22	Internode, Australia
9.	3 September	07:23	Videon.ca, Canada
10.	3 September	07:23	Genuity/ BBN Technologies, United States



Microsoft

Maak  
grootse  
ideeën  
nog  
grootser  
met de  
ASP.NET  
Resource  
Kit.

Klik hier voor  
uw gratis ASP.NET  
Resource Kit



[hier!](#)

Klik



Page views per day	
7 August 2004	789
8 August 2004	718
9 August 2004	835
10 August 2004	878
11 August 2004	886
12 August 2004	950
13 August 2004	781
14 August 2004	738
15 August 2004	769
16 August 2004	882
17 August 2004	829
18 August 2004	855
19 August 2004	780
20 August 2004	837
21 August 2004	704
22 August 2004	730
23 August 2004	855
24 August 2004	883
25 August 2004	910

intel inside  
pentium 4

**DELL DEAL**

**Inspiron™  
510m**

van 1.396,-  
**Voor 1.315,-**  
incl. BTW

Geldig op geselecteerde  
Inspiron™ systemen die  
online worden besteld.

Geldig t/m 06.09.04  
**KLIK HIER**

Easy as **DELL**

26 August 2004	899
27 August 2004	857
28 August 2004	737
29 August 2004	730
30 August 2004	797
31 August 2004	967
1 September 2004	853
2 September 2004	753
3 September 2004	211
<b>Total</b>	<b>22413</b>

Country of origin			
1.	United States	516540	38.1 %
2.	US Commercial	130904	9.6 %
3.	Network	102651	7.6 %
4.	Canada	69957	5.2 %
5.	Netherlands, The	58211	4.3 %
6.	United Kingdom	55000	4.1 %
7.	Australia	33922	2.5 %
8.	Germany	24186	1.8 %
9.	US Educational	20727	1.5 %
10.	Belgium	19879	1.5 %
	Unknown	142812	10.5 %
	The rest	182092	13.4 %
	<b>Total</b>	<b>1356881</b>	<b>100.0 %</b>



[Webmasters Make \\$\\$\\$](#)

© Copyright Nedstat 1996-2004 / Design by McNolia

[Advertise?](#) | [Disclaimer](#) | [Terms of Use](#) | [Privacy Policy](#) | [Nedstat Pro](#) | [Sitestat](#)



**HELPWARE**

**Subcategories**

Search Helpware

[Help](#)

# HELPWARE DIRECTORY

[What's New](#) [What's Cool](#) [Adding A Site](#) [About Helpware](#) [Home](#)

**Location:**

[Art and Humanities](#)

[Business and Economy](#)

[Computer](#)

[Education](#)

[Government](#)

[Health](#)

[Internet](#)

[Lifestyle](#)

[News and Media](#)

[Recreation](#)

[Reference](#)

[Shopping](#)

Submit your site using our Spider after the Helpware button is on your page.

[ [Getting Listed](#) | [FAQ](#) | [Privacy Policy](#) | [Advertise](#) | [Contact Us](#) | [Top](#) ]

Powered by [Hyperseek](#) © Copyright 2000 Jim Wilson. All Rights Reserved.

[Terug naar:](#)[Touwslagers Knopen](#)  
[Pagina](#)

# Stoppers(🇳🇱)

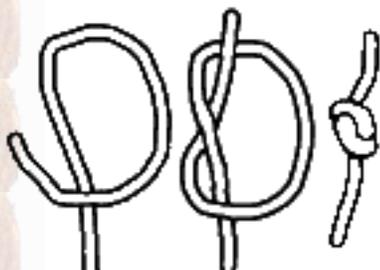
Knopen aan een eind.

[Terug naar:](#)[Touwslagers Knopen](#)  
[Pagina](#)

Knopen aan het uiteinde van een touw. Er zijn vele toepassingen waarin je zoiets gebruikt. Iedere toepassing stelt zijn eigen eisen en kent daarvoor een beperkt aantal knopen die het best geschikt zijn. Je kunt een stopper gebruiken om te voorkomen dat een touw of garen gaat rafelen. Doe dat echter alleen in goedkoop touw/garen. Gebruik anders een echte takeling.

## De Overhandknoop

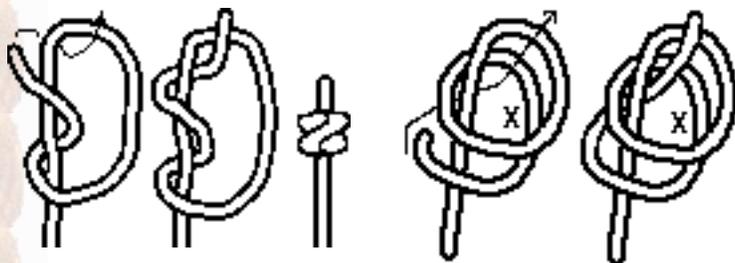
### De Overhandknoop of de Halve Knoop



De eenvoudigste knoop die er bestaat, en daarom waarschijnlijk het meest gebruikt. De overhandknoop is goed bruikbaar om knopen in garens en snaren te ondersteunen. Losse tampen worden dan met een overhandknoop iets verdikt. Wanneer dat te rommelig wordt moet worden omgezien naar een betere verbindingsknoop. Er mag geen grote kracht op een overhandknoop worden uitgeoefend. De knoop halveert ongeveer de sterkte van het touw/garen ter plaatse. Als

'anti-slip-stopper' is dat niet erg want dan wordt hij nauwelijks belast.

## De Dubbele Overhandknoop



De dubbele overhandknoop is mooi, dikker dan de gewone overhandknoop, maar nauwelijks sterker. Dus hij kan alleen maar gebruikt worden als er maar weinig belasting te verwachten is. De dubbele overhandknoop wordt ook wel de bloedknoop genoemd als hij gebruikt is als zweeptop. De knoop kan op

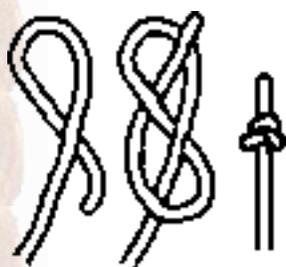
meerdere manieren worden gelegd en in principe op twee manieren worden afgewerkt. De twee manieren van leggen die hier getoond worden geven ook beide afwerkingen aan. De in het midden getoonde bloedknoop is de voorkeurs-afwerking van de tweede met kruisjes gemerkte knoopwijze. De bloedknoop is na belasting zeer moeilijk weer los te krijgen. Wanneer er een object door het met het kruisje gemerkte gat gestoken wordt trekt de knoop samen tot de [wurgknoop](#). Daarom is het de moeite waard deze manier te leren.

## De Meervoudige Overhandknoop



Wanneer de overhandknoop meer dan twee interne rotors heeft wordt hij dikker. (Echter nauwelijks sterker.) Bij geslagen touw is het van groot belang dat de knoop netjes wordt aangetrokken (opgewerkt) anders hebben de losse strengen sterk de neiging te kinken.

## De Vlaamse Acht



Dit is de stopper die volume, sterkte en eenvoud van leggen/losmaken in de optimale balans samen brengt.

[Deze knoop op het WEB.](#)

Commentaar, ideeën, suggesties mail me:  [qqqq at realknots.com](mailto:qqqq@realknots.com) with subject "question"

Alle mail zonder het juiste onderwerp worden automatisch, ongelezen weggemikt..

Het spijt me dat ik de mail link weg heb moeten halen. De Mailgrabbers hebben gewonnen.

Maar.... Ik heb een paar verborgen mail adresjes opgenomen zodat ze elkaar plat kunnen spammen nadat ze mijn "junk" gegrabbed hebben....

.....



[Terug naar:](#)



[Touwslagers knopen pagina](#)

[Door naar](#)



[De Verbindingsknopen](#)

# Verbindings Knopen(🇳🇱)

[Terug naar:](#)



[De Stoppers](#)

Knopen om twee touwen aan elkaar te binden.

[Terug naar:](#)



[Touwslagers Knopen](#)

[Pagina](#)

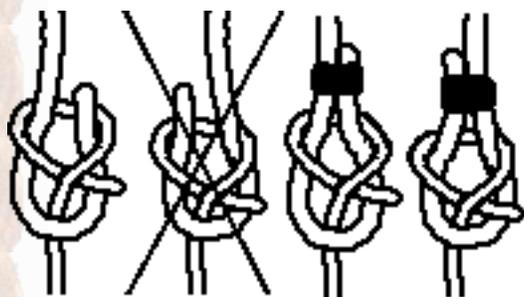
## De Platte knoop



De platte knoop is slechts bruikbaar voor het eenvoudige werk. Hij is eenvoudig te leggen en beklemt zich niet waardoor hij altijd makkelijk los te krijgen is. De toepassingen variëren van het vastzetten van opgerolde zeilen, het dichtbinden van pakjes, tot de basis van de schoenstrik. Zijn naaste verwanten, het ouwe-wijf, de dievenknoop en de what-knoop hebben zo hun eigen toepassingen, maar die hebben niets met een betrouwbare verbinding te maken.

Voor een uitgebreidere beschrijving van deze interessante knopen-familie kan je terecht bij de [Platte-knopen Familie](#).

## De Schootsteek



De Schootsteek is mijn favoriete verbindingsknoop. Pas op, wanneer het gekruiste tamp aan de verkeerde kant zit heb je een andere, zwakkere knoop. (In moderne materialen maakt het niet veel meer uit, maar in rechts geslagen touw is de foutieve schootsteek zwakker. Leer daarom de goede.) Voor een uitgebreidere beschrijving van deze interessante knopen-familie kan je terecht bij [De Schootsteek](#)

## De karaaksteek



Ook wel karaak hieling genoemd. Pas op! Er zijn maar weinig knopen die zo vaak verkeerd getekend worden als de karaaksteek. De einden moeten diagonaal tegenover elkaar uitkomen en de kruisingen moeten om en om onder- en bovenlangs

ff

||

||

||

uitkomen. De karaaksteek is een van de beste steken.

Ashley stelt dat het mogelijk het dichtst bij de perfecte steek komt. Hij slipt niet, zelfs niet als het touw nat is, en bovendien is hij altijd los te krijgen, ook na zware belasting. Als hieling voor zwaar materiaal wordt hij altijd afgebonden om slijtage te minimaliseren.

## De Zoeteliefjes

Eigenlijk leg je twee [halve steken](#) om de staande einden van beide touwen.

Je kunt de zoeteliefjes op twee manieren leggen. Welke van de twee varianten het sterkst is weet ik niet. Met twee gelijke [overhandknopen](#) is hij symmetrisch. Dit is waarschijnlijk de meest gebruikte variant.



Met twee verschillende overhandsknopen krijg je de mooiste (Altijd netjes afwerken!)

Alleen ... de dubbele acht is zeker sterker, makkelijker los te krijgen na belasting en van alle kanten net zo decoratief als de zoeteliefjes op hun best.

## De Dubbele Zoeteliefjes



Dit is de dubbel-stopper knoop met als basis de [Dubbele Overhandknoop](#). Eigenlijk leg je twee [wurgknopen](#) om de staande einden van beide touwen. Het is het best om de knopen tegengesteld te leggen. Bij gelijke knopen is

het lastiger ze goed tegen elkaar aan te sluiten.

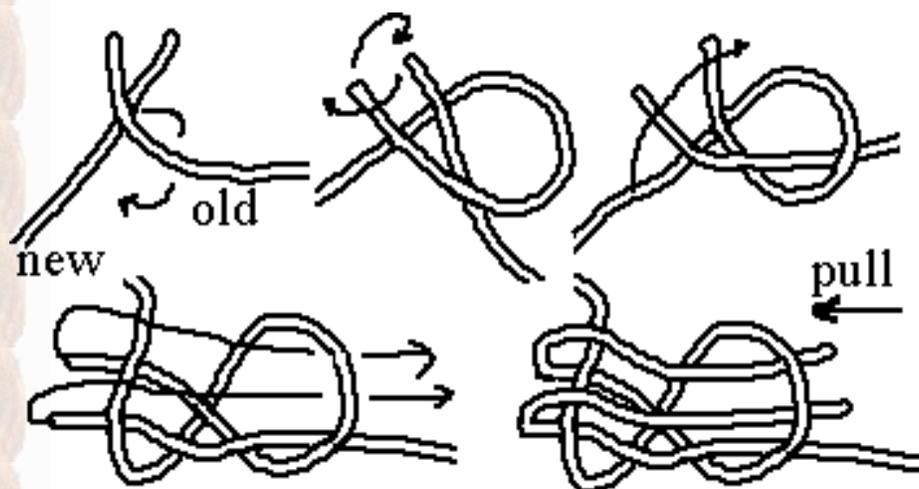
Deze knoop wordt door klimmers veel gebruikt om twee touwen aan elkaar te knopen. Hij is sterk, betrouwbaar, maar is nogal lastig weer los te krijgen. Wanneer deze knoop in het midden van een klimtouw terecht komt is het verstandig om aan het hangend eind een vaste lus te maken om als zekering te gebruiken bij het passeren.

## De Dubbele Acht



Dit is voor mij de universele dubbele-stopper-knoop. Hij is sterk, mooi, beknelt niet, dus wat wil je nog meer. Het is de verbindingsknoop variant van de [Vlaamse Acht](#)

# De Wevers Acht



Dit is de beste wever knoop die ik ken. Hoewel het lijkt of hij moeilijk te leggen is blijkt hij juist erg makkelijk te leggen in klein materiaal en is betrouwbaar in wol, linnen en vele ander weef-materialen. Omdat beide losse eindjes terugvallen op het staande part heeft hij een bijna perfecte geleiding door het werk en over de machine-onderdelen. Houd beide eindjes op de kruising

tussen duim en wijsvinger. (eerste tekening)

Draai beide draden terwijl je het kruis vast blijft houden in twee eenvoudige bewegingen (tekening twee en drie)

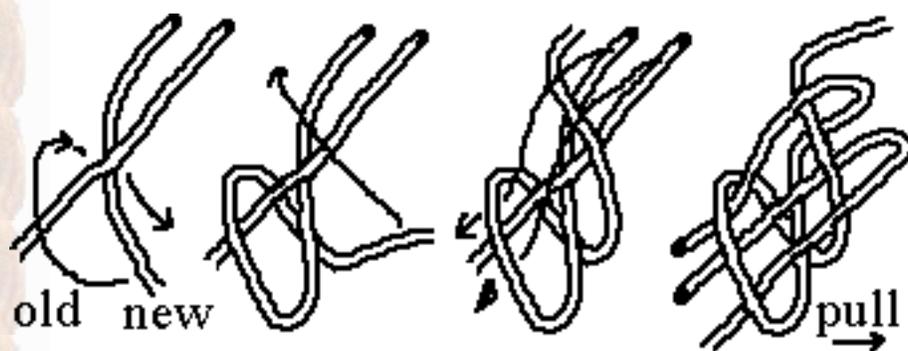
Nu leg je het staande eind van de draad waar je wilt aanhechten over de nieuwe draad die je wilt aanhechten.

Ten slotte stop je over de lijn waar je aanhecht door de loep die je net gemaakt hebt.

Nu laat je het kruis los en hou de losse eindjes tegen het staande part van de nieuwe draad en trek de knoop aan.

Deze knoop is gerelateerd aan [De \(Vlaamse\) Acht](#) Dat kan je goed waarnemen als je deze knoop legt zonder nieuwe draad. (Je doet net alsof.) Je zult zien dat je de acht knoopt.

## Voor de andere richting



Een wever op een traditioneel weefgetouw weet niet van te voren in welke richting de volgende lijn aangehecht moet worden. Daarom moet hij de weverknoop in twee richtingen kunnen leggen. (Lang niet iedere wever/weefster kan dat en dat kost tijd of netheid.) Dit is de zelfde als de hierboven beschreven knoop,

alleen dan anders gelegd. Op deze manier gelegd kan de draad de andere kant op getrokken worden.

Commentaar, ideeën, suggesties mail me:  *qqqq at realknots.com with subject "question"*

Alle mail zonder het juiste onderwerp worden automatisch, ongelezen weggemikt..

Het spijt me dat ik de mail link weg heb moeten halen. De Mailgrabbers hebben gewonnen.

Maar.... Ik heb een paar verborgen mail adresjes opgenomen zodat ze elkaar plat kunnen spammen nadat ze mijn "junk"gegrabbed hebben....

.....

Omdat dit een niet commerciële site is kan en wil ik geen junk-mail of "spam" behandelen. Daarom behoud ik mij het recht voor om voor niet persoonlijke mail, bulk-mail en andere reclame uitingen f250,- afhandelings-kosten PER mail in rekening te brengen.



[Terug naar:](#)



[Touwslagers knopen  
pagina](#)

[Door naar](#)



[De Steken](#)

[Terug naar](#)[De verbindingsknopen](#)

# Steken (🇬🇧)

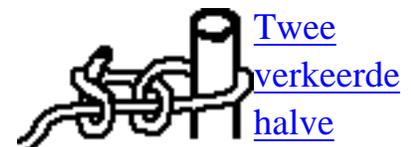
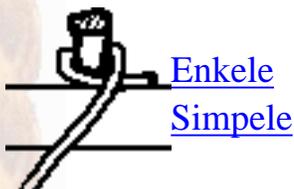
[Touwslagers Knopen](#)[Pagina](#)

Knopen om en touw aan ... iets te steken  
(verbinden)

## 'Elementaire' Steken

In deze tabel staan de elementaire steken. De steken in iedere kolom zijn "familie" van elkaar. De bovenste steek wordt rond een paal of ander object geknoopt. Ik zal ze primaire elementaire steken noemen. De steken er onder zijn 'het zelfde' maar rond het eigen staande part gebonden. Ik zal ze verder de secundaire-elementaire steken noemen. Pas op! De toepassingen van de verschillende variaties zijn zeer verschillend. De primaire-elementaire steken "verdwijnen" als het object verwijderd wordt. De secundaire-elementaire steken doen dat niet. Sommige secundaire-elementaire steken zijn "gekapseisde" bindings knopen. Hoewel het eigenlijk voor alle knopen geldt is het goed afwerken van deze knopen extreem belangrijk. Verkeerd afwerken kan leiden tot een totaal andere en vaak zelfs gevaarlijke variant van de gewenste steek. Als je bijvoorbeeld de twee-halve-steken kapseist zit je met het "oud-wijf", een van de beroerdeste knopen die je je maar kunt voorstellen. Aan de andere kant kan je als je weet wat je doet met opzet een "verkeerde" knoop leggen en die kapseizen tot de gewenste. Maar pas daar voor op en wees voorzichtig.

Helaas zijn de nederlandse namen die ik vond lang niet zo sprekend als de engelse.

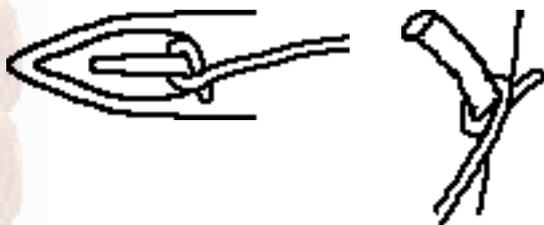


## De enkele steek

(ook wel **De Simpele Steek**.)



Hoewel dit waarschijnlijk de meest eenvoudige knoop is die je kunt verzinnen moet je een vaardig knoper zijn om hem op een veilige manier te leggen en toe te passen. Het losse eind van het touw moet worden afgeknepen tegen een object of tegen het staande part. De beste kneep krijg je tegen een rand of riggel. (Daar zit hem de kneep! En daar komt ook deze zegswijze vandaan.) Als de steek wordt ontlast en het staande part geschud dan lost de steek direct.



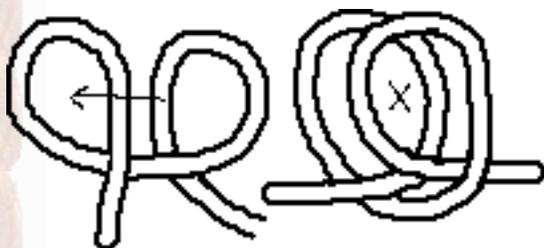
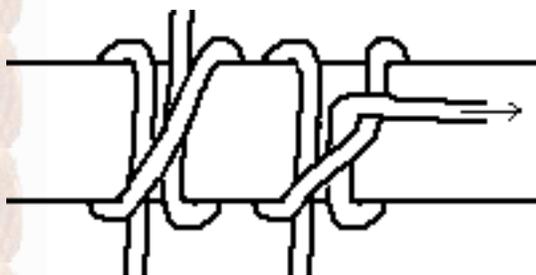
Hij wordt gebruikt bij het beleggen om een kikker, een wevers-naald of zelfs aan een boomtak, als begin voor het beleggen, als start voor het opwinden of als tijdelijke, snel los te maken "steek".

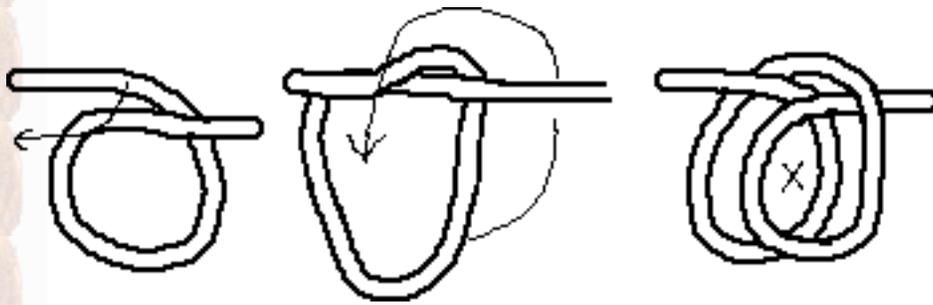
## De Halve Steek



Dit is de "gekapseide" overhandknoop. Het is een bijzonder bruikbare steek om lichte lasten te dragen die snel los te maken moeten zijn. Ashley raadt hem aan voor het ophangen van voorraden buiten het bereik van muizen. Je moet hem echt met rust laten.

## De Mastworp





Deze belangrijke knoop heeft alleen theoretische waarde. Zonder extra ondersteuning is hij onbetrouwbaar in iedere situatie, behalve als kruisknoop. Je moet hem kennen voor de padvinderij en op zeilscholen. Als je hem toch moet toepassen

werk hem dan netjes af. Trek beide einden stevig aan voor je hem belast, en dan nog alleen in de lengte-richting. Beter nog, gebruik [de mastworp met voorslag](#) als alternatief.

## Twee Halve Steken



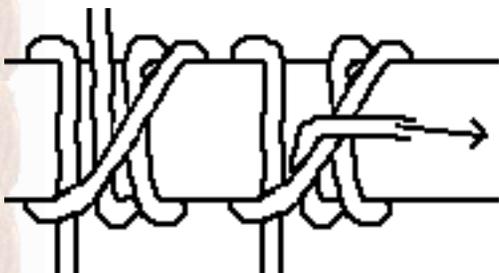
De twee halve steken worden gebruikt om een touw te knopen aan een ring of paal met een haakse belasting. Het moet constant belast blijven. (Hoeft niet onder een constante belasting.) Hij beknelt zich niet. Als het object een kleine diameter heeft is het verstandig om een extra rotorn te nemen.

## De "Buntlijn" Steek.



De "Buntlijn" steek werd gebruikt om de "buntlijn" van een vierkant getuigd schip vast te zetten. Het is een veilige knoop, maar heeft nijing zich te beknellen. Hij is daarom niet eenvoudig los te krijgen. Daarom is hij geschikt voor werk dat langer zonder toezicht gelaten moet kunnen blijven.

## Mastworp met voorslag



De beste knoop voor belasting in de lengterichting. Het is belangrijk hem goed af te werken en goed aan te halen voordat hij belast wordt. Gebruik hem nooit voor haakse belasting want dan schiet hij echt los.

# Scheerlijn-steek



Dit is een bijzonder nuttige steek. Hij is verstelbaar EN betrouwbaar.

Iedere zeiler zou deze steek onder iedere omstandigheid moeten kunnen leggen.

In het bijzonder om zichzelf te redden met het touw dat hem in het water is toegeworpen. Hij moet de lijn rond zich leggen, de scheerlijn-steek voor zich en zich tot doel stellen het losse eind tegen het staande part te houden. Dat geeft hem

veiligheid en een doel in deze kritieke situatie: VASTHOUDEN!

Iedere kampeerder moet deze knoop ook kennen. Het is de beste knoop om je scheerlijn aan een haring te bevestigen.

Het is het eenvoudigste lid uit de verstelbare knopen familie.

## Verstelbare steek.



Dit is de "broer" van de scheerlijn-steek en slechts een beetje minder belangrijk.

Dat komt omdat hij zich eerder beknijpt. Als dat de bedoeling is, is dat natuurlijk

prima zoals bijvoorbeeld voor werk dat lang zonder toezicht moet kunnen

blijven. Ashley beschrijft een toepassing voor katoen-makelaars in New Bedford die hun monsterpakjes, die ze van molen tot molen namen, er mee sloten. De

pakjes konden naar believen worden geopend en weer gesloten. Ze bleven veilig gesloten onderweg.

## De Koe-steek.



Deze steek is zeer bruikbaar om een koe aan een paaltje vast te zetten. Zelf zou ik

een overhand knoopje in het losse eind toevoegen, maar ik ben geen boer. Zeelui

gebruiken hem om een koord aan een lijkwade te bevestigen bij een zeemans uitvaart.

## "Verkeerde" halve steken



Deze steek wordt ook gebruikt om scheerlijnen vast te zetten, maar is daar veel minder goed voor als de [Scheerlijn Steek](#). De enige reden dat ik hem hier noem

is omdat zijn topologie hem hier plaatst. Ik zie er geen gebruiksmogelijkheden voor. (Laat me weten als je er een kent.) Een geoefend oog zal er de

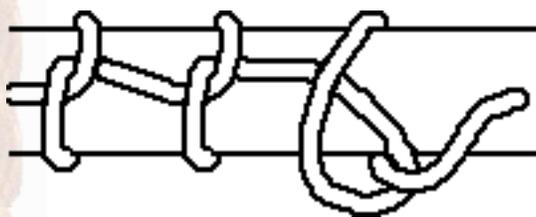
gekapseide platte knoop in herkennen.

## Lobster Buoy Steek



De Lobster Buoy Steek is ongeveer even veilig als de Buntline steek, maar veel makkelijker los te krijgen. Hij wordt gebruikt om houtbundels vast te zetten.

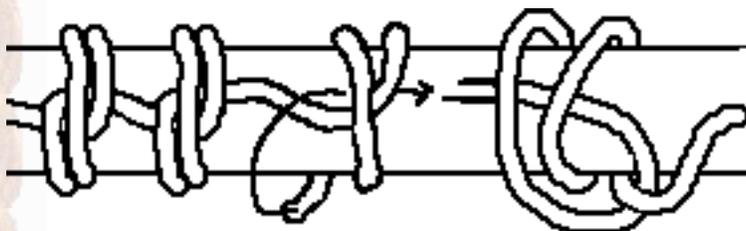
## Marlsteek of Halvesteek



Deze steek is bijzonder praktisch als je een bos wil binden of een rol bij elkaar wil houden. Het werkend eind hoeft maar eenmaal doorgehaald te worden en toch schiet dit bindsel niet echt snel los. Voor de beroemde 'tie-wraps' (of hoe heten die plastic snelbinders) werd deze steek ook op technische scholen aan elektrotechnici geleerd voor het binden van draadbomen. De reeks steken wordt altijd

begonnen en beëindigd met een [dubbele marlsteek](#).

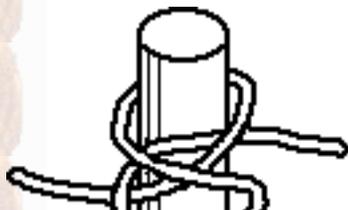
## Dubbele Marlsteek of Wurgknoop



De wurgknoop is belangrijk als tijdelijke takeling, en als permanente binding waarvan er een aantal in elkaars verlengde moeten worden gelegd. Eenmaal goed gelegd is losmaken zonder hulpmiddelen (priem of mes) bijna onmogelijk. Gebruik hem dus nooit voor iets dat snel weer los moet. Als

marlsteek wordt hij altijd als eerste en laatste in een rij gebruikt. Ook als een rij marlsteken 'gevaarlijk' lang wordt, pas je de dubbele marlsteek toe als 'tussenzekering', Let op! Op deze manier gelegd hoeft het werkend eind (of het 'klosje') maar één maal doorgehaald te worden. Je moet de knoop daarna wel even netjes afwerken. Gewoon aantrekken is daarbij niet voldoende!

## De Constrictor



De constrictor is belangrijk als tijdelijke takeling. En ook als permanente binding waarvan je er meerdere naast elkaar nodig hebt. Eenmaal goed gelegd is losmaken zonder hulpmiddelen (priem of mes) bijna onmogelijk. Gebruik hem dus nooit voor iets dat snel weer los moet. Omdat de constrictor "in de bocht" gelegd kan worden wordt hij



vaker gebruikt dan de wurgknoop.

Voor meer informatie over de constrictor-knoop familie kun je terecht bij de [Constrictor-knoop Familie](#).

Commentaar, ideeën, suggesties mail me:  *qqqq at realknots.com with subject "question"*

Alle mail zonder het juiste onderwerp worden automatisch, ongelezen weggemikt..

Het spijt me dat ik de mail link weg heb moeten halen. De Mailgrabbers hebben gewonnen.

Maar.... Ik heb een paar verborgen mail adresjes opgenomen zodat ze elkaar plat kunnen spammen nadat ze mijn "junk"gegrabbed hebben....



Omdat dit een niet commerciële site is kan en wil ik geen junk-mail of "spam" behandelen. Daarom behoud ik mij het recht voor om voor niet persoonlijke mail, bulk-mail en andere reclame uitingen f250,- afhandelings-kosten PER mail in rekening te brengen.

[Terug naar](#)

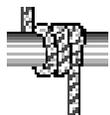


[Touwslagers Knopen  
Pagina](#)

[Verder naar](#)



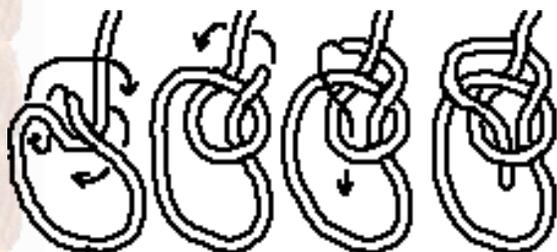
[De Vaste Lussen](#)

[Terug Naar](#)[De Steken](#)[Standard copyrights and disclaimer.](#)

# Enkele Lussen ( )

[Terug Naar](#)[Touwslagers Knopen  
Pagina](#)

## De Paalsteek



De Paalsteek is de meest gebruikte lus-knoop. Dat komt voornamelijk door de eenvoud, de betrouwbaarheid en waarschijnlijk ook de verwantschap aan de schootsteek. Houd in stap A het kruispunt tussen duim en wijsvinger van de rechterhand en draai vervolgens de pols met de klok mee. Wanneer je de lus weglaat heb je de [schootsteek](#). Kan iemand me vertellen waarom ik in alle boeken deze paalsteek vind,

behalve in de helft van mijn nederlandse boeken waarin de zwakkere linkse-paalsteek (met het losse eindje aan de verkeerde kant...) staat 'aangeprezen'???

## Gedubbelde Acht lus

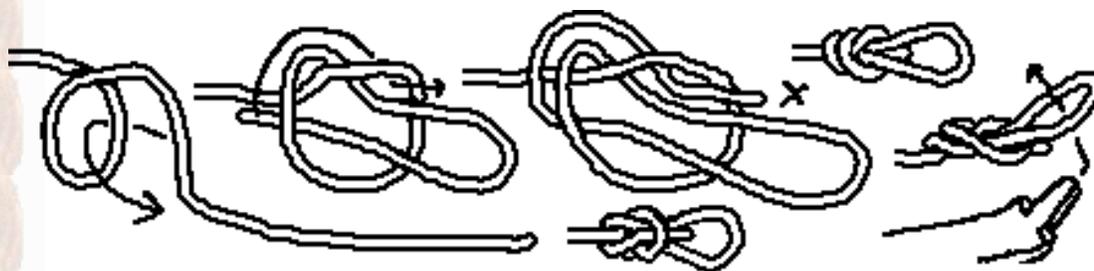


De gedubbelde 8 is een door klimmers veel gebruikte knoop. De knoop is snel te leggen en is veiliger dan de paalsteek. Er is veel discussie of het losse eind nog een stopper behoeft of niet. Snelheid van leggen/losmaken is ook iets waar je voor veiligheid rekening mee moet houden. De eerste wijze van leggen is gelijk aan het leggen van de [Vlaamse acht](#), maar dan met een dubbel touw. Het "losse-end" vormt de lus. Deze wijze van leggen is alleen toepasbaar als de lus pas na het leggen ergens om of in gelegd wordt.



Wanneer de lus ergens om gelegd moet worden, (om jezelf bijvoorbeeld) dan wordt eerst een enkele losse vlaamse acht gelegd die vervolgens gedubbeld wordt. Het is hierbij belangrijk dat er ruimte genoeg is voor de lus. Dat vraagt enige ervaring. Oefenen dus!

## De boogpees knoop



Dit is een zeer oude knoop die gebruikt werd als oog voor boogpezen. De knoop is eenvoudig en sterk. Eenmaal gelegd en stevig aangetrokken, wil je hem niet meer los knopen: je zou het een

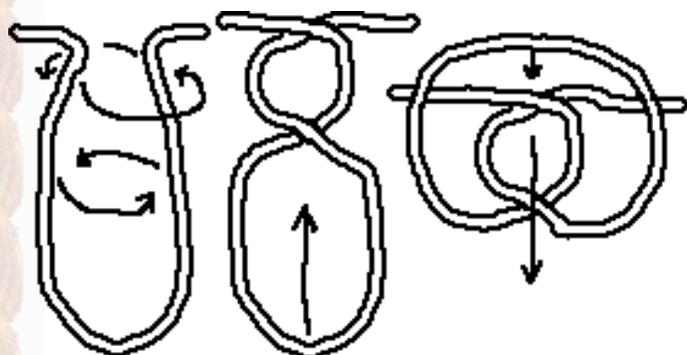
goede permanente lus kunnen noemen.

De boogpees knoop is geliefd omdat hij klein, sterk, veilig en eenvoudig te leggen is. Hij is netjes omdat er geen losse eindjes uitsteken.

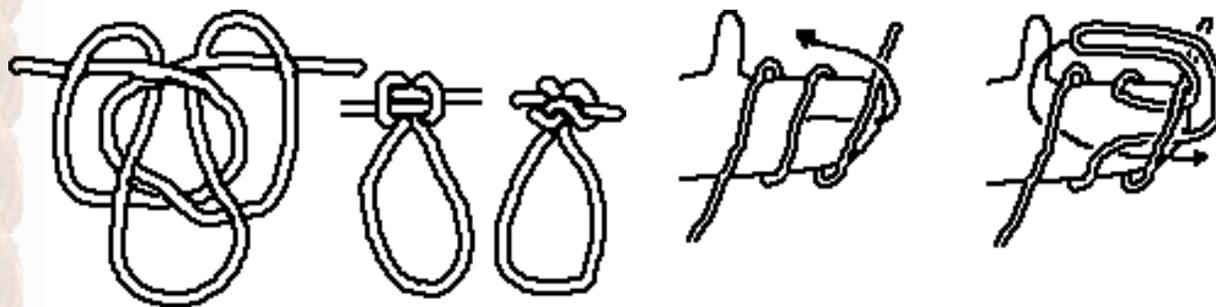
Moderne boogschutters geven de voorkeur aan ingesplitste ogen.

Als het losse eind (gemarkt met een kruisje) niet tussen de boog en de loop gezekerd zit is het aan te bevelen om een extra [overhand knoopje](#) als stoppertje te leggen.

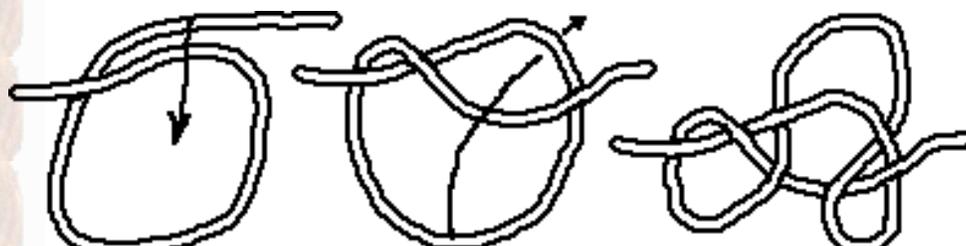
## Het middenmannetje



Een eenvoudig te leggen prima lus voor toepassingen waar de lus niet aan het uiteinde maar ergens in het werkend eind gelegd moet worden. Deze lus is in alle richtingen belastbaar. Dat is belangrijk voor toepassingen waarbij de spanning aan de einden groot is ten opzichte van die in de lus zelf.



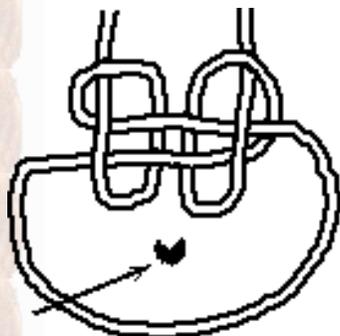
## De Artillerie Lus



Een praktische en eenvoudig te leggen lus voor het midden van het touw. Hij is niet zo sterk als de [middenman](#) maar is iets sneller te leggen en weer los te maken.

hij door de artillerie gebruikt (voor het dragen van het geweer over de schouder). Belast het touw niet te zwaar zolang de lus niet belast wordt. Hij is het best toepasbaar als tijdelijke knoop om dingen te dragen of op te hangen. En zoals altijd, netjes afwerken!

## De Pendant Steek



Een steek om een steentje in een amulet te binden. Zorg ervoor dat je het object goed in de lus zekert. Als je een lus (deze lus) gebruikt om een steentje of ander mooi object in een hanger te bevestigen is een leren veter de beste keuze. Maak een ondiep sneetje in de binnenkant van de lus. Precies diep genoeg om het oppervlak te vergroten zodat het beter grip heeft. En, zeker niet onbelangrijk, gebruik een goede schoenmakers-lijm (bijvoorbeeld bizon-kit.) Het resultaat is verrassend.

"De pendant steek is een naast familielid van de zoeteliefjes. [Zoeteliefjes.](#)

Commentaar, ideeën, suggesties mail me:  [qqqq at realknots.com](mailto:qqqq@realknots.com) with subject "question"

Alle mail zonder het juiste onderwerp worden automatisch, ongelezen weggemikt..

Het spijt me dat ik de mail link weg heb moeten halen. De Mailgrabbers hebben gewonnen.

Maar.... Ik heb een paar verborgen mail adresjes opgenomen zodat ze elkaar plat kunnen spammen nadat ze mijn "junk"gegrabbed hebben....



Omdat dit een niet commerciële site is kan en wil ik geen junk-mail of "spam" behandelen. Daarom behoud ik mij het recht voor om voor niet persoonlijke mail, bulk-mail en andere reclame uitingen f250,- afhandelings-kosten PER mail in rekening te brengen.

[Terug naar](#)



[Touwslagers Knopen  
Pagina](#)

[Verder naar](#)



[De Schuifknoop](#)

[Terug naar](#)[De Lussen](#)

# Schuifknoopen (🇳🇱)

[Touwslagers Knopen  
Pagina](#)

Lopende-lussen, strikken en lasso's.

## De Schuifknoop algemeen

**WAARSCHUWING!! De schuifknoop is geen speelknoop om galgje mee te spelen. Er zijn te veel kinderen per ongeluk gedood omdat ze dachten dat ze de knoop nog wel op tijd los zouden kunnen krijgen. Ook een niet strak aangehaalde schuifknoop is uiterst gevaarlijk rond je hals!**



Er zijn drie basismethoden om een schuifknoop te maken. Bij de eerste wordt het staande part door een vast oog aan het einde van het touw genomen. Dit kan een ingesplitst oog zijn maar ook een geknoopte zoals de paalsteek. (De [paalsteek](#) wordt feitelijk veel door zeilers als lopend-oog gebruikt.) Ook de enkelvoudige schuifknoop zelf wordt wel gebruikt als soepel lopend-oog.



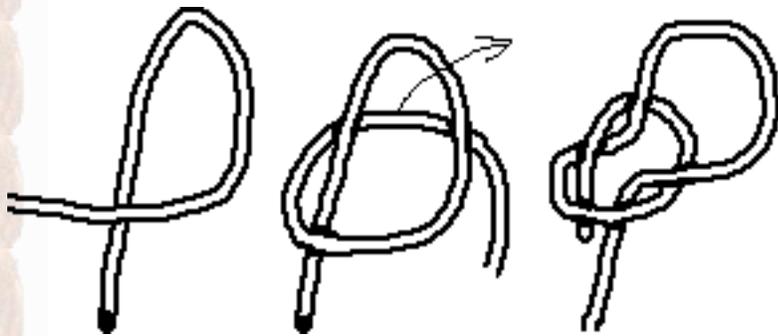
Bij de tweede manier knoop je een lopend oog rond het staande part, ( een simpele knoop of steek ) zodanig dat de lus sluit als aan het lopend eind getrokken wordt. Dit is de meest gebruikte manier om een schuifknoop te maken. Het zorgt ervoor dat de lus makkelijk sluit (maar vaak moeilijk opent.)



Bij de derde manier leg je een knoop andersom rond het staande part, zodat als je aan het lopend eind trekt de lus opent.

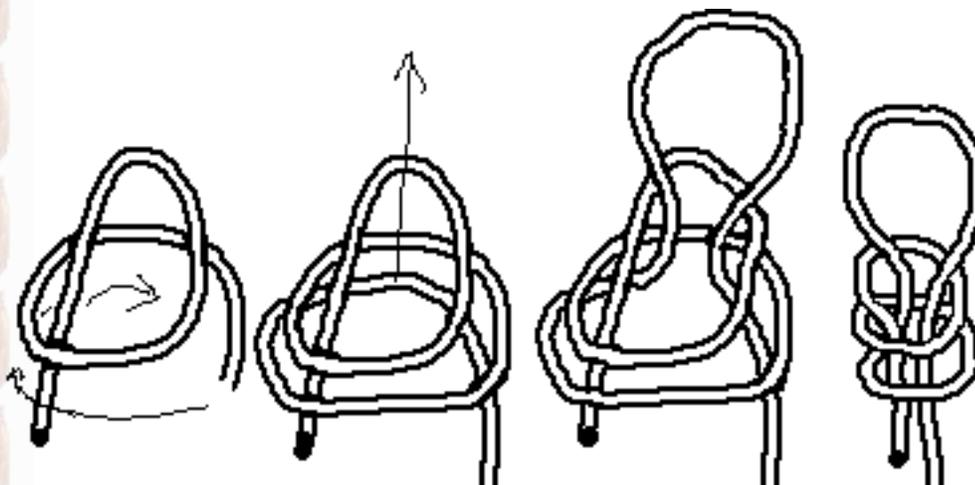
Ik ken maar één praktische toepassing van zo een schuifknoop: het aanbinden van een yoyo aan het touwtje. Met de achtknoop als lopende knoop. Maar bij het opbinden van balen en pakketten worden ze regelmatig onbewust gelegd. Ook tijdens het oefenen van het leggen van schuifknoopen eindig je in het begin met dit soort lussen.

## De enkelvoudige Schuifknoop



Dit is de eenvoudigste schuifknoop. Hij wordt meestal gebruikt als basis voor verder werk en is nauw verwant aan de [overhandknoop](#) en de [Marlsteek](#). Als hij als schuifknoop gebruikt wordt is het verstandig een stoppertje te leggen in het losse eindje (de overhandknoop). Hij wordt wel als stoppers-strik voor kleine vogels gebruikt.

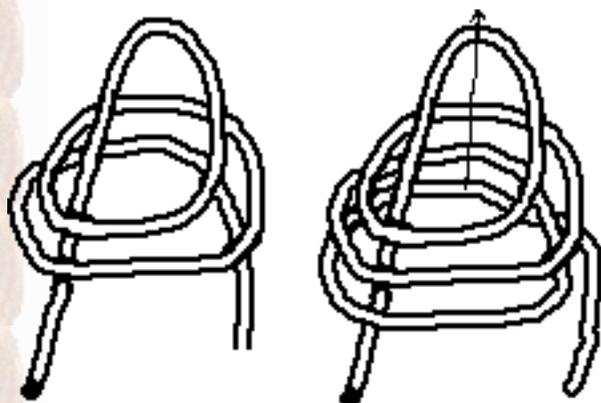
## De Wurg Strik



De [wurgknoop](#) is een uitstekende knoop om als lopende knoop voor een schuifknoop te gebruiken. Je kunt de kracht die nodig is voor het sluiten van de lus prima regelen. Hoe meer kracht er van binnen de lus wordt aangewend om los te komen, hoe sterker de wurgknoop zich hiertegen zal verzetten. Geen wonder dat deze knoop veel voor

strikken gebruikt wordt.

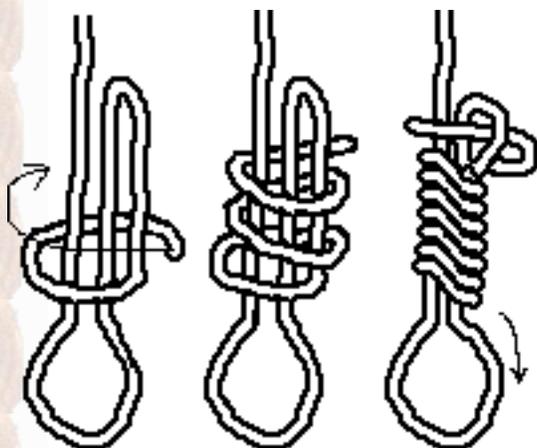
## De Galgen Knoop.



[De meervoudige overhand knoop](#). Zoals de naam al aangeeft een knoop met een duister verleden.

**Speel nooit 'Galgje'. Het is werkelijk dodelijk.**

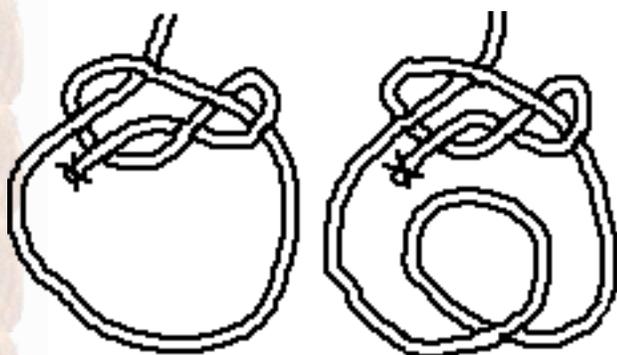
## De Beulsknoop.



Deze knoop werd ook aan de galg gebruikt. De kracht om te sluiten is beter regelbaar dan bij de galgenknoop. En omdat hij groter is in de nek neemt men aan dat hij de nek eerder breekt. Dat zou 'menselijker' zijn dan het gebruik van de galgenknoop dit meer wurgde.

**Speel nooit 'Galgje'. Het is werkelijk dodelijk.**

## De reverse acht schuifknoop.



Dit is (tot nu toe) de enige 'verkeerd' lopende schuifknoop waarvoor ik toepassingen ken. Hij wordt gebruikt voor het binden voor pakjes en ... voor het vastmaken van het touwtje aan een YoYo. Gevorderde YoYo'ers doen de lus maar één maal om de yoyo. Zo kunnen ze de yoyo draaiend beneden houden (slippend) en met een klein rukje weer naar boven roepen. Hiervoor moet de yoyo zeer snel draaien en de lus goed getrimd zijn. Beginners willen de yoyo gewoon vast hebben. Zij slaan de lus er een

keer extra om en trekken alles goed aan.

Leg eventueel een overhand knoopje in de tampjes. (gemarkeerd met kruisje).

Commentaar, ideeën, suggesties mail me:  **qqqq at realknots.com with subject "question"**

Alle mail zonder het juiste onderwerp worden automatisch, ongelezen weggemikt..

Het spijt me dat ik de mail link weg heb moeten halen. De Mailgrabbers hebben gewonnen.

Maar.... Ik heb een paar verborgen mail adresjes opgenomen zodat ze elkaar plat kunnen spammen nadat ze mijn "junk" gegrabbed hebben....

.....

Omdat dit een niet-comerciele site is kan en wil ik geen "junk-mail" of Spam ontvangen. Daarom ben ik genoodzaakt iedereen die commerciële en/of persoonlijke bulkmail stuurd per mailtje f250,- afhandelings kosten in rekening te brengen.

[Terug naar](#)



[Touwslagers Knopen  
Pagina](#)

[Standard copyrights and disclaimer.](#)

[Forward To](#)



[The Links](#)


[Statistieken](#)

[MyNedstat](#)

[Service](#)

[Catalogus](#)

# NEDSTATBASIC

- [Hier en nu](#)
- [Wanneer](#)
- [Waarvandaan](#)
- [Hoe](#)
- [Waarmee](#)


[Touwslagers Knopen pagina - \(Verenigingen\)](#)

3 september 2004 07:24

**NEW GSMWEB.NL**  
 95 gratis gsm's | losse abc's

Nokia 6230	<a href="#">gratis</a>
Nokia 6310i	<a href="#">gratis</a>
Nokia 6610i	<a href="#">gratis</a>
Nokia 7200	<a href="#">gratis</a>
Meer Nokia's	<a href="#">gratis</a>
Samsung e600	<a href="#">gratis</a>
Samsung e710	<a href="#">gratis</a>
Samsung e800	<a href="#">gratis</a>
Meer Samsungs	<a href="#">gratis</a>
Ericsson K700i	<a href="#">gratis</a>
Overige 87	<a href="#">gratis</a>

**EXCLUSIEF**  
 500 minuten SamenBellen  
 voor maar 2,50 PM

Samengevat	
Meet sinds ...	26 januari 2003
Totaal aantal pageviews tot nu toe	71018
Drukste dag tot nu toe	21 december 2003
Pageviews	436

Prognose voor vandaag
Gemiddeld komt 7 procent van het dagelijkse bezoek vóór 7:24. Op grond van het bezoekersaantal van 8 van vandaag tot nu toe kan uw site vandaag op 104 pageviews (+/- 34) uitkomen.

Laatste 10 bezoekers			
1.	2 september	23:39	Chello, Almere, Nederland
2.	2 september	23:46	Versatel, Nederland
3.	3 september	00:11	Chello, Almere, Nederland
4.	3 september	01:10	Wanadoo Nederland B.V., Nederland
5.	3 september	03:05	AT&T, Verenigde Staten
6.	3 september	06:15	Genuity/ BBN Technologies, Verenigde Staten
7.	3 september	06:55	Genuity/ BBN Technologies, Verenigde Staten
8.	3 september	07:07	Road Runner, Verenigde Staten
9.	3 september	07:19	Quicknet BV, Nederland
10.	3 september	07:23	Genuity/ BBN Technologies, Verenigde Staten



Microsoft

Maak  
grootse  
ideeën  
nog  
grootser  
met de  
ASP.NET  
Resource  
Kit.

Klik hier voor  
uw gratis ASP.NET  
Resource Kit 



[hier!](#)



Pageviews per dag	
7 augustus 2004	112
8 augustus 2004	108
9 augustus 2004	150
10 augustus 2004	195
11 augustus 2004	136
12 augustus 2004	162
13 augustus 2004	158
14 augustus 2004	138
15 augustus 2004	151
16 augustus 2004	196
17 augustus 2004	174
18 augustus 2004	159
19 augustus 2004	185
20 augustus 2004	131
21 augustus 2004	152
22 augustus 2004	146
23 augustus 2004	146
24 augustus 2004	130
25 augustus 2004	158



**DELL DEAL**

**Inspiron™  
510m**



van 1.396,-  
**Voor 1.315,-**  
incl. BTW

Geldig op geselecteerde  
Inspiron™ systemen die  
online worden besteld.

Geldig t/m 06.09.04  
**KLIK HIER**

Easy as **DELL**

26 augustus 2004	138
27 augustus 2004	139
28 augustus 2004	96
29 augustus 2004	150
30 augustus 2004	130
31 augustus 2004	124
1 september 2004	113
2 september 2004	107
3 september 2004	8
<b>Totaal</b>	<b>3892</b>

Land van herkomst			
1.	Nederland	49018	69.0 %
2.	België	11249	15.8 %
3.	Verenigde Staten	4380	6.2 %
4.	Verenigd Koninkrijk	649	0.9 %
5.	Duitsland	553	0.8 %
6.	Canada	539	0.8 %
7.	Zuid-Korea	368	0.5 %
8.	Zweden	281	0.4 %
9.	Frankrijk	264	0.4 %
10.	Australië	254	0.4 %
	Onbekend	621	0.9 %
	De rest	2842	4.0 %
	<b>Totaal</b>	<b>71018</b>	<b>100.0 %</b>

© Copyright [Nedstat](#) 1996-2004 / Design by [McNolia](#)

[Advertise?](#) | [Disclaimer](#) | [Terms of Use](#) | [Privacy Policy](#) | [Nedstat Pro](#) | [Sitestat](#)



[home](#)

[manage my account](#)

[webmail](#)



Whoops!  
The file you were looking for on

was not found.

With over 15,000 popular names like Daniels in our library, we're sure to have the perfect email and web address for you.

**search for your name**

@

**or, search for a different name**

**>> Go**

### consider the benefits

- » Register Domain & Email Address for \$29.95 or Email Only for \$24.95 / yr.
- » POP, Webmail, Forwarding, No Spam, No Taglines.
- » Add Enhanced Features such as IMAP, Storage, Web Hosting and More.



[ [support](#) ] [ [contact us](#) ] [ [about](#) ]

© 2000 NetIdentity 350 South Center Street, Ste. 500 Reno, NV 89501

[Click here for more information](#)

THE PAGE CANNOT BE FOUND: 404 ERROR



The page you are looking for might have been removed, had its name changed, or is temporarily unavailable.

Please try the following

- If you typed the page address in the Address bar, make sure that it is spelled correctly.
- Open the [www.iol.ie](http://www.iol.ie) home page, and then look for links to the information you want.
- Click the [Back](#) button to try another link.
- Click [Search](#) to look for information on the Internet.



# Blood Knot



## Blood Knot



### Knot Tying Instructions

---

Last modified: Thu Nov 16 08:28:07 1995

# Fishing Knots

**A Grant's Guide By Herron Publications**

The average angler needs perhaps no more than three or four basic knots, but these knots relate directly to his mode of fishing. The game fisherman need have little interest in the knots used by the trout fisherman, who, in turn, uses knots that are not necessarily suitable for the bream fisherman.

Each knot dealt with in this book has its own definite and prescribed purpose. When properly tied, or formed, then worked or drawn up into shape, the knot can make all the difference between boating a big fish, or losing it.

I suggest that you select only those few knots that are of the greatest use to you, and practise, practise, practise tying them until they become second nature to you. It is most important that you use knots that can be tied in an easily remembered manner. There is little point using a knot that can only be tied by reference to a book - even this one. You'll be astonished how a few hours practice with a knot will make for perfection.

*Ern Grant, Author "Grant's Guide - Fishing Knots & Rigs"*

[Find out more about fishing knots and rigs....](#)

---

This fishing knot guide is brought to you by [Fishing Cairns](#) - *If You Can't Catch It In North Queensland, It's Probably Not Worth Catching.*

International Angler Ring  
Current Global Rank #4

[previous cast](#) | [random](#) | [poll](#) | [tackle](#) | [search](#) | [next cast](#)

IAR powered by [FishNation](#) [Join today](#)

RANKED: 10

RANKED: 19

Fishing  
Top 100 Sites

RANKED #45

[Web Site By Port Douglas Internet Services](#)

# Barrell Knot



Start with a two ends pointing towards each other and overlap them ~ 1 foot. Pass the Right hand rope (the one pointing away from you) over the other and back under



Cross the same end over itself making an X



Pass the end UNDER the X and pull tight



Flip the entire works around and do the same thing on the other side. When you're done, you should have two sliding knots like these.



The finished knot.

Pull the outside ropes, and the two knots should slide together and the X's should mesh. If they don't the knot is wrong and you should start over.

[Back to Main Knot Page](#)

# Chinese Knotting: The Treasure Knot

[ [Generalities](#) ] [ [Nomenclature](#) ] [ [Similar Knots](#) ] [ [How To](#) ] [ [Home](#) ] [ [Books](#) ] [ [Links](#) ] [ [Supplies](#) ] [ [Glossary](#) ] [ [About](#) ]

## Generalities



I came by the instructions for this particular family of knots from a single [book](#), which is why I have classified them all together, despite there being what seems to be 2 distinct knot groups here. I may at some future date split this page, but until then... Only [Ashley's](#) #2463 bears any resemblance to any of this family of knots, so I have named the first one *bao* (a romanization of the Chinese name of the book in which I first found the instructions), the second type I am having great difficulty in executing (the instructions are quite sparse), but may end up being the *treasure knot* by default). In any case, it should be named by the time the instructions are completed.

The construction of the double bao knot is symmetrical in nature, so you will only be able to make knots with an even number of ears.

## Nomenclature

[The Treasure Knot](#): Double Bao (2), Triple Bao (3), Quadruple Bao (4), etc.

[Ashley's](#): #2463 (Two part Quadruple Bao, Bao4x2)

## Similar Knots

- [Flower Knot](#)
- Star Knot

## How To

Bao 2x: [4.](#)  [6.](#)  [8.](#)  [n.](#) 

## General Tips

- **be very clear on which loops are part of the central structure of the knot and which loops are ears as you are tightening the knot.** With the bao knot it is very easy to get confused and it's just a few tugs from finished construction to irretrievable mess, although, it is actually easier to distinguish ears from knot loops the larger (more ears) the knot.

## 2x4 Bao

The 2x4 bao is the smallest of the double bao knots. See the [detailed instructions](#) for construction information.



## 2x6 Bao

As previously mentioned, the construction method is symmetrical, so there are no odd numbered bao knots. The next larger bao knot after 2x4 is the [2x6 bao](#).



## *n* Bao

Tie the [2x4 bao knot](#), then tie the [2x6 bao knot](#). [The pattern](#) for making as large a double bao knot as desired (even as large as [12](#), [14](#) or more) should become clear.



---

[CLW](#)

Creation Date: Mon Sep 21 12:06:36 PDT 1998

Last Modified: *Friday, 14-Jul-2000 08:14:47 GMT*

Page accessed at local time: Friday, 03-Sep-2004 05:25:20 GMT



[Home](#)  
[E-Mail](#)

## KNOTBOARD OF THE MONTH

### RINGBOLT HITCHING:



#### Description ----

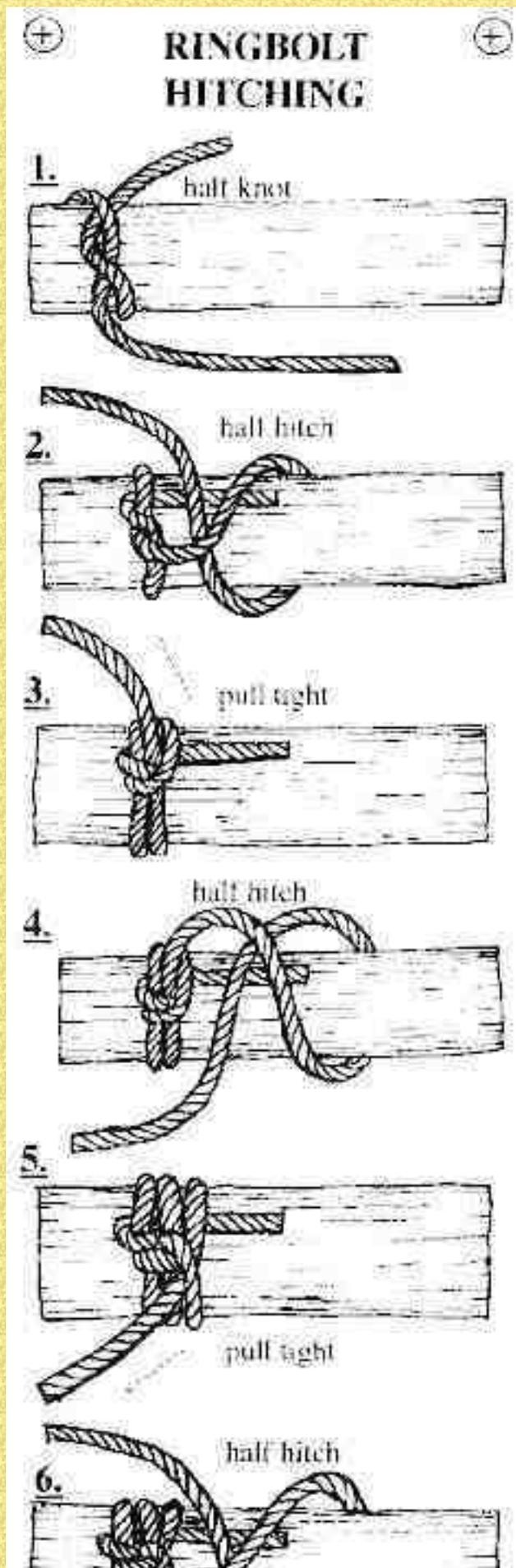
A series of interlocking lark's head knot that form a ridge around the outside of a ring or loop.

#### Use ----

To prevent chafing; as a decoration.

#### Comments ----

There are many forms of ringbolt hitching, the form shown here is one of the simplest and does not require the use of a needle as many other forms do. Ringbolt hitching was used to prevent chafing of ropes that were reeved through hand forged iron rings and to keep them from clanging against objects around them. In the present,



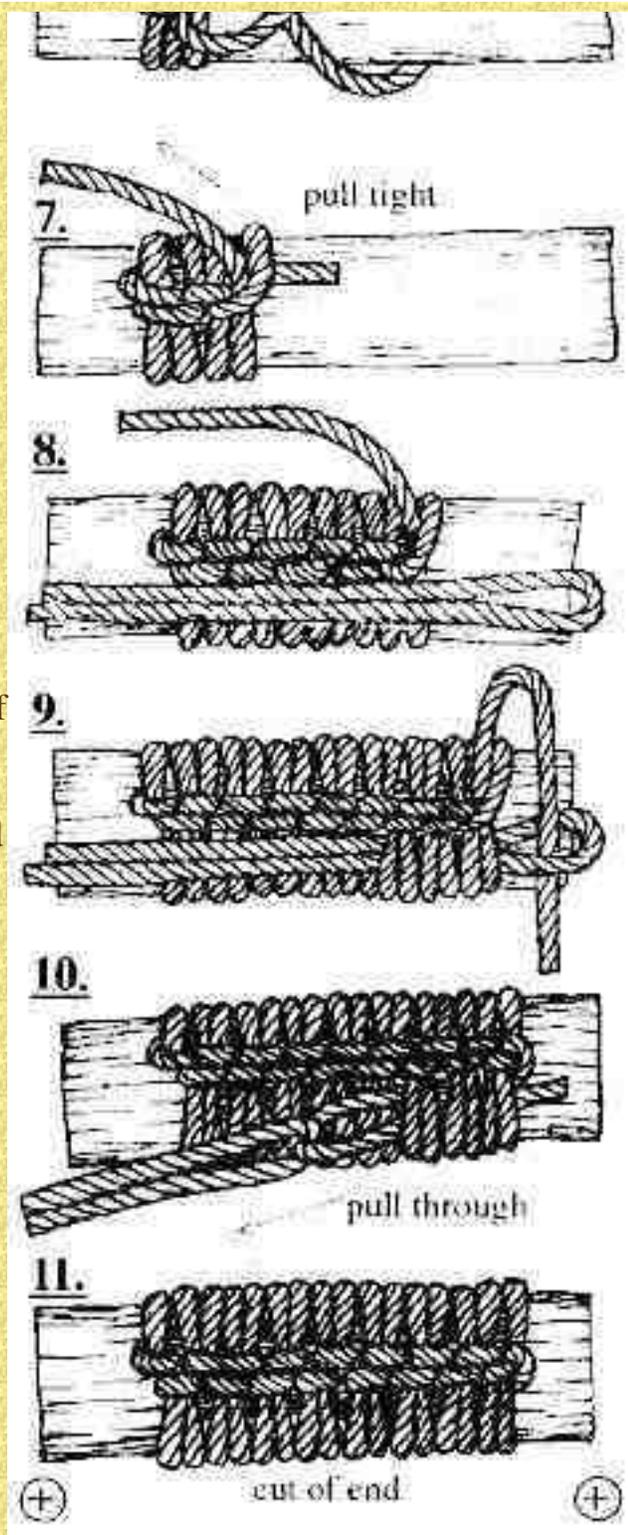
ringbolt hitching can be used to protect synthetic ropes that are easily chafed by applying a layer of material that is not easily chafed.

### Other Names ----

Platted Ring; Hog Backing; Cockscombing.

### Narration ----- (For Ringbolt Hitching knotboard.)

(1) Start the ringbolt hitching by tying a half knot around the object. (2) Tie a half hitch around the object so that the standing end is trapped under the half hitch. (3) pull the half hitch tight. (4) Tie the next half hitch in the opposite direction around the object. (5) Pull the half hitch tight. (6) Tie another half hitch in the opposite direction around the object; the same direction as the first half hitch. (7) Pull half hitch tight. (8) When the length of the ringbolt hitching is within 5 or 6 half hitches of being long enough; form a bight in the a short piece of twine so that the eye of the bight is toward the end of the work. (9) Continue to add half hitches until the ringbolt hitching is completed; reeve the running end through the eye of the bight. (10) Use the short piece of twine to pull the running end under the half hitches. (11) Cut off the end of the twine.

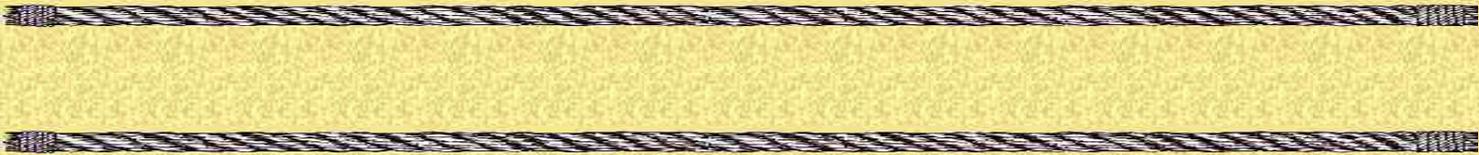
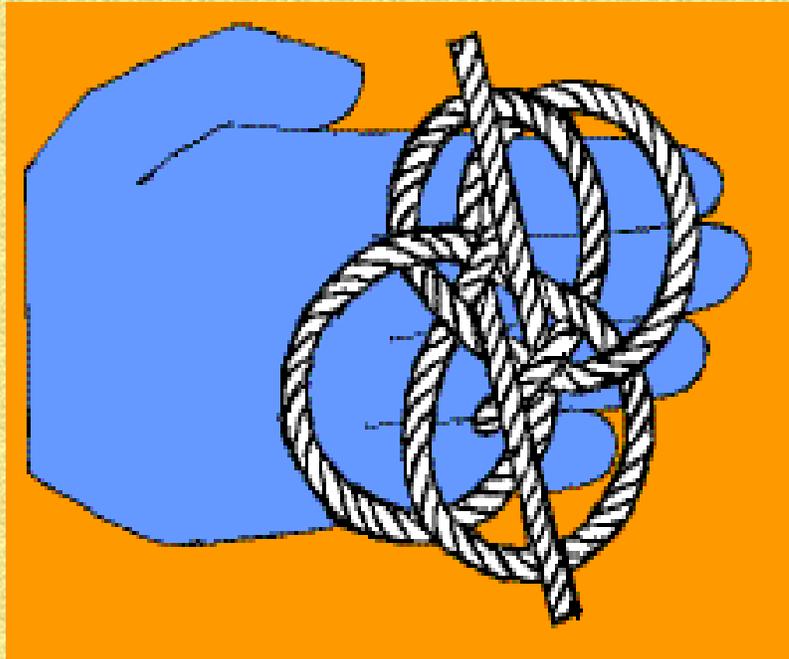




Home  
E-Mail

# BOATSWAIN'S WHISTLE KNOT

## RERUN ANIMATION



Home  
E-Mail

# Bög

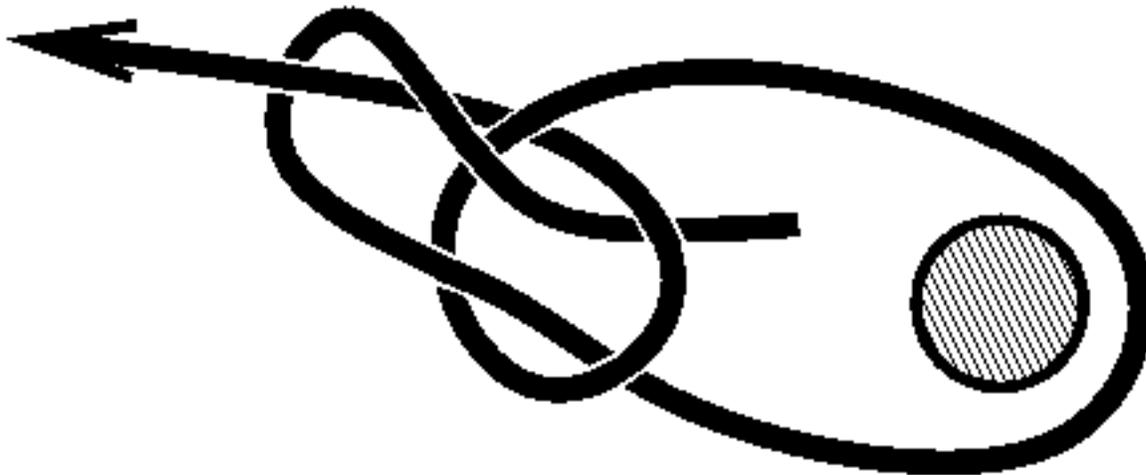


Kötélvég kibomlása ellen, más csomóknál a szabad végek kicsúszásának megakadályozására.

<< | [#eleje](#) | [index](#) | [levél](#) | [Dupla bög](#) >>

Utolsó módosítás: 2002.09.26 23:41:34 CEST

# Bowlin



Állóhurok. Eleg jól tart. Még akkor is viszonylag egyszerű kibontani, ha megszorul és vizes. Ui. a szár körüli kis fül nem feszül meg. (Persze ha uszályt vontatsz vele, akkor úgymarad.) Más néven paalsteek. Le kell biztosítani a

kötélvéget.

[<< Zászló~](#) | [#eleje](#) | [index](#) | [levél](#) | [Dupla bowlin >>](#)

Utolsó módosítás: 2002.09.26 23:41:34 CEST

# Bowline



- A commonly used knot to tie a loop in the end of a rope. It has the advantage of not jamming, compared to some other loop forming knots (for example when using an overhand knot on a large bight to form a loop).
  - Form a small loop (the direction is important), and pass the free end of the knot up through the loop, around behind the standing part of the rope, and back down through the loop.
  - A chant used by many to remember this knot is "The rabbit comes out of the hole, round the tree, and back down the hole again", where the hole is the small loop, and the rabbit is the running end of the rope.
  - In the same way that a [Left Handed Sheet bend](#) is a [Sheet bend](#) that has the running end of the rope coming out of the wrong side of the knot, a cowboy bowline is a bowline that also has the running end of the rope coming out of the wrong side of the knot. It suffers the same problems as the left handed sheet bend.
- 
- Tip. Don't be afraid to use this knot to form a loop of any size in rope.
  - Tip. To quickly identify if you have tied the Bowline normal or left handed, check to see that the running end exits the knot on the inside of the loop.
  - Tip. For added security, finish the knot with a stop knot such as a [Figure of Eight](#) knot to remove any possibility of the Bowline slipping.
  - Tip. If you use this knot in a man carrying situation - perhaps a rescue where a harness is unavailable - then you **MUST** use a stop knot as mentioned above.

 [Return to Knot Menu](#)

---



*Copyright (C) Dick Ruck 1997*

[Ovingdean Saltdean Rottingdean Telscombe Cliffs Peacehaven Newhaven PC Computer Repair,  
Training and Virus Help](#)



[Home](#) [Sections](#) [Local Branches](#) [Events](#) [Resources](#) [Miscellaneous](#) [Whats's New](#) [Search](#)

## Campcraft Badge - Explorer Level - Knots and Lashings

[Round Turn and Two Half Hitches](#)

[Sheep Shank](#)

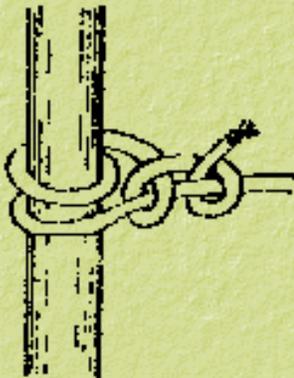
[Bowline](#)

[Diagonal Lashing](#)

[Figure of Eight Lashing](#)

[Whipping of your choice](#)

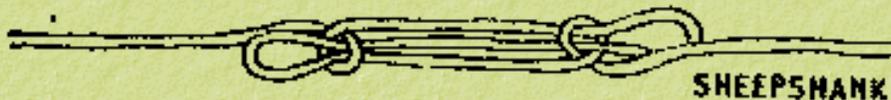
### 1. Round Turn and Two Half Hitches



This knot is used to make fast a rope to an anchorage. It can be tied while the standing part is under strain. This is a good knot to attach your rope to an anchor for a flying fox or a bridge.



### 2. Sheep Shank



A knot tied in the bight for shortening a rope or taking up the slack, without cutting it. It can also be used to protect a weak damaged, or frayed section of the rope.



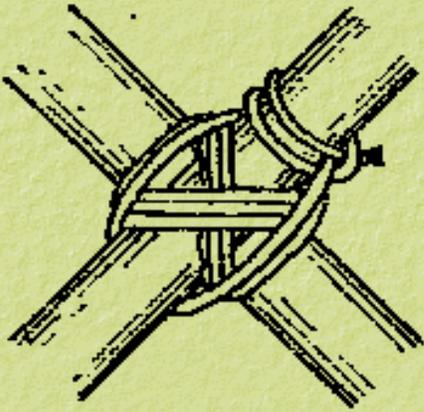
### 3. Bowline



The most useful and one of the simplest ways of putting a fixed loop in the end of a rope. It is easy to tie and untie, it never slips nor jams and has a high breaking strength.



#### 4. Diagonal Lashing

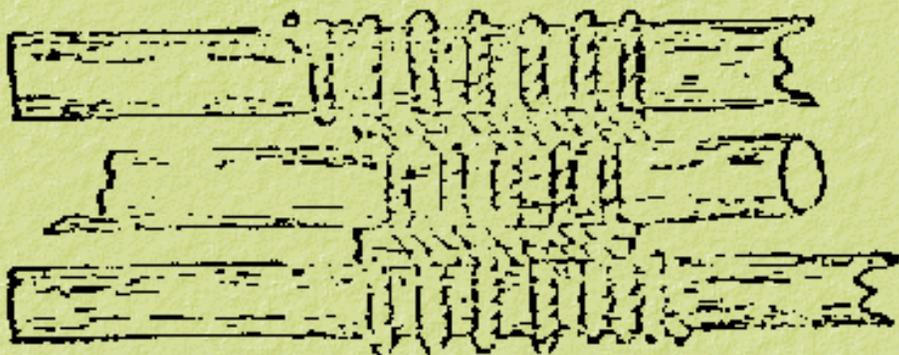


Used when two crossing spars tend to spring apart. Commonly used for the centre lashing on the diagonal braces of a trestle.

- Begin with a timber hitch.
- Do three diagonal turns across one way.
- Then three across the other way.
- Pull the lashing together with about three frapping turns
- Finish off with a clove hitch.



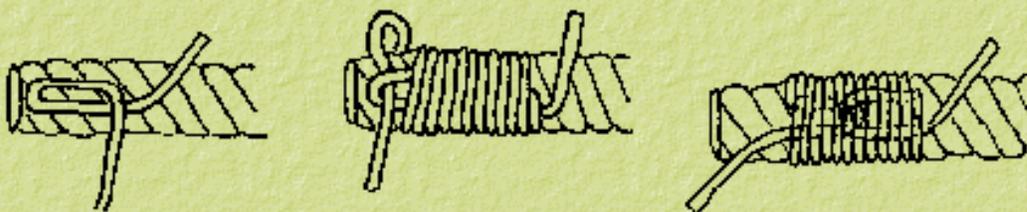
#### 5. Figure of Eight Lashing



Used to make tripods. Lay spars with two running one way and the third in the other. Start with a clove hitch on one outer spar then take turns over and under. Make frappings between spars. End with a clove hitch on opposite spar to start.



## 6. Whipping of your choice



---

[Home](#) | [Sections](#) | [Local Branches](#) | [Events](#) | [Resources](#) | [Miscellaneous](#) | [What's New](#) | [Search](#)

---

[WebSpace Donated Courtesy of ARCON Web Services](#)



ROPE WORKS ©1996

Gerald L. Findley, all rights reserved

## Knots

The use of rope in the workplace was common practice until the midpoint of this century. At that time, modern materials handling techniques started to be used and the use of ropes declined. Along with this decline in the use of ropes in the work place there was also a decline in the knowledge of how to use rope safely.

The more common uses of rope by the average person is the securing of a load to a personal vehicle or for recreational purposes. Both of these uses require a knowledge of how to choose and tie safe, secure knots. If this knowledge is not available, the consequences can be devastating, resulting in personal injury or the loss of personal equipment.

For the last 35 years I have been learning and teaching about rope. My experience in teaching about rope has shown me that most people must be shown how to tie a knot in small, sequential steps, and they must be shown many times before they can tie a knot with confidence.

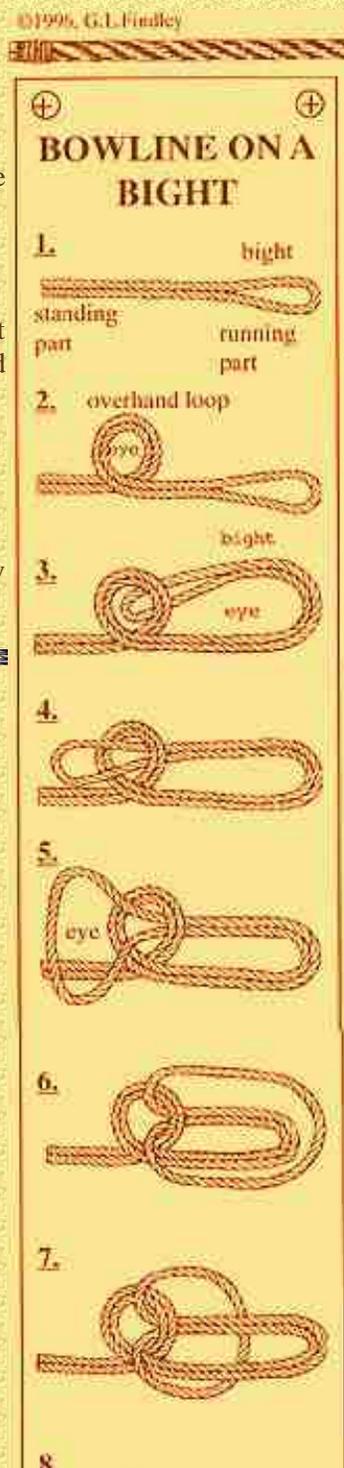
In preparing this book I have attempted to design a set of teaching aids that present each selected knot, splice, or lashing in small, sequential steps. These teaching aids enable the learner to study each step and to duplicate it with a length of practice rope.

The knots, splices and lashings presented in this book were selected because of their use by the Boy Scouts of America and others who are interested in outdoor recreation.

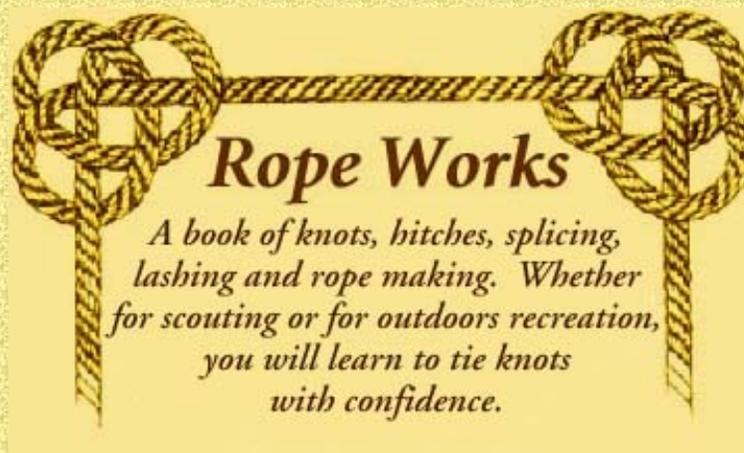
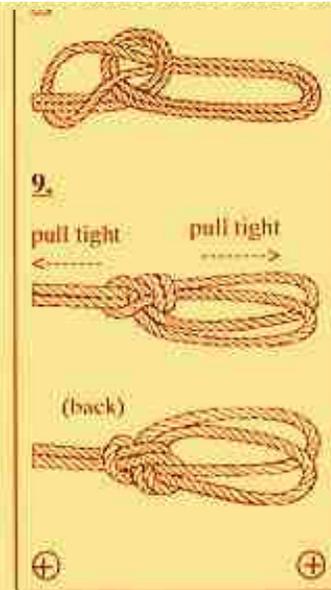
The following knots and hitches are covered in :

# ROPE WORKS

- Whipping (3 methods)
- Service
- Grapevine Service
- Ringbolt Hitching
- Seizing
- Seizing With Racking Turns
- Figure Eight
- Figure Eight On A Bight
- Stevedore Knot
- Stopper Knot
- Square Knot
- Water Knot
- Sheet Bend
- Double Sheet Bend
- Sheet Bend (Short End)
- Bowline
- Bowline On A Bight



French Bowline  
Lineman's Loop  
Sheepshank  
Trumpet Knot  
Sheepshank (Quick)  
Clove Hitch  
Constrictor Knot  
Monkey's Paw  
Turk's Head  
Two Half Hitches  
Taut-line Hitch  
Timber Hitch  
Mooring Hitch  
Marlin Spike Hitch  
Marlin Spike Ladder  
Anchor Bend  
Belaying To A Cleat  
Jug Knot



**Order a copy of RopeWorks now !**



Home  
E-Mail



Page has moved

[Click here...](#)

# [ScoutDB.org](http://ScoutDB.org) presents *"How To Tie A Tie"*

As a service to the more fashion challenged (like me) ScoutDB presents the following primer on how to tie a tie. And be sure to check out [what others are saying](#) about ScoutDB's H2TaT.

Note that all images below are mirror images. That is, it is what you would see when looking into the mirror.

---

## The Windsor Knot

Wide and triangular - for wide spread shirt collars



1. Start with wide end of the tie on your right and extending a foot below narrow end.
  2. Cross wide end over narrow and bring up through loop.
  3. Bring wide end down around behind narrow and up on your right.
  4. Then put down through loop and around across narrow as shown.
  5. Turn and pass up through loop and...
  6. Complete by slipping down through the knot in front. Tighten and draw up snug to collar.
- 

## The Half-Windsor Knot

Medium symmetrical triangle - for standard shirt collars

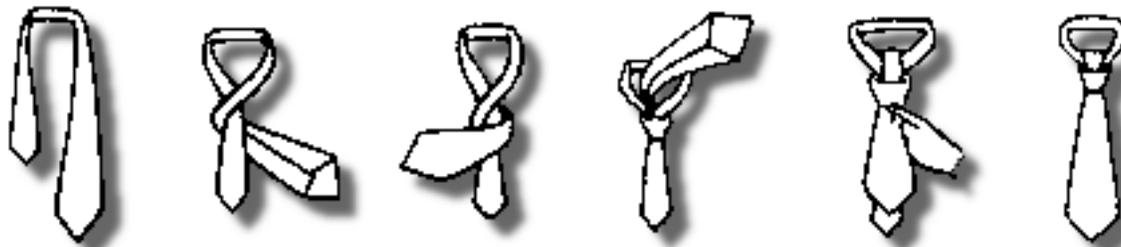


1. Start with wide end of the tie on your right and extending a foot below narrow end.
2. Cross wide end over narrow and turn back underneath.

3. Bring up and turn down through loop.
  4. Pass wide end around front from left to right.
  5. Then up through loop...
  6. And down through knot in front. Tighten carefully and draw up to collar.
- 

## The Four-In-Hand Knot

**Long and straight - to complement a standard shirt collar**



1. Start with wide end of the tie on your right and extending a foot below narrow end.
  2. Cross wide end over narrow and back underneath.
  3. Continue around passing wide end across front of narrow once more.
  4. Pass side end up through loop.
  5. Holding front of knot loose with index finger, pass wide end down through loop in front.
  6. Remove finger and tighten knot carefully. Draw up tight to collar by holding narrow end and sliding knot snug.
- 

## The Bow Tie

**For the man who dresses with a certain flair**



1. Start with end in left hand, extending 1.5 inch below that in right hand.
2. Cross longer end over shorter and pass up through loop.
3. Form front loop of bow by doubling up shorter end (hanging) end placing across collar points.
4. Hold this front loop with thumb and forefinger of left hand. Drop long end down over front.

5. Place right forefinger pointing up on bottom half of hanging part. Pass up behind front loop and...
6. Poke resulting loop through knot behind front loop (see illustration). Even ends and tighten.

---

[Bob Baggerman](#)

[bob.public@mindspring.com](mailto:bob.public@mindspring.com)



[ScoutDB Home](#)

6/21/2003

<http://www.scoutdb.org/h2tat/>



Home  
**ARCHIVE**

# KNOTBOARD OF THE MONTH

Each month there will be new knotboard and descriptive text displayed on this page.

**THIS MONTH'S IS THE :**

## **BELAYING TO A CLEAT:**

**Use ----**

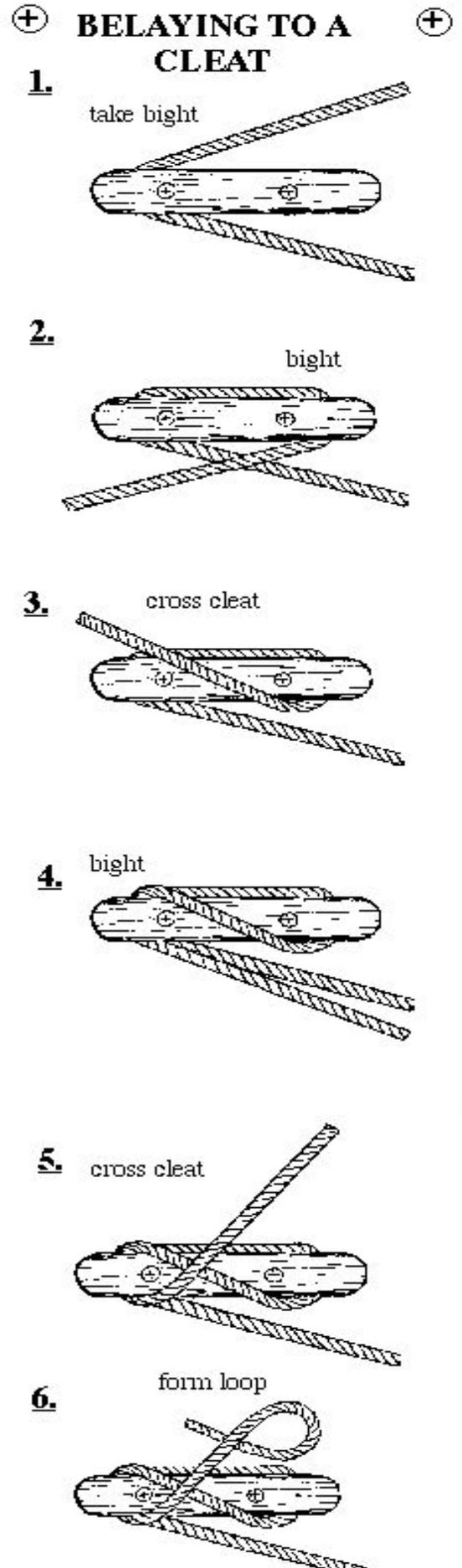
To secure a flag lanyard, to moor a boat to a dock.

**Comments ----**

Belaying to a cleat is a fast non-jamming method of securing a rope anywhere along its length without reeving any part of the rope through or around anything.

**Narration ----- ( For Belaying to a CleatKnotboard.)**

(1) Take a turn around the cleat and pull the line tight. (2) Complete a round turn around the cleat . (3) Place the line across the cleat. (4) Take a bight around one horn of the cleat. (5) Place the line across the cleat a second time. (6) Take a bight around the other horn of the cleat to form a figure eight around the horns of the cleat. (7) Repeat steps 3 through 6. (8) Form an underhand loop. (9) Place the eye of the underhand loop over the horn of the cleat. (10) Pull the underhand loop tight to form a half hitch around the horn of the cleat, this locks the rope in place.



## ANIMATED KNOT

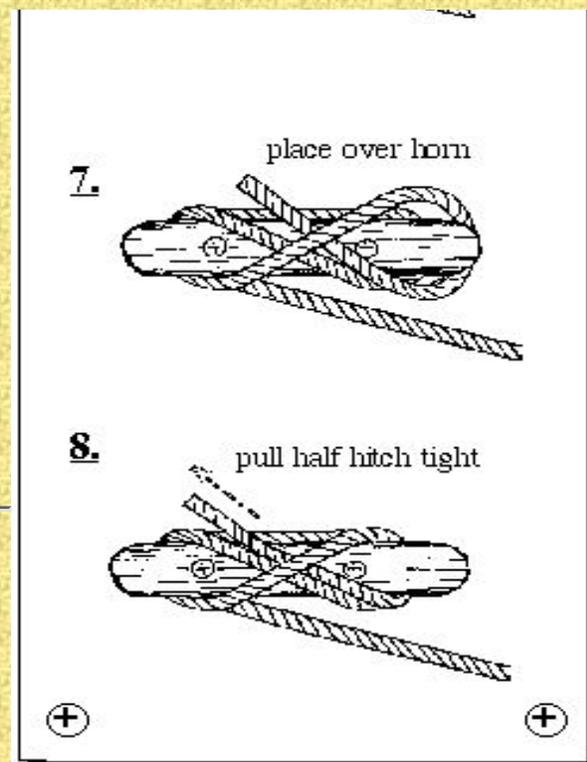


## BELAYING TO A CLEAT

---

## KNOTBOARD OF THE MONTH

## ARCHIVE

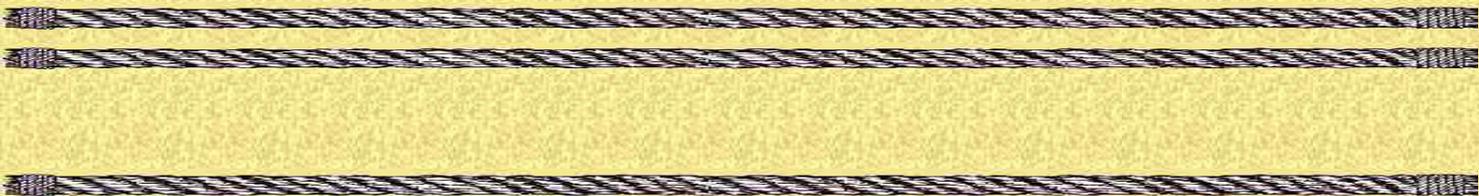
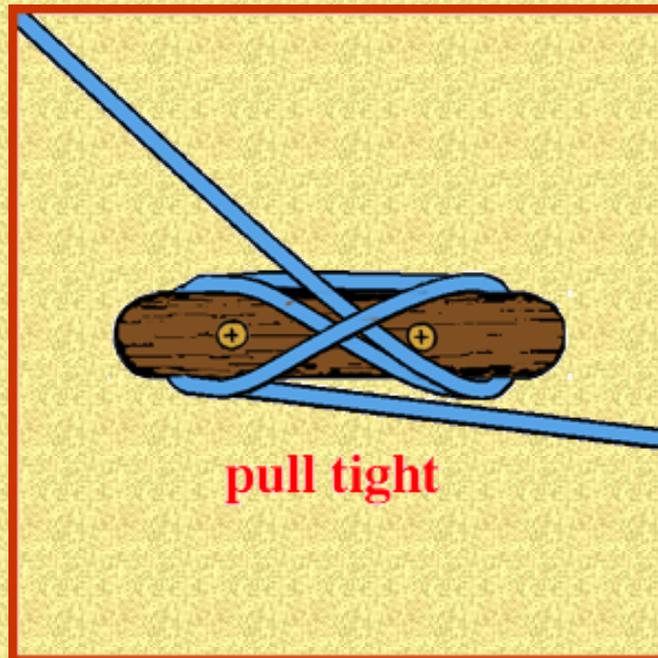


Home  
E-Mail

# BELAYING TO A CLEAT

## RERUN ANIMATION

## RUN ANIMATION WITHOUT TEXT



Home  
E-Mail



## Badge - Pioneer Level - Knots and Lashings

[Reef Knot](#)

[Sheet Bend](#)

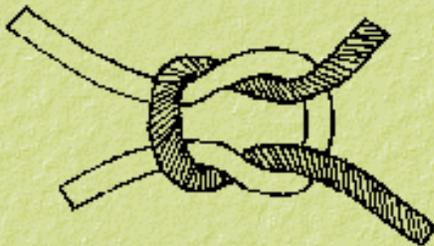
[Clove Hitch](#)

[Rolling Hitch](#)

[Square Lashing](#)

[Round Lashing](#)

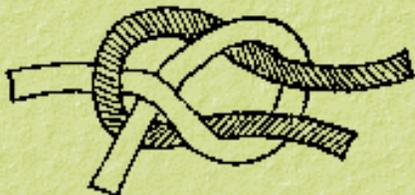
### 1. Reef Knot



Used to join the two ends of the same rope or bandage. ("Right over left - left over right")



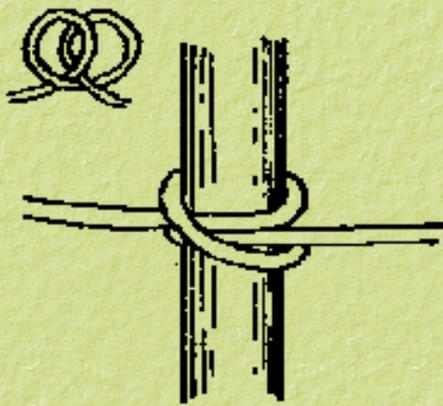
### 2. Sheet Bend



The Sheetbend is a knot that you use to tie two ropes together. Good both for thick and thin ropes. Easy to untie. It gets its name from the rope attached to the corner of a sail. This rope is called the sheet.



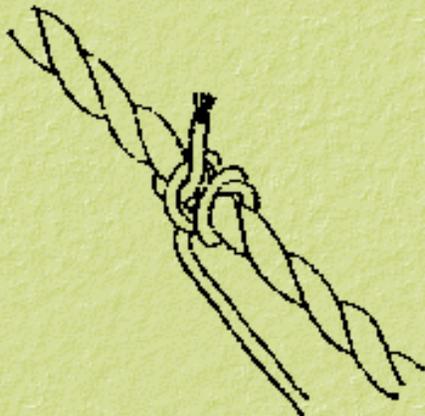
### 3. Clove Hitch



The nearest there is to a general utility hitch. It is easy to tie in a number of different ways and to untie.



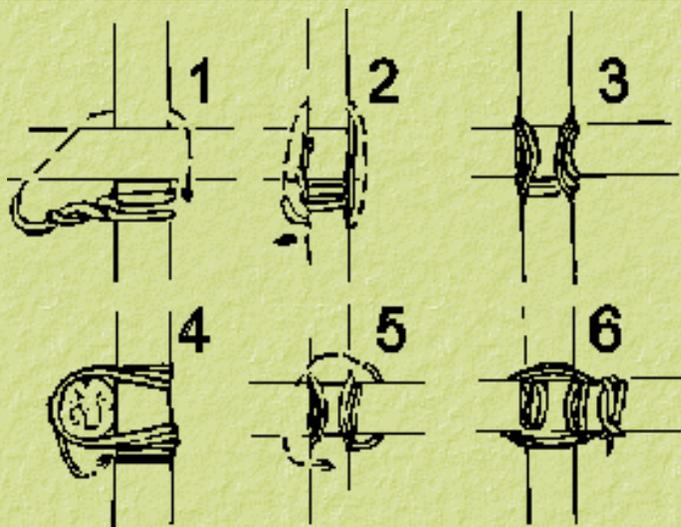
#### 4. Rolling Hitch



The rolling hitch allows you to slide the knot up and down the running part of the rope. It can be used on tent ropes, as a strainer for a bridge, in fact anywhere you want to be able to loosen or tighten a rope quickly.



#### 5. Square Lashing



Used to fasten two spars or poles together

Begin with a clove hitch round the upright and tuck the end in neatly. Pull the clove hitch very tight, and take the long end over the crossbar, round the back of the upright, and over the crossbar again. Follow the same course, being careful to lay each cord alongside the one before and to pull tight all the time, until you have been round each part three times. Then take two or three frapping turns behind the crossbar and in front of the upright. Finish off with a clove hitch, pulled very tight, round the crossbar.



## 6. Round Lashing



Used to lash two poles together (constructing a flagpole)

1. Tie a clove hitch round the bottom pole
2. Wind the rope around both six or seven times
3. Finish with two half hitches round both poles.
4. The lashing can be tightened by driving a small wooden peg between the poles

---

[Home](#) | [Sections](#) | [Local Branches](#) | [Events](#) | [Resources](#) | [Miscellaneous](#) | [What's New](#) | [Search](#)

---

[WebSpace Donated Courtesy of ARCON Web Services](#)

# Clove Hitch



- Use to attach a rope to a pole, this knot provide a quick and secure result. It rarely jams, and can in fact suffer from the hitch unrolling under tension if the pole can turn. Often used to start and finish lashings.
- With practice, this can be easily tied with one hand - especially useful for sailors!
- Tip. If you are in a situation where the clove hitch may unroll, add a couple of half hitches with the running end to the standing end of the knot, turning it into a "Clove Hitch and Two Half Hitches"!
- Tip. When pioneering, use the [Round turn and two half hitches](#) to start and finish your lashings instead of the Clove Hitch. It won't unroll, and is easier to finish tying off. It just does not look so neat!

[Return to Knot Menu](#)



*Copyright (C) Dick Ruck 1997*

[Ovingdean Saltdean Rottingdean Telscombe Cliffs Peacehaven Newhaven PC Computer Repair, Training and Virus Help](#)



- CRAWFORD
- LEHIGH
- STOREHORSE
- LESLIE-LOCKE
- M&K
- ULTRA-HOLD

## ROPE FACTS

- CLOSE OUT OFFERS
- WHAT'S NEW
- PRODUCTS
- RETAILER LOCATOR
- HOW-TO PROJECTS
- ABOUT THE LEHIGH GROUP
- RETAILERS ONLY & IMAGE BANK
- BECOME A RETAILER
- LINKS
- CONTACT US
- CONSUMER CENTER
- EMPLOYEE ACCESS

Search Product Catalog  
by keyword or product #

Join our e-mail list and get the information on new products, how-to tips and link to new features on our website.

Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Email: \_\_\_\_\_

### Related Information:

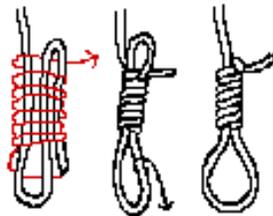
Which is the best rope for the job? See [rope properties](#).

What is the safe working load of my rope? See [safe working loads](#).

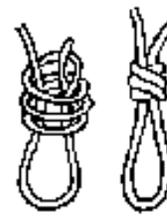
Can the elements affect my rope? See [proper use and care of rope](#).

How do I splice rope? See [rope splicing techniques](#).

### THREE USEFUL AND POPULAR MARINE KNOTS



Hangman's Knot



Scaffold Knot



Gallows Knot



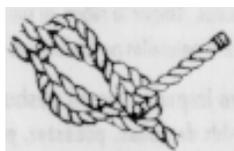
#### Fisherman's Bend

An important knot because of its strength and simplicity, and becomes more secure when end is seized as shown.



#### Surgeon's Knot

This knot is usually tied with twine. The Surgeon's Knot is a modified form of the reef knot, and the extra turn taken in the first tie prevents slipping before the knot is completed.



#### Sheet Bend

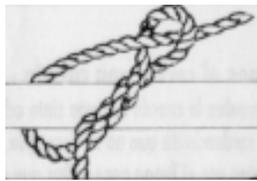
Also known as Weaver's Knot, and is used aboard ships for joining small or medium sized ropes.

The Lehigh Group  
2834 Schoeneck Rd

Macungie, PA 180  
Tel: (610) 966-97  
Fax: (610) 966-32

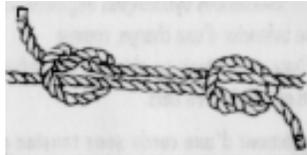
**Leslie-Locke**  
675 W. Manville St  
Compton, CA 902  
Tel: (800) 755-95  
Fax: (310) 638-18

**In Canada:**  
Royal Internation  
Corporation  
Montreal, QC H4T  
Tel: (514) 735-45



#### **Timber Hitch**

This knot is very useful for hoisting and toelines, and holds well without slipping or jamming.



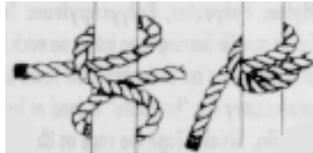
#### **Fisherman's Knot**

The Fisherman's Knot is probably the strongest known method of joining fine lines, such as fishing lines.



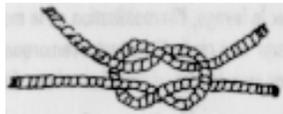
#### **Figure-Eight Knot**

This knot is used at the end of a rope to temporarily prevent the strands from unlaying.



#### **Clove Hitch**

Also known as Builder's Hitch because of its wide use by builders in fastening staging to upright posts.



#### **Reef Knot (or Square Knot)**

If tied with two ends of unequal size, or if one end is stiffer or more slippery than the other, it is bound to spill. Under no circumstances should it be used as a bend. (A bend is tying two ropes together.) There have probably been more lives lost as a result of using a SQUARE KNOT as a bend.

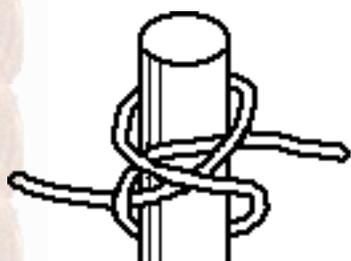
[HOME](#) | [CLOSE OUT OFFERS](#) | [WHAT'S NEW](#) | [PRODUCTS](#) | [RETAILER LOCATOR](#)  
[HOW-TO PROJECTS](#) | [ABOUT THE LEHIGH GROUP](#) | [RETAILERS ONLY](#)  
[BECOME A RETAILER](#) | [LINKS](#) | [CONTACT US](#) | [CONSUMER CENTER](#)  
[EMPLOYEE ACCESS](#)

### **ADDITIONAL MARINE KNOTS:**

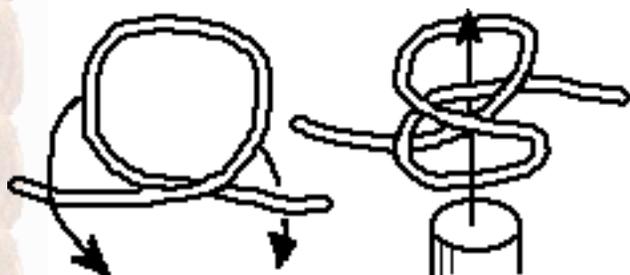
[Back To](#)[the Hitches](#)[Standard copyrights and disclaimer.](#)[Back To](#)[Ropers Knot Page](#)

# The Constrictor Knot Family ( )

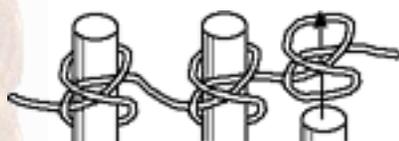
## The Constrictor Hitch



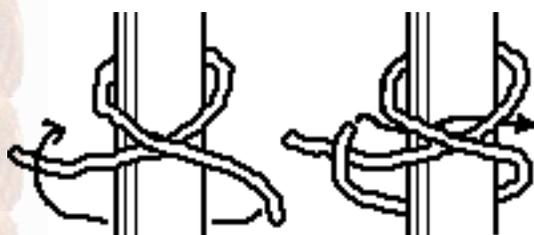
The constrictor knot is important as temporary whipping and as permanent binding from which you need more than one in a row, but not in line (when you should use the strangle knot). Laid well, it is virtually impossible to untie without tools (needle or knife). Never use it if you need to untie it. It is almost the strongest among the 'simple' hitches. Only the double constrictor is stronger. Because the constrictor may be tied in a bight, it is often preferred over the strangle knot.



Lied in the bight, it is possible to use the constrictor virtually everywhere where a permanent hitch is needed. In fact, it is my favorite permanent hitch.



One of the best applications for this knot is the temporary whipping of ropestrands during marlinspiking. With one yarn, you can easily whip more than one strand at the time. Once tied, you pull them firmly all at once.



When you cannot place the knot around the object after the knot is formed, you have to tie it round the object. This may be difficult if you did not leave enough room to put the end through.



For tying a fence rope, you can tie the constrictor in this interesting way. It allows working it up to

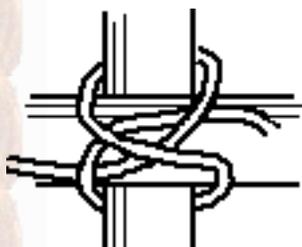


one end while you maintain a limited force on the other end. So, you easily make a straight rope fence (As long as your posts stand firm)

[The Constrictor Knot on the WEB.](#)

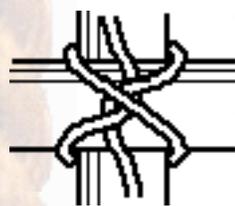
## The Transom Knot

### The Transom Knot (Constrictor)



Tied this way the [constrictor](#) is an excellent cross knot, called the Transom Knot. (I used it for my kite when I was a kid). If you want to secure it, use two closely laid overhand knots in both ends, or simply use a good kit or glue. An extra knot above this knot does not have much effect. If more strength is required, tie another Transom Knot on the back.

### The Transom Knot (Marlin)

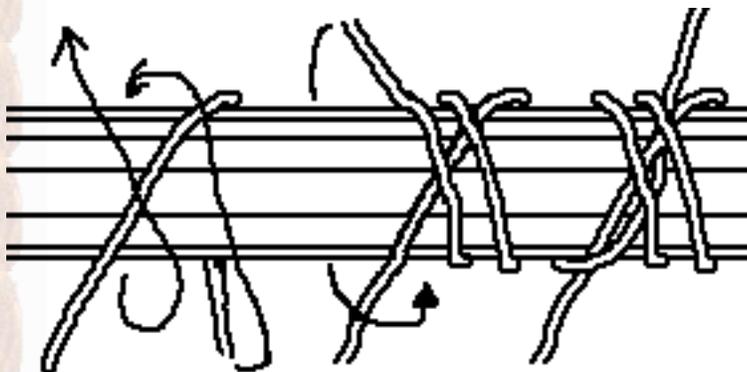


Tied this way the [Marline Hitch](#) is an even better cross-knot as the previous version of the Transom. It is not possible for the half-knot to work itself between both rods where it is not held by the overlaying rope. Therefore, it is a better cross knot than the constrictor-version of the Transom. (Thanks for the comment! I wish I knew this as a kid. On the other hand I did not have any trouble with the constrictor

version. But I agree this is better.)

[The Transom Knot on the WEB.](#)

## The Double Constrictor



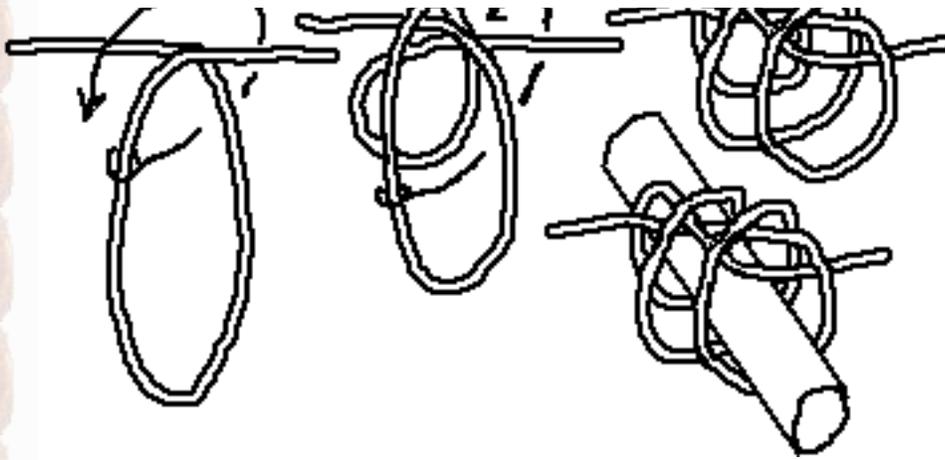
often made from "slippery" materials.

This is the strongest and most secure simple hitch. If the single constrictor does slip (on very slippery material) you can try this knot. If you make more turns round the enclosed half knot or if you twine the half knot one wrap extra it makes the total result weaker. That is probably because it makes it impossible to pull the knot as tight as this one. I always use the double constrictor to "strangle" tubes tight on a pipes. Tubes are

### The Double Constrictor tied in the bight.



If the end of the object which



you want to lay the double constrictor on is free, it is best to tie the knot in the bight. If you master this technique it is much faster. Practice and check yourself after the first turn. If that resulted in the single constrictor instead of the clove hitch you started the wrong way.

Any comment, suggestions, anything mail me:  [qqqq](mailto:qqqq@realknots.com)  
*at realknots.com with subject "question"*

All mail without thr right subject is flussed unred.  
automaticly.

I am sorry I had to remove the mail link. The mailgrabbers and spammers won. But.... I have a few hidden mail address for them to mail to each other after they grabbed it.



Because this is an non-comercial site I can and will not allow junk mail nor spam. Therefore commercial, non-personal and bulkmail will be charged with handling costs of \$100 per mail.

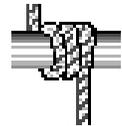
[Back To](#)



[Ropers Knot Page](#)

[Standard copyrights and disclaimer.](#)

[Back To](#)



[the Hitches](#)



Home

ARCHIVE

ROPE WORKS ©1996 Gerald L. Findley, all rights reserved

## KNOTBOARD OF THE MONTH

Each month there will be new knotboard and descriptive text displayed on this page.

THIS MONTH'S IS THE :

### CONSTRUCTOR KNOT:

#### Description ----

A clove hitch with a half knot under the cross-point.

#### Use ----

To tie a smaller rope to a larger one, or to tie a rope to a stake or pole; a substitute for whipping; as a lashing for light construction ; as a hose clamp.

#### Comments ----

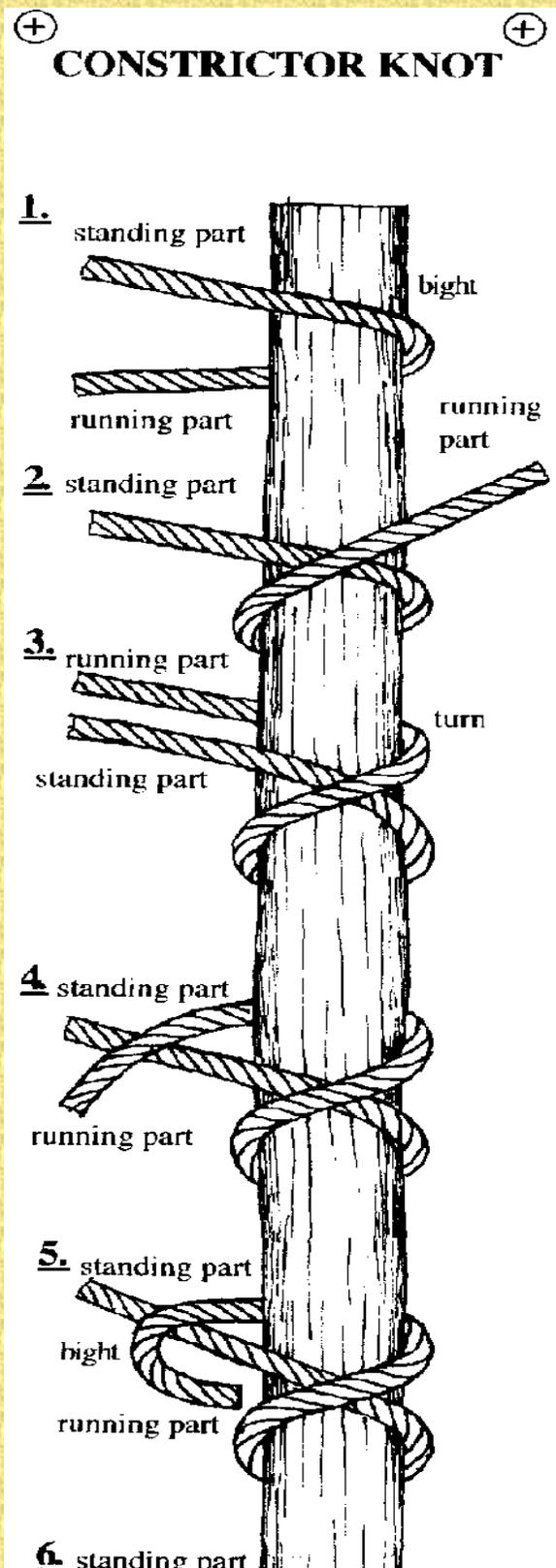
A secure nonslip knot ; difficult to untie without cutting.

#### [NOTE]

Use this method of tying the constrictor knot on either side of where you intend to cut a rope. This is a fast and easy way to prevent a rope from unlaying when it is cut.

#### Narration ----- (For Constrictor Knot knotboard.)

((1) take a bight around an pole. (2) Continue wrapping the running part around the pole so that the running part crosses over the standing part. (3)



Complete the turn around the pole. (4) Cross the running part over the standing part so that (5) a bight is formed around the standing part. (6) Reeve the running part under the cross part of the loop in the standing part to form a half knot under the cross-point. (7) Pull the standing tight. (8) Lock the knot tight by pulling hard on both the standing part and the running part.

## ANIMATED KNOT



# BOATSWAIN'S WHISTLE KNOT

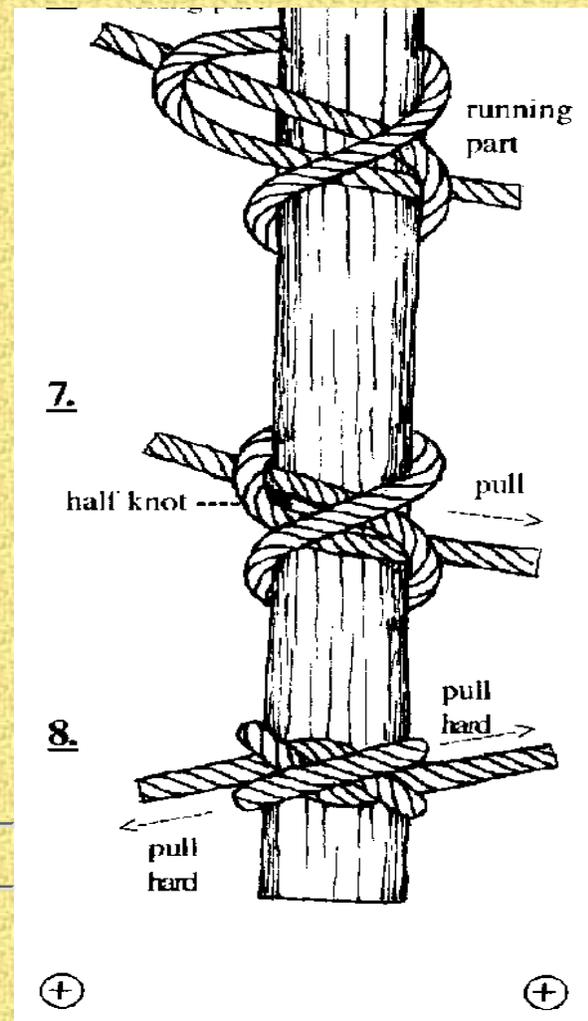
---

---

## KNOTBOARD OF THE MONTH

## ARCHIVE

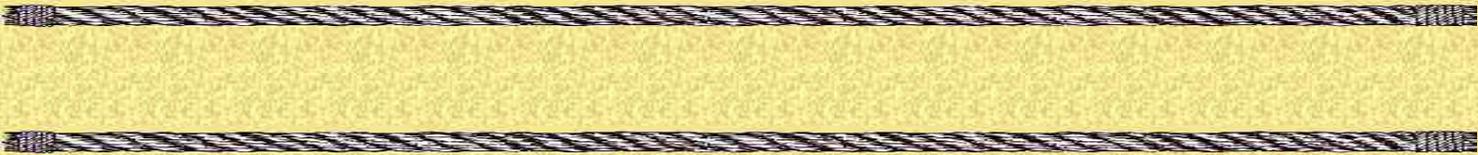
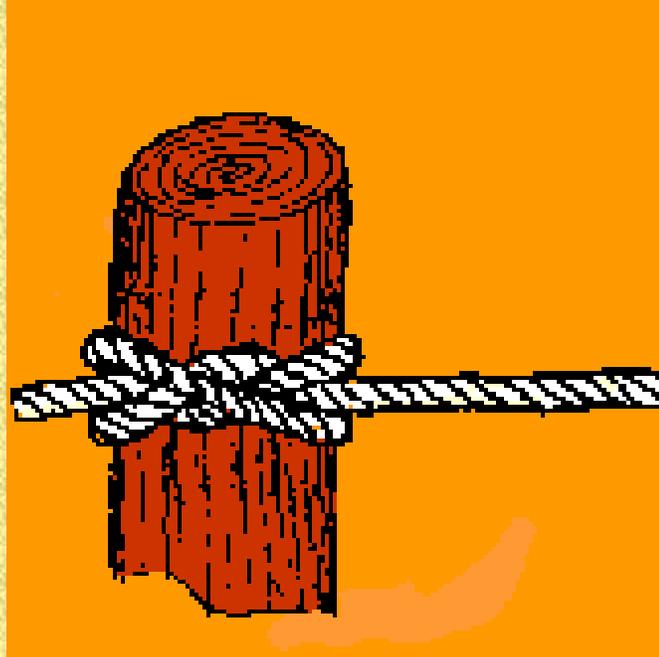
---



Home  
E-Mail

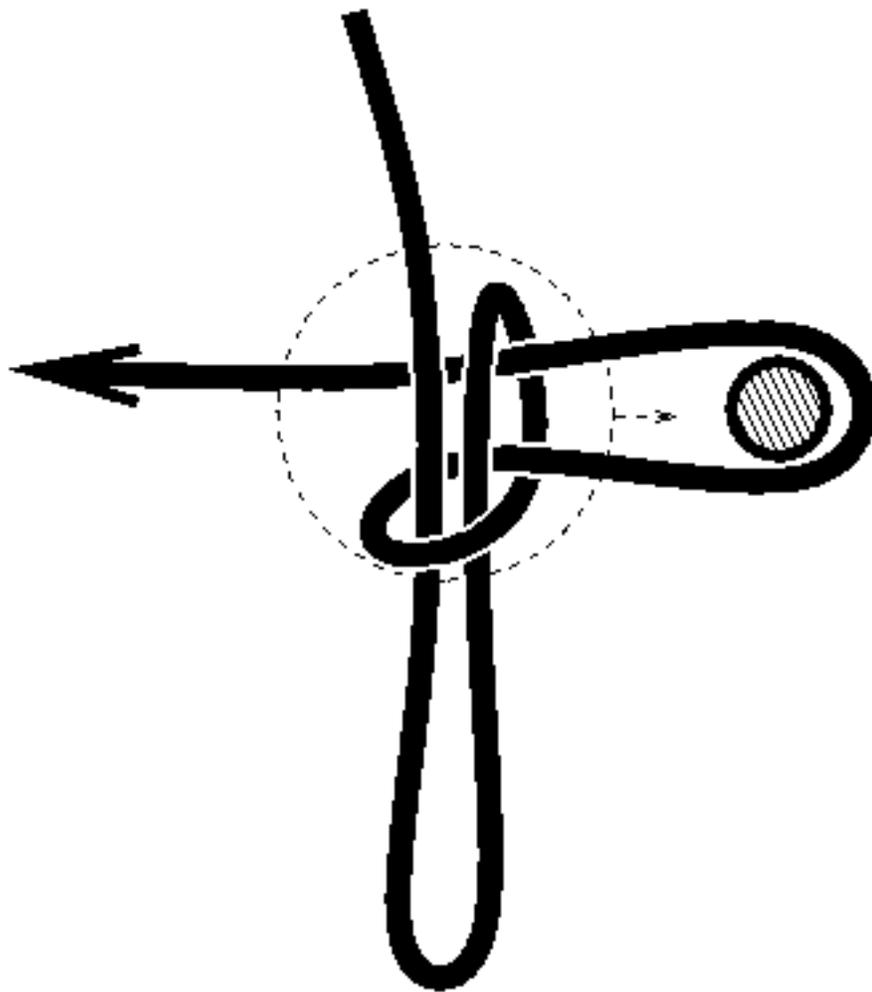
# CONSTRICTOR KNOT

## RERUN ANIMATION



Home  
E-Mail

# Csónak~



Gyorsan oldható csomó. Pl. csónak ideiglenes kikötésére gyűrűhöz. Először meg kell húzni a bekarikázott részt, aztán ütközésig eltolni a száron a nyíl irányába. Oldáshoz egyszerűen a szabad véget kell megrántani.

[<< Yosemite bowlin](#) | [#eleje](#) | [index](#) | [levél](#) | [Véghurok1](#) >>

Utolsó módosítás: 2002.09.26 23:41:34 CEST

[Standard copyrights and disclaimer.](#)[Back To](#)[The Bends](#)

# The Fishermans Bend Family

[Back To](#)[Ropers Knot Page](#)

The "Fishermans bend" is a bend. There is a page on [bends](#).



## The True Lovers or Fishermans's Knot



The True Lovers, or Fisherman's Knot may be laid in two different ways. Which of both the is the stronger, I do not know.

With two equal [overhandknots](#) it is symmetrical. This is probably the most used variant.



With two different overhand knots you get the most beautiful version (always work it up neatly!)

Only ... The double eight is stronger, easier to untie after use and as decorative from all sides as the true lovers at best.

## Related knots

### Double Fisherman's Knot



This is the double-stopper knot with the [Double Overhandknot](#) as a base. In fact you tie two [strangle knots](#) round the standing parts of both ropes. It is best to tie two counter-image strangle knots. With equal knots

it is far more difficult to fit them close to eachother.

This knot is used by climbers to tie two ropes together. It is strong and releyable, but difficult to untie where this knot ends up in the middle of a climbing rope (and it will if you used it to tie two ropes together!) it is wise to tie a fixed loop in the loose end of the falling part as a security by passing the knot.



## Double Fisherman's Knot



This is for me the universal 'double-stopper-bend'. It is strong, beautiful, it does not jam, so what do you want more... It is the bend-variant of the [flemish Eight](#)

Any comment, suggestions, anything mail me:  *qqqq*  
at *realknots.com* with subject "*question*"

All mail without the right subject is flussed unread.  
automaticly.

I am sorry I had to remove the mail link. The mailgrabbers  
and spammers won. But.... I have a few hidden mail address  
for them to mail to each other after they grabbed it.



Because this is a non-commercial site I can and will not allow junk mail nor spam. Therefore commercial, non-personal and bulkmail will be charged with handling costs of \$100 per mail.

[Back To](#)



[Ropers Knot Page](#)

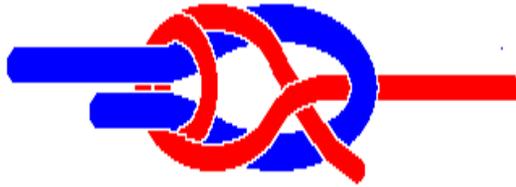
[Standard copyrights and disclaimer.](#)

[Back To](#)



[The Bends](#)

# Double Sheet Bend



- The Double Sheetbend is a more secure form of the [Sheetbend](#).
- The thicker rope of the two is used to form a bight, and the thinner rope is passed up through the bight, around the back of the bight, around again before tucking under itself.
- Tip. It is particularly useful when the thickness of the two ropes varies considerably, or when a more secure Sheetbend is required.

[Return to Knot Menu](#)



*Copyright (C) Dick Ruck 1997*

[Ovingdean Saltdean Rottingdean Telscombe Cliffs Peacehaven Newhaven PC Computer Repair, Training and Virus Help](#)



Gerald L. Findley, all rights reserved

## Splicing

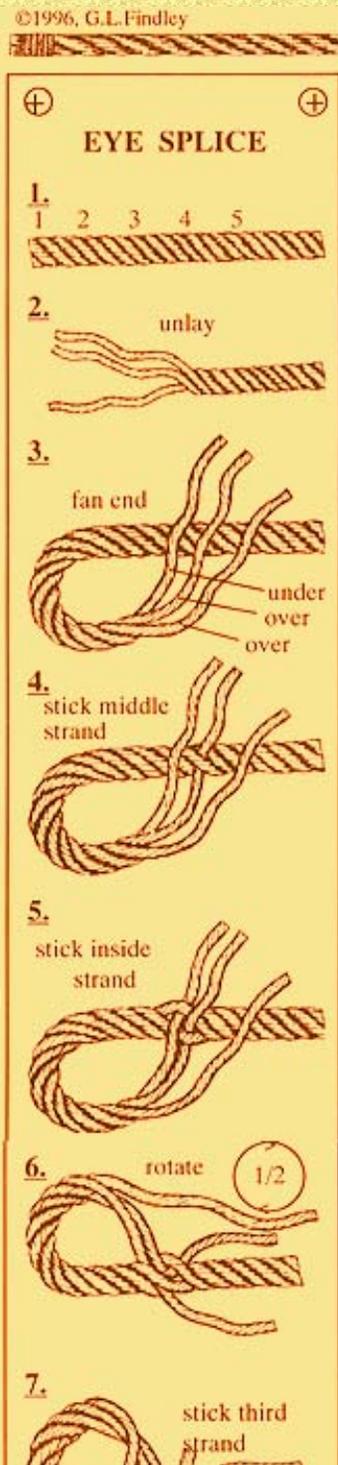
Splicing is used to join ropes together by interweaving the strands of the rope. Splicing is the safest way to fasten two ropes together or to form a loop. Knots could also be used to do these jobs but knots weaken the rope by as much as 30 to 55 percent of the original strength of the rope. However, with a splice the rope is 85 to 90 percent as strong as the original rope. Splicing should be used whenever there is a concern about safety or when the loop or joint is going to be left in the rope.

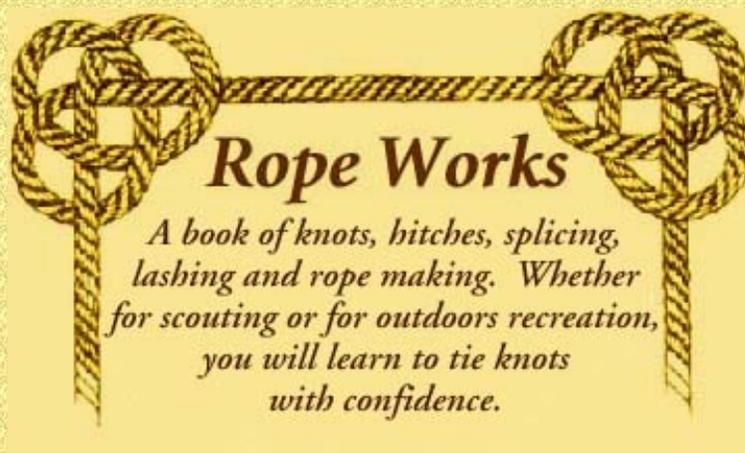
[NOTE] After a splice is started or after each round of tucks, fold the strands back over the work. You will notice that there is one strand going in and one strand coming out between each of the strands of the standing end. If this configuration does not exist you have made a mistake; trace the strands back and correct the mistake or pull strands out and start over.

The following topics about splicing are covered in :

# ROPE WORKS

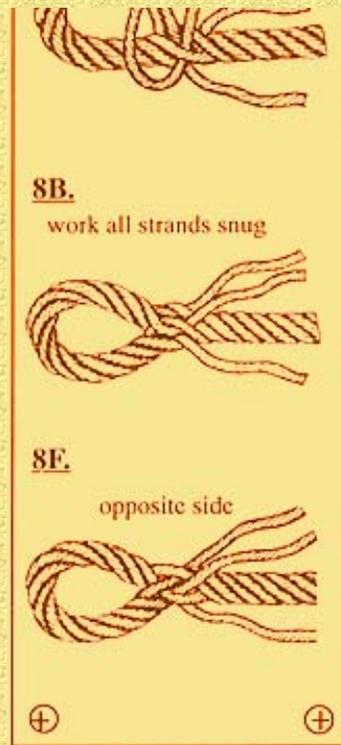
Crown Knot  
Back Splice  
Eye Splice  
Short Splice  
Adding A Round Of Tucks  
Ending A Splice





Order a copy of RopeWorks now !

[←](#) [Home](#) [→](#)  
[GUESTBOOK](#)  
[E-Mail](#)



---

## Splicing



[Home](#) [Sections](#) [Local Branches](#) [Events](#) [Resources](#) [Miscellaneous](#) [Whats's New](#) [Search](#)

Campcraft

## Badge - Adventurer Level - Knots and Lashings

[Fishermans Knot](#)

[Manharness Knot](#)

[Hunters Bend](#)

[Back Splice](#)

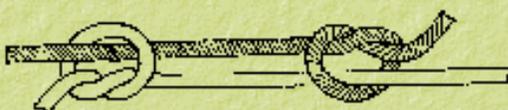
[Eye Splice](#)

[Japanese Square Lashing](#)

[Filipino Lashing](#)

[Prussic Knot](#)

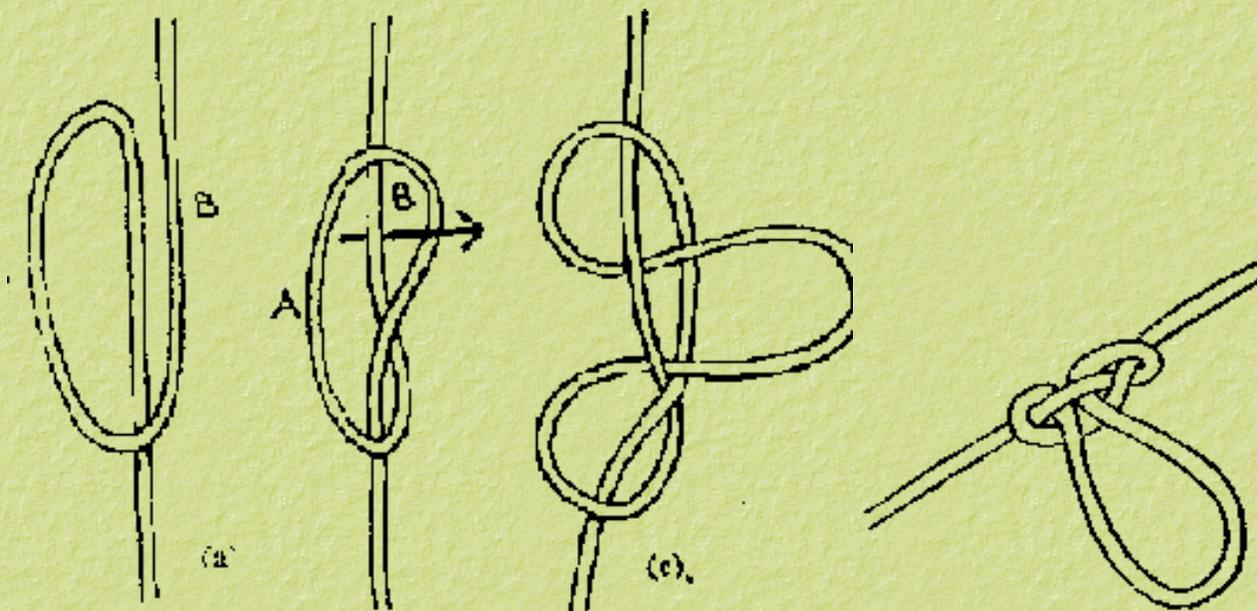
### 1. Fishermans Knot



For stiff ropes and cords use the Fisherman's Knot. Easy to make, difficult to untie, so don't use it on a good rope, especially if there is a lot of strain on it.



### 2. Manharness Knot

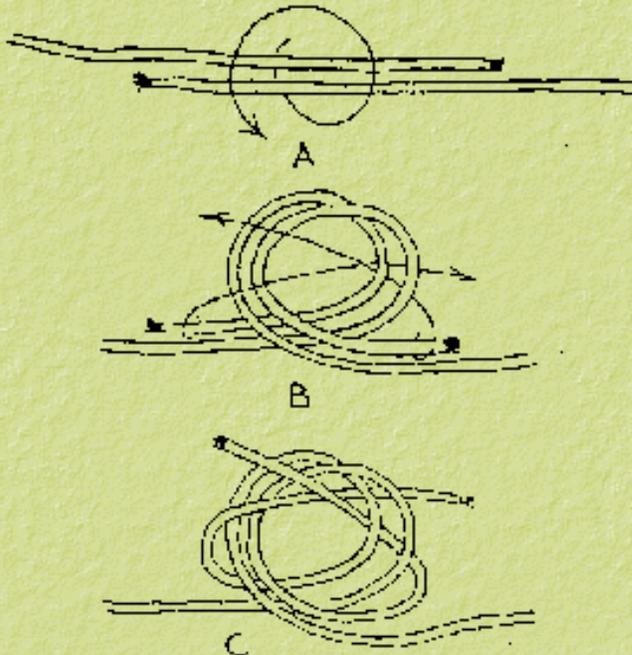


Also called the Artillery Knot and Diagonal Figure of Eight. A loop knot tied in the bight through which an arm can be put up to the shoulder to assist in hauling, while leaving the hands free.

Formerly used on gun carriages, one end of the rope being fastened to a ring on the end of the axle. Good for tying a 2nd boat/raft into the painter of a boat already tied to the only decent point on shore.



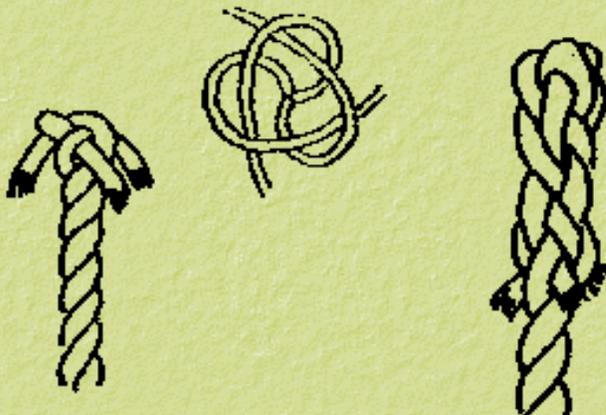
### 3. Hunters Bend



**History:** The Hunter's Bend used to be known as the Rigger's Knot. When it appeared on the front page of the The London Times in 1978 it was credited to Dr Edward Hunter. This led to much publicity for a knot and also to the foundation of the International Guild of Knot Tyers



### 4. Back Splice



A simple and effective method of finishing the end of a rope in which a crown knot is made with the strands at the end which are then spliced back into the rope.



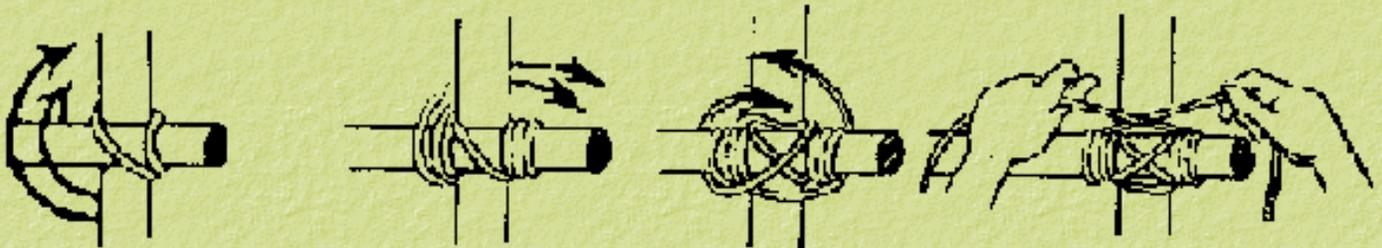
## 5. Eye Splice



A method of putting a permanent eye in the end of a rope. The strands are unbraided, a loop of suitable size formed and the three strands are spliced or worked in and out of the rope, usually under and over. Three "tucks" are normally taken.



## 6. Japanese Square Lashing

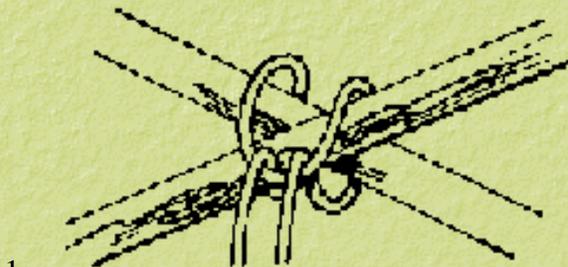


A lashing used in lightweight construction work.

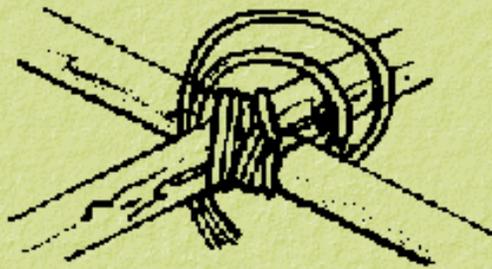


## 6. Filipino Diagonal Lashing

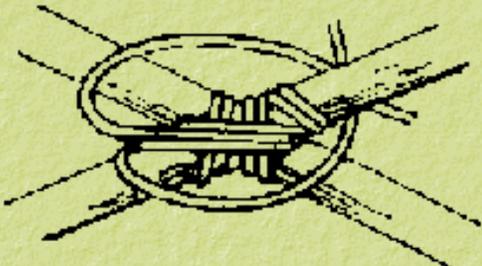
A lashing used in lightweight construction work.



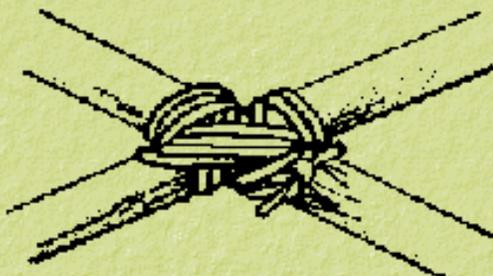
1. Start with the middle of the rope, tucking the running ends through the middle "loop" after going round both spars. Use the "loop" to pull the spars together.



2. Now proceed as for a diagonal lashing taking the running end round both spars, keeping both ends together.



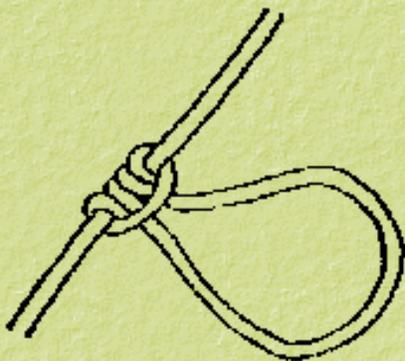
3. Separate the ends and take frapping turns between the spars, pulling the rope tight as you do so.



4. Complete the frapping turns and finish off with a square knot.



## 7. Prussic Knot



A knot used by climbers. It is made with a strop (endless loop, either spliced or tied) round the main climbing rope. It can be loosened and slid along the rope to vary its position on the rope.

# Figure of Eight Knot

(Flemish Knot, Savoy Knot)



- A useful "Stop" knot to temporarily bulk out the end of a rope or cord, the finished knot looks like its name. It is superior to using a [Thumb Knot](#), because it does not jam so easily.
- Tip: The Figure of Eight is useful to temporarily stop the ends of a rope fraying, before it is whipped.

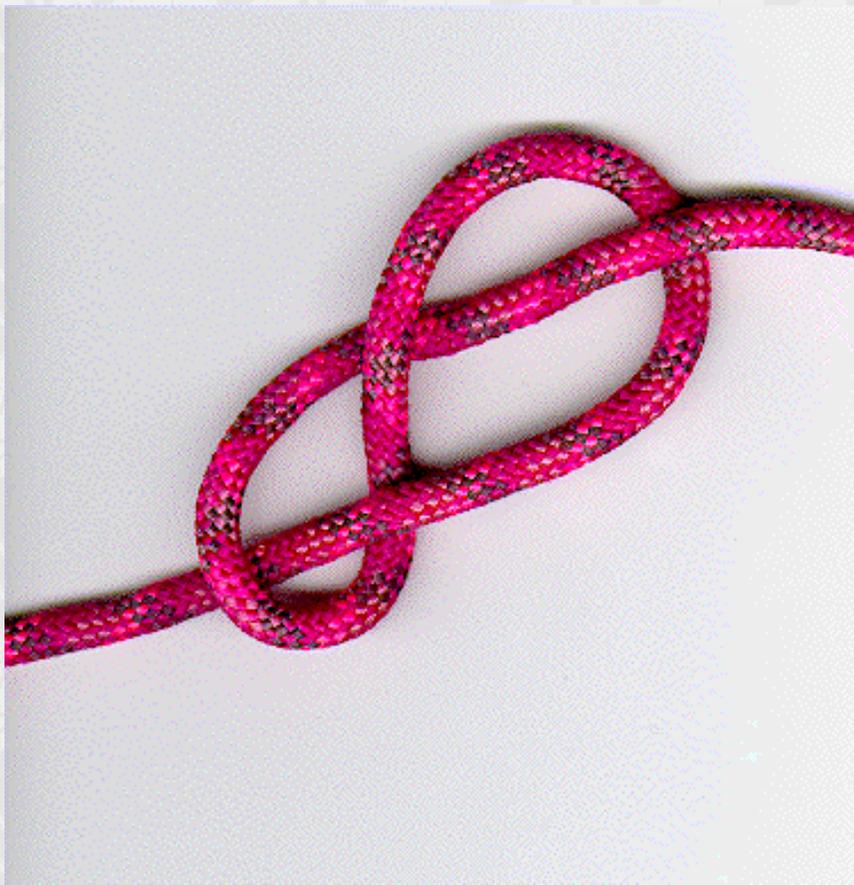
 [Return to Knot Menu](#)



*Copyright (C) Dick Ruck 1997*

[Ovingdean Saltdean Rottingdean Telscombe Cliffs Peacehaven Newhaven PC Computer Repair, Training and Virus Help](#)

# Figure Eight Knot



This knot is part of some other FTM knots we will learn and is used to tie them.

[Back to Main Knot Page](#)



## Home ARCHIVE

# KNOTBOARD OF THE MONTH

Each month there will be new knotboard and descriptive text displayed on this page.

**THIS MONTH'S IS THE :**

## FIGURE-EIGHT KNOT:

### Description ----

Interlocking overhand loops, the running part goes through the eye of one loop and the standing part goes through the eye of the other loop.

### Use ----

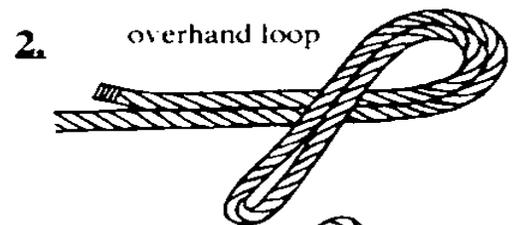
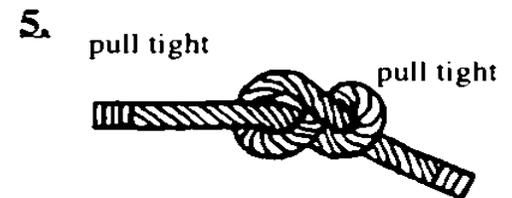
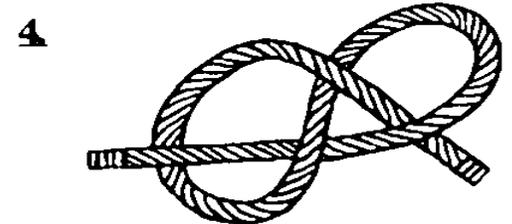
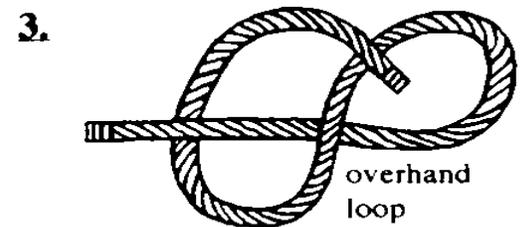
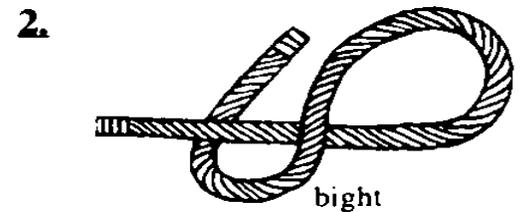
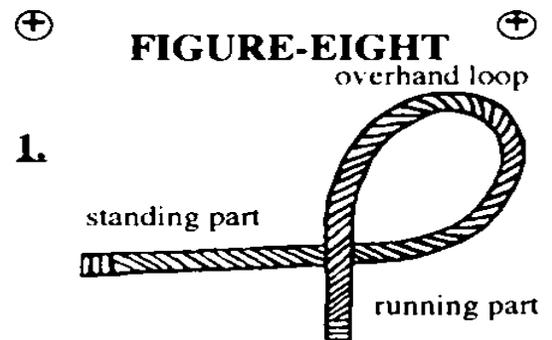
- (1) As a stopper knot; to keep a rope from unreeving from a pulley block; to prevent a rope from unlaying.
- (2) When tied on a bight, makes a reliable loop for rescue work and mountaineering.

### Comments ----

Easier to tie and untie than an overhand knot; does not damage the rope fiber or jam like an overhand knot.

### Narration ----- ( For Figure-eight Knotboard.)

- (1) Form an overhand loop. (2) Take a bight around the standing part. (3) Form the second overhand loop by bring the running part over the top edge of the first overhand loop. (4) Complete the knot by reeving the running part through the eye of the first overhand loop (5) and pull tight.



# FIGURE-EIGHT ON A BIGHT:

## Description ----

Interlocking overhand loops tied on a bight in the running part (the bight is used as the running part); the running part goes through the eye of one loop and the standing part goes through the eye of the other loop.

## Use ----

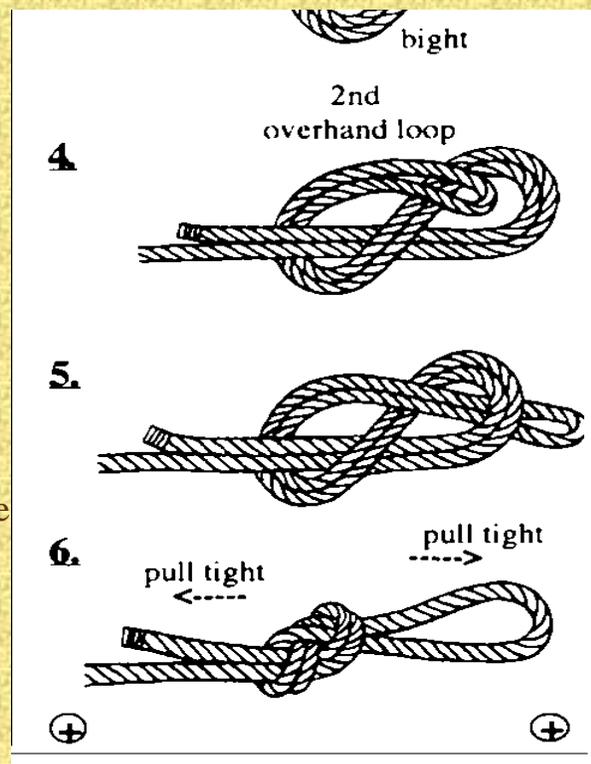
(1) Makes a reliable loop for rescue work and mountaineering. (2) As a stopper knot; to keep a rope from unreeving from a pulley block; to prevent a rope from unlaying.

## Comments ----

Easier to tie and untie than an overhand knot; does not damage the rope fiber or jam like an overhand knot on a bight.

## Narration ----- ( For Figure-eight on a Bight Knotboard.)

(1) Form a bight in the rope. [NOTE] Treat the two strands of the bight as a single strand as the rest of the knot is tied. (2) Form an overhand loop. (3) Take a bight around the standing part. (4) Form the second overhand loop by bring the running part over the top edge of the first overhand loop. (5) Complete the knot by reeving the running part through the eye of the first overhand loop (6) and pull tight.



## ANIMATED KNOT



## BELAYING TO A CLEAT

## KNOTBOARD OF THE MONTH

# ARCHIVE

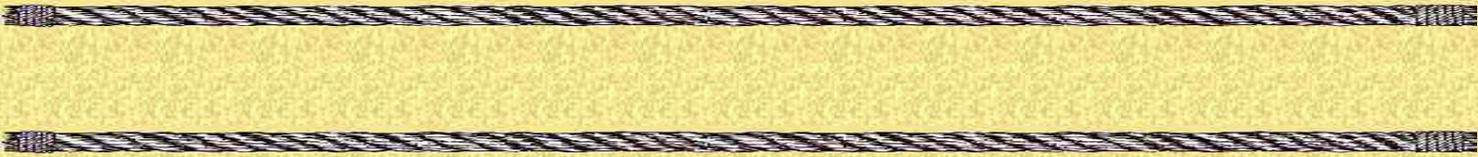
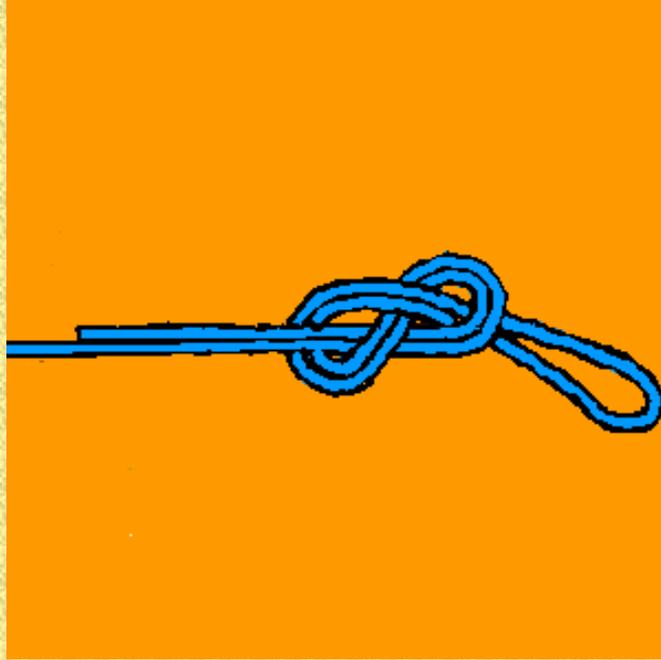
---



Home  
E-Mail

# FIGURE-EIGHT KNOT

## RERUN ANIMATION



Home  
E-Mail

# Fisherman's Knot

(Angler's knot, English knot, Englishman's bend, Halibut knot, True Lover's bend, Waterman's knot)



- The Fisherman's knot is used to tie two ropes of equal thickness together. It is used by fishermen to join fishing line, and is very effective with small diameter strings and twines.
- Tie a [Thumb knot](#), in the running end of the first rope around the second rope. Then tie a thumb knot in the second rope, around the first rope. Note the Thumb knots are tied such they lie snugly against each other when the standing ends are pulled.
- When tying knots in monofilament line, moisten the line before pulling the knot tight. This helps to stop the line heating up with friction, which weakens it.

[Return to Knot Menu](#)



*Copyright (C) Dick Ruck 1997*

[Ovingdean Saltdean Rottingdean Telscombe Cliffs Peacehaven Newhaven PC Computer Repair,  
Training and Virus Help](#)

# Chinese Knotting: The Flower Knot

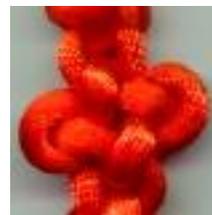
---

[ [Generalities](#) ] [ [Nomenclature](#) ] [ [Similar Knots](#) ] [ [How To](#) ] [ [Home](#) ] [ [Books](#) ] [ [Links](#) ] [ [Supplies](#) ] [ [Glossary](#) ] [ [About](#) ]

---

## Generalities

This particular knot has many names and seems to be a sequential variation from a number of different families of knots. I've chosen to give it the name of *flower knot* because I've always thought of its basic shape and ordinal variations as flowers.



## Nomenclature

[Chen 1](#): Cloverleaf Knot (3, 4), Round Brocade Knot (6)

[Korean](#): [Ginger Knot](#) (4)

[Owen](#): Butterfly Knot (3)

[Hensel](#): Dragonfly Knot (4)

[TAoCaWK](#): Double Loop Shamrock Knot (3), Shamrock Knot (4), Petal Knot (5-10), Ruyi Knot (3(1)x4)

---

## Similar Knots

- [The Treasure \(Bao or Star\) Knot](#)
- 

## How To



## General Tips

- **keep the loops that form the centre of the knot similarly oriented.** That is to say, as a general rule keep the part of the loop that leads from the already completed body of the knot aligned to the top of the knot and the part of the loop that is closer to the free working end aligned to the bottom of the knot. You can reverse this orientation if you wish, as long as you are consistent with all the loops.
- **keep the centre loops as short as will still allow you to work,** the petals will take care of themselves. Keeping the centre short and tidy will be closer to the final structure of the knot

and easier to control than if the centre loops are allowed to get long.

- you'll find that if you pull hard enough, that you can take up slack from one petal to another. **This is not recommended** because the larger the knot, the more this type of activity will deform the central structure of the knot. Also, you may find that you are tightening the knot *too much*, so that when it is time to adjust and fine tune the final structure of the knot (or take it apart because you made a mistake in design) that it is exceedingly difficult to do so.

## 4 Flower

The 4 flower is probably the most common of the flower knots, especially since it is easy to combine many of them into a single design. For this reason, [detailed instructions](#) are given for this particular flower.



## 3 Flower

The procedure to make 3 flower is exactly the same as the [4 flower](#) except that you do [step 1](#), skip step 2 and go directly to [step 3](#).



## 5 Flower

The procedure to make 5 flower can be exactly the same as the [4 flower](#) except that you add an extra loop between [step 2](#) and [step 3](#). As you can see from [this illustration](#), however, the centre is already getting quite large and loose, and if the centre doesn't hold the whole knot will fall apart. A modification that will be introduced for 6 flower can also be used for 5 flower. As always, the option is yours.



## 5 Flower with Overlap of 2

This variant of the 5 flower is made with the same centre doubling strategy as is used in making the [6 flower](#) except, of course, leaving out [step 3](#) so that you only have 5 petals.



## 6 Flower

As the flower knots get larger, the centers become larger and looser, holding together more poorly. With the 6 flower knot, we introduce the [construction variations](#) that can be used to remedy this problem.



## 7 Flower

This 7 flower is made with the same centre doubling strategy as is used in the making of the [6 flower](#).



## 8 Flower

As the [6 flower](#) is constructed with a "doubled" centre, so the 8 flower is constructed with a "[tripled](#)" centre.



## 9 Flower

This 9 flower is made with the same centre tripling strategy as is used in the making of the [8 flower](#).



## *n* Flower

As you progress [from the 4 flower through to the 8 flower](#), the pattern of how to make a flower as large as one has the patience for should become clear. Make as many loops as you want. Increase the overlapping of the centre loops as the centre becomes larger/looser than you want.

---

[CLW](#)

Creation Date: Mon Aug 3 22:40:51 PDT 1998

Last Modified: *Sunday, 29-Feb-2004 02:04:02 GMT*

Page accessed at local time: Friday, 03-Sep-2004 05:27:45 GMT

## KNOTBOARD OF THE MONTH

Each month there will be new knotboard and descriptive text displayed on this page.

**THIS MONTH'S IS THE :**

### FLOOR LASHING:

Use ----

to lash a series of poles to a set of stringers to form a flat surface such as a deck, a table top, or a road way.

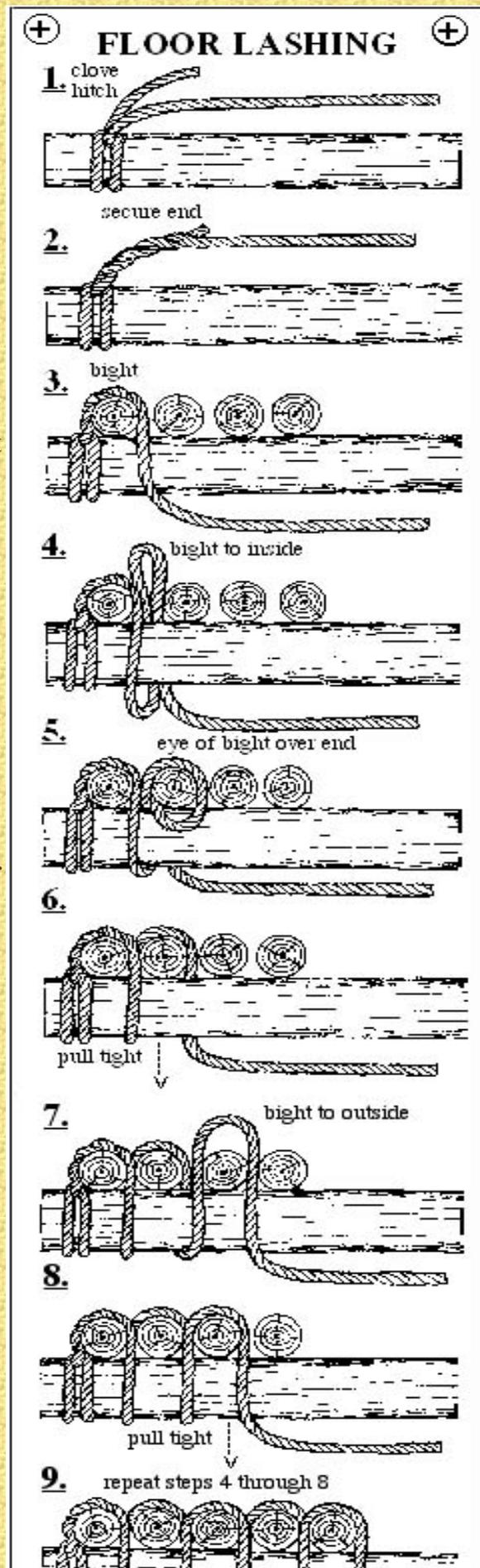
Comments ----

When using a floor lashing, both ends of the decking poles must be lashed at the same time to insure a firm even surface.

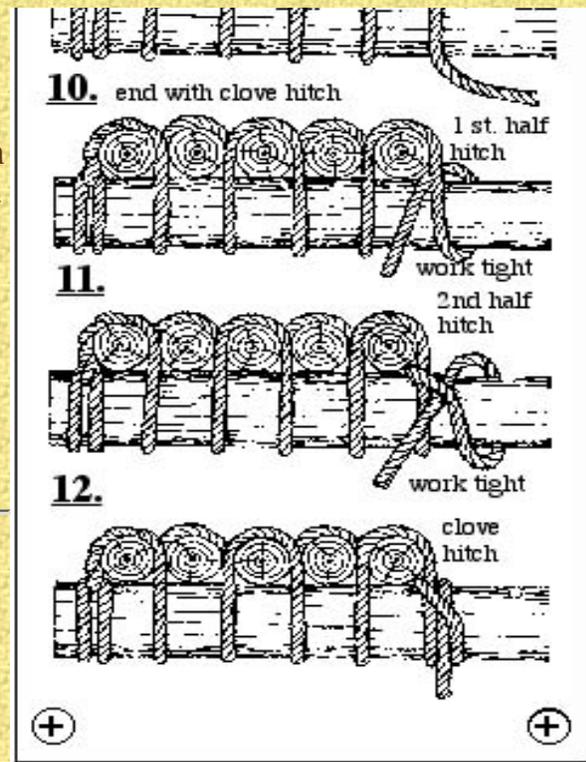
When placing the decking poles on the stringers, lay the decking poles so that their butt end are in alternating direction. Alternating the butt ends of the decking poles will compensate for the natural taper of the poles so that the length of the decking along each stringer will be equal.

Narrative ---- (For floor lashing knotboard)

(1) Tie a clove hitch around each stringer. (2) Secure the short end of the rope by wrapping it around the running end (wrap with the lay of the rope ). (3) Place the decking poles on the stringers and take a bight around the first pole. (4) Next, on the inside of the stringer, pull a bight up between the first decking pole and the next decking pole. (5) Place the eye of



the bight over the end of the decking pole. (6) Pull tight. (7) On the outside of the stringer, place a bight over the next decking pole. (8) Pull tight. (9) Repeat steps 4 through 8 until all decking poles are lashed in place. (10) Tie the first half hitch of the ending clove hitch. Work half hitch tight. (11) Tie the second half hitch of the ending clove hitch. Work half hitch tight (12) to form clove hitch.



---

## KNOTBOARD OF THE MONTH

# ARCHIVE

---



Home  
E-Mail

# Frost Knot



First place one end of webbing within a bend in the other end. NB: the different colors here are to illustrate technique, this knot is most often tied with one length of webbing.



Tie an overhand (see FTM knots) with the folded ends.



This will result in a loop with the short free end inside it.

The frost knot is used to tie an etrier (ay-tree-ay). A completed etrier is pictured below.



[Back to Main Knot Page](#)

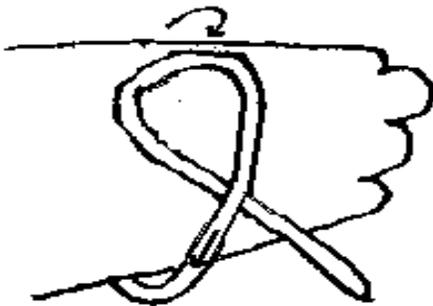
# The Friendship Knot

The knot frequently referred to as the Friendship Knot is illustrated below. This illustration is modified from The Ashley Book of Knots by Clifford W. Ashley (p. 141 # 787). It is in the category of Two Strand Lanyard Knots. It is often given as token of friendship or recognition by Scouts and Scouters to be worn from the shirt pocket button.

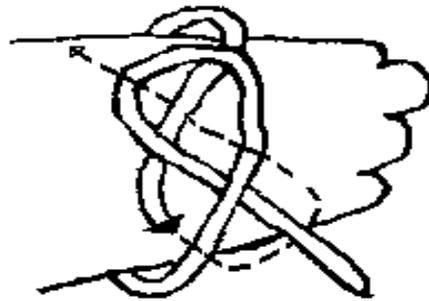
It is also known as the Sailor's Knife Lanyard Knot, Marlingspike Lanyard Knot, Single Strand Diamond Knot, Two Strand Diamond Knot, and Bosun's Whistle Knot.

The version used as a friendship knot can be tied in about 9 inches of small cord about the first two fingers of the left hand. Start with a longer piece to work out the concept using the whole hand as a tying fixture.

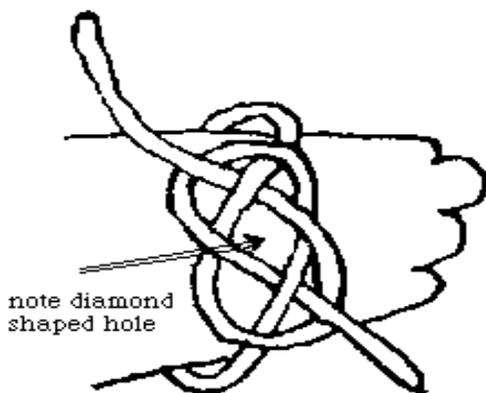
The following sequence illustrates the steps.



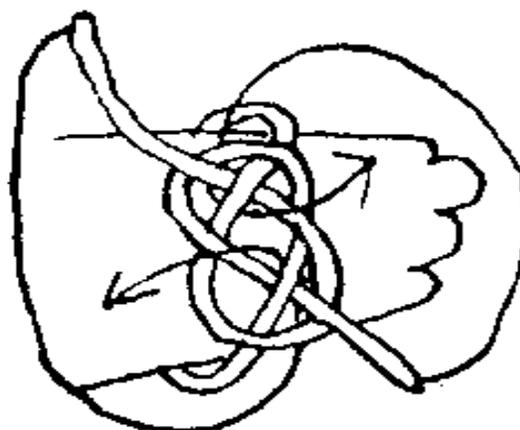
I - underhand loop in palm



II- bring end around back hand and under first loop as shown. Dash line shows next step.

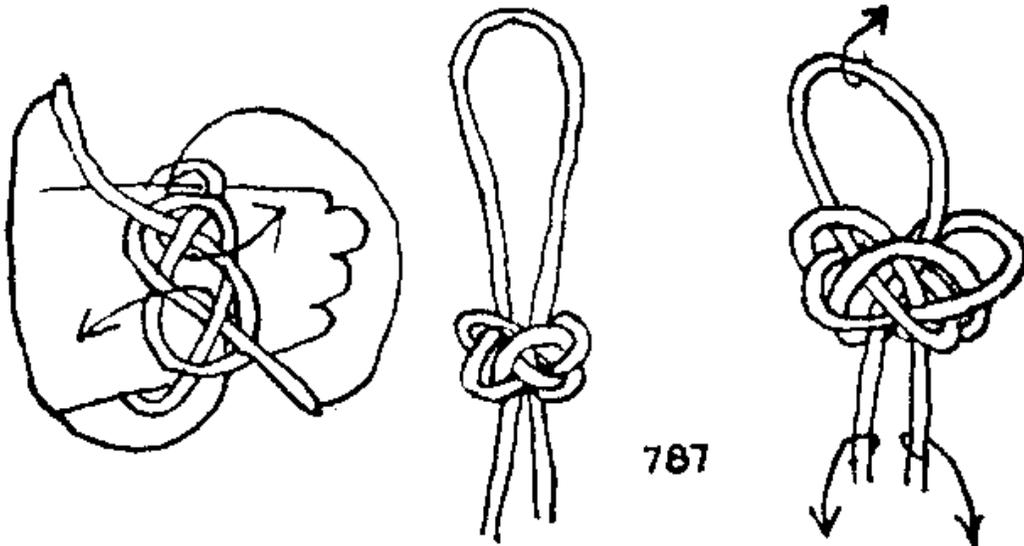


III - work end through as shown and you will have a full Carrick Bend with a diamond hole in the middle



IV- this is the trick getting the ends in the right hole ( the diamond)

After completing this sequence remove the knot from the fingers or hand and grasp the open loop left by the cord from around the fingers with one hand and using the other hand gently tighten the knot by a slight pull on the two loose ends. Slack within the knot can be worked through to improve the uniformity of the knot.



787



jk95

# Girth Hitch

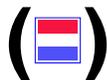


This hitch is primarily used to attach yourself to a litter during Semi-Tech.

[Back to Main Knot Page](#)

[Standard copyrights and disclaimer.](#)[Back To](#)[The Bends](#)

# The Reef Knot Family

[Back To](#)[Ropers Knot Page](#)

The reef-knot is a bend. There is a page on [bends](#).

## The Reef Knot or Square Knot General



The reef-knot is only useful in simple applications. Ashley says "it is a true Binder Knot, for which it is admirable, but under no circumstances should it be used as a bend." It is easy tied and will not jam, so it is always easy to untie. It is used to tie packages, and as a base for the shoe-bow. Sailors used it for binding rolled sails or better reefed sails. And that is where it got its English name from. Americans call it the square knot. Probably because it looks square, or because it was much used on square-rigged-ships, but that is a total guess of me.

Its relatives, the granny, the thief-knot and the what-knot all have their purposes, but not as a trustful knot.

[The reef-knot on the WEB.](#)

## Related knots

The Granny.



This knot is dangerous, and untrustful. One moment it slips the other it jams. It is best to ban it out from your habits.

[The granny on the WEB.](#)

## The Thief Knot.



The story goes sailors used this knot on their bags for they did not trust landman. If a thief closed the bag after his theft, he would close it with a reef-knot, which is detectable by the sailor.

[The thief-knot on the WEB.](#)

# The What Knot.



It is said to be used in a magic trick. Don't ask me how.  
[The what-knot on the WEB.](#)

Any comment, suggestions, anything mail me:  **qqqq**  
*at realknots.com with subject "question"*

All mail without thr right subject is flussed unred.  
automaticly.

I am sorry I had to remove the mail link. The mailgrabbers  
and spammers won. But.... I have a few hidden mail address  
for them to mail to each other after they grabbed it.



Because this is an non-comercial site I can and will not allow junk mail nor spam. Therefore comercial, non-personal and bulkmail will be charged with  
handling costs of \$100 per mail.

[Back To](#)



[Ropers Knot Page](#)

[Standard copyrights and disclaimer.](#)

[Back To](#)



[The Bends](#)

# Halász~



Hasonló kötelek végleges összekötésére való. Ui. ha jól megszorul, nagyon nehéz kibontani.

[<< Takács~](#) | [#eleje](#) | [index](#) | [levél](#) | [Toldó1~](#) >>

Utolsó módosítás: 2002.09.26 23:41:34 CEST

Siden du søgte findes ikke, klik [her](#) for at gå til IDG.dk's forside



## Home ARCHIVE

# KNOTBOARD OF THE MONTH

Each month there will be new knotboard and descriptive text displayed on this page.

**THIS MONTH'S IS THE :**

## JUG KNOT:

**Use ----**

- to provide a convenient carrying handle for jug or bottle ---- to attach a tool, such as a hammer to a security line to prevent accidental dropping --- to add a wrist loop to a walking staff --- to attach a safety line to a canoe paddle ..... use your imagination, but be sure that you keep safety in mind.

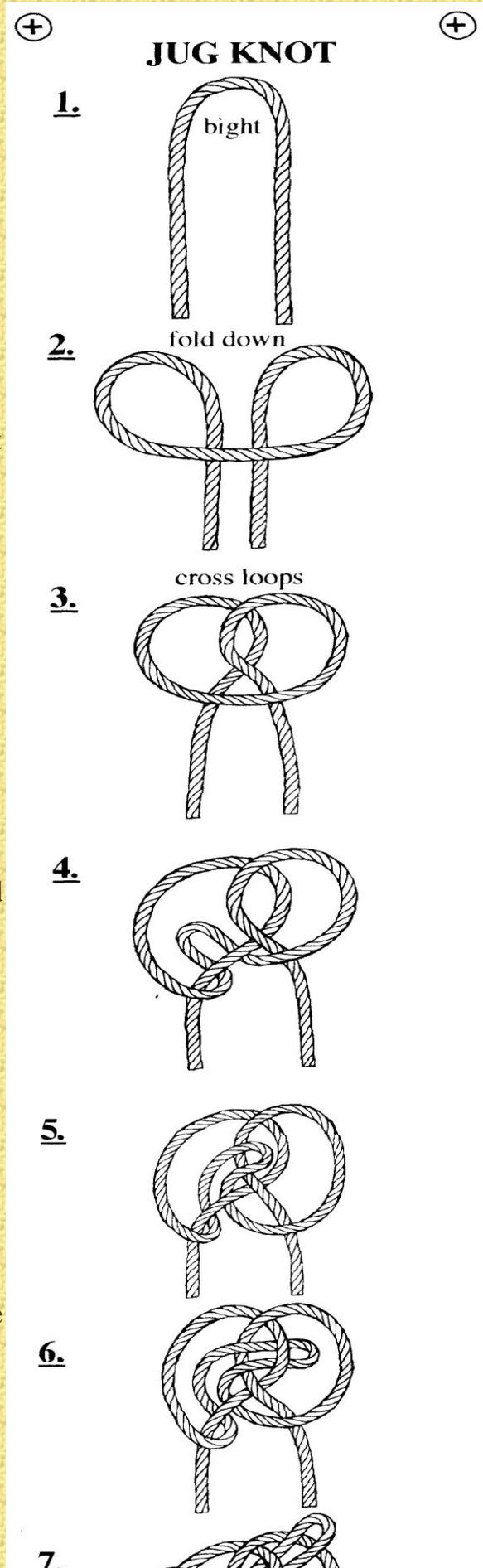
**Other Names ----**

Jar knot, moonshiner's knot, hackamore, bridle knot..

**Comments ----**

The most common use is to provide a loop handle attached to the neck of a bottle. The loop handle makes it easy to carry several bottles with one hand. If a toggle or a two strand button knot such as boatswain whistle knot is added to the free end of the rope, The loop of the jug knot can be use to toggle the bottle to a belt so that the bottle can be use as a canteen.

Plastic bottles with screw-on lids such as soda, sport drink, and mineral water bottles make strong,



lightweight containers for carrying water on hikes and camp outs. 2 and 3 liter soda bottles are large enough to use as water containers around the camp kitchen. Smaller bottles (8 to 16 oz.) can be used as personal water bottles or canteens. These bottles can be made even more convenient by using a jug knot to attach a loop handle.

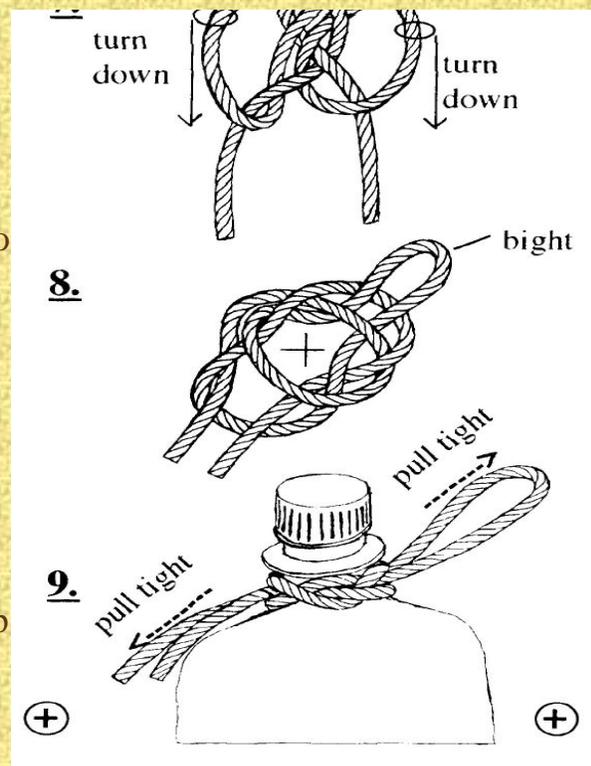
To help keep your water cool and refreshing in hot weather, place a sock over the bottle, wet the sock when you fill the bottle, evaporation will do the rest.

In cold weather, carry your water bottle under your coat. A dry sock placed over the bottle will help keep the water from freezing. In cold weather, carry your water bottle under your coat. A dry sock placed over the bottle will help keep the water from freezing.

In cold weather, carry your water bottle under your coat. A dry sock placed over the bottle will help keep the water from freezing.

#### **Narration ----- (For Jug Knot Knotboard.)**

Narrative ---- (For jug knot knotboard) (1) Form a bight in the middle of a 24 to 30 inch long by 3/16 inch diameter rope. (2) Fold the bight down over the standing ends to form two loops. (3) Place the right loop over the side of the left loop. (4) Weave the middle of the bight under the standing end; then over the left edge of the right loop; (6) next go under the right edge of the left loop; (7) finally pass the bight over the right side of the left loop. (8) Turn the tops of the original loops down over the knot. (9) Place the knot over the neck of a bottle and work the knot tight so that the bight forms a 4 to 5 inch loop handle and the loose ends are even.




---

## KNOTBOARD OF THE MONTH

# ARCHIVE

---



Home  
E-Mail

[Back To](#)



[The Bends](#)

[Standard copyrights and disclaimer.](#)

# The Sheetbend Family (🇳🇱)

[Back To](#)



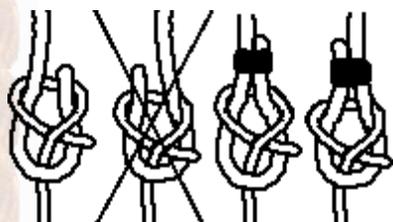
[Ropers Knot Page](#)



The sheetbend is a bend. There is a page on [bends](#).



[The Sheet Bend, general.](#)



The sheet bend is my favorite bend. Be careful. With the loose end on the wrong side you have another, weaker knot (Left-hand sheetbend). If the knot is well seized it does not matter if it is tied right or left handed

[The sheetbend on the WEB.](#)

## The Sheet Bend



This way of tying is for connecting equally sized ropes to each other. When the ends are connected you have the [Bowline Knot](#). You have to try to take the first 'steps' as one simple clockwise turn of your wrist. So practice...

## The wever\_sheetbend



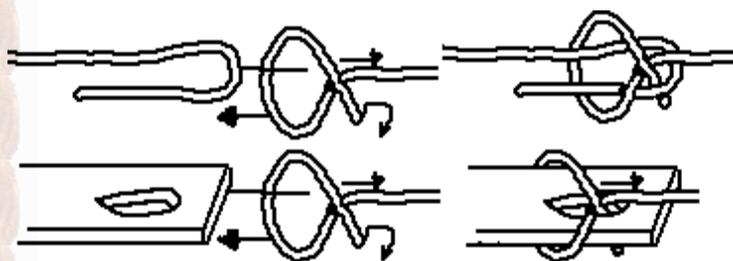
If you want to tie two thin yarns to each other you use a wever-knot. The one shown here is the same as the Sheet Bend. If the yarn is slippery use an [Overhandknot](#) on the ends before tying this knot. If this ends up into a too bulky knot you need another wever\_knot.

## Sheet Bend for a (to) short end.



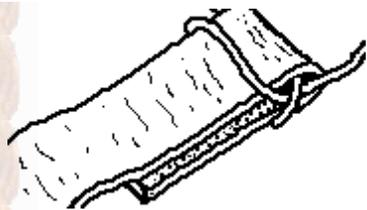
With the simplest noose you can catch an end and capsize the knot to a sheet bend. Be careful. without practicing you have a 50% change of catching it wrong. Also, (as always) working up the knot properly is important.

## The Lap-Knot

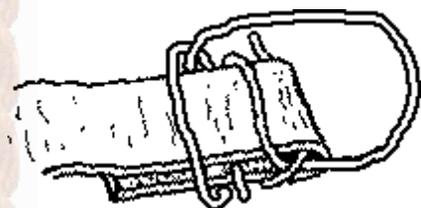


The Lap Knot sometimes is called the false sheetbend. But false knots do not exist. The Lap knot has been in use for ages by many civilisations. I use the name Lap knot because that is the name Robert Pont used in his description of this knot. He found it was used in Lapland in a lot of applications. Especially in leather, it is very suitable, just as secure as the sheetbend, but even more easy to untie. That is important, especially when your fingers are cold.

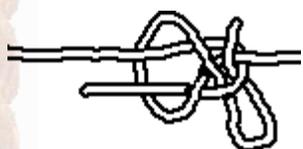
The Lap Knot is the knot to tie a rope to a strap. If the strap is hard to bend and the rope is slippery,



it is advisable to add an overhand knot at the end. Robert Pont thinks it is the best solution for this special situation. He tested it with a many heavy loads under hard conditions. Every time with the same strap, and the same rope. It did not slip a bit, in rain,sun, and snow during several months.



If the Lap Knot is the knot for tying a rope to a strap it is certainly the knot to make a rope loop at the end of a strap. With a bit of practice, you can enjoy its usefulness.



Ever needed a slipped knot which holds secure and releases instantly when pulled? tie the slipped version of the Lap-knot. You will be surprised. I saw this knot for the first time observing a man who hung sausages on a line. He knitted the line into a small noose and shifted the slipped loop over it making a slipped Lap knot. When he needed a sausage he simply grabbed an end and pulled. No scissors, no tools.



The sheetbend is a bend. There is a page on [bends](#)



Any comment, suggestions, anything mail me:  *qqqq*  
at [realknots.com](http://realknots.com) with subject "*question*"

All mail without thr right subject is flussed unred.  
automaticly.

I am sorry I had to remove the mail link. The mailgrabbers  
and spammers won. But.... I have a few hidden mail address  
for them to mail to each other after they grabbed it.



Because this is an non-comercial site I can and will not allow junk mail nor spam. Therefore comercial, non personal and bulkmail will be charged with handling costs of \$100 per mail.

[Back To](#)



[Ropers Knot Page](#)

[Standard copyrights and disclaimer.](#)

[Back To](#)



[The Bends](#)

# Lark's Head

(Cow Hitch, Lanyard Hitch)



- The Lark's Head knot is used to loosely attach a rope to a spar or ring. The knot has two redeeming features, it is easy to tie, and it does not jam. However, it will slip fairly easily along the spar, and may slip undone when tied using man made fibre ropes.
- Tip. This is a knot to be avoided when a secure attachment is required. The [Round turn and two half hitches](#), and the [Clove hitch](#) are far more secure.

 [Return to Knot Menu](#)



*Copyright (C) Dick Ruck 1997*

[Ovingdean Saltdean Rottingdean Telscombe Cliffs Peacehaven Newhaven PC Computer Repair, Training and Virus Help](#)



## Home ARCHIVE

# KNOTBOARD OF THE MONTH

Each month there will be new knotboard and descriptive text displayed on this page.

**THIS MONTH'S IS THE :**

## MASTHEAD KNOT:

### Description ----

A multiple loop knot formed by reeving the loosely made loops of two over hand knots through each other and then securing the knot to a mast (pole).

### Use ----

On board ship, a masthead knot was used to rig a temporary mast if the mast was lost in battle or during a storm. On land a masthead knot can be used to rig a gin pole or a flag pole.

### Comments ----

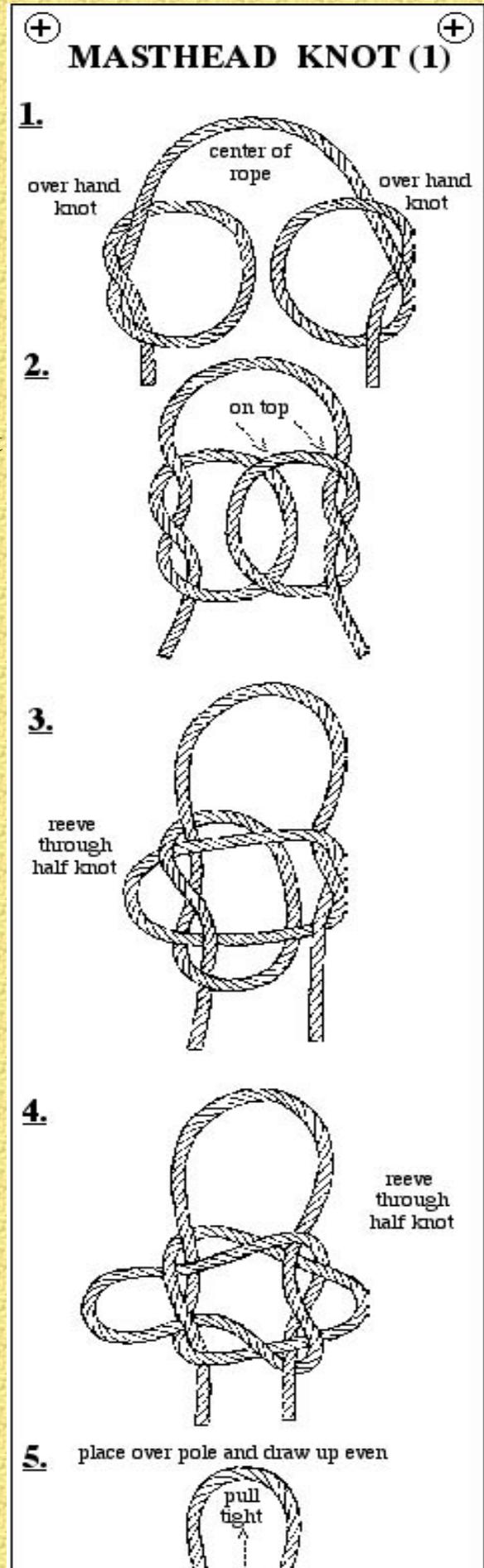
There are several forms of the Masthead Knot. This form of the Masthead Knot was chosen for its symmetry and the ease of transition to the running half hitches used to secure it to the pole.

### Other Names ----

Jury mast knot, pitcher knot.

### Narrative ---- (For masthead knot knotboard.)

(1) Loosely tie two over hand knots. (2) Place the loop of one overhand knot on top of the loop of the loop of the other over hand knot. (3&4) Reeve the



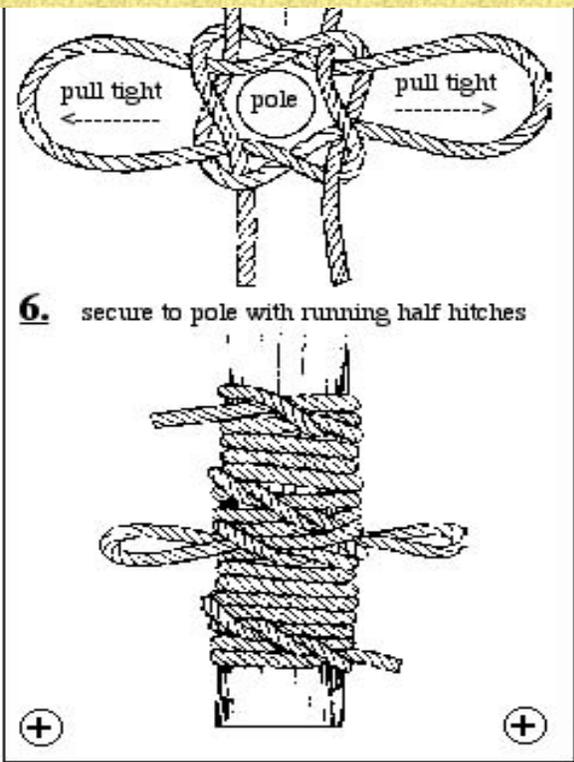
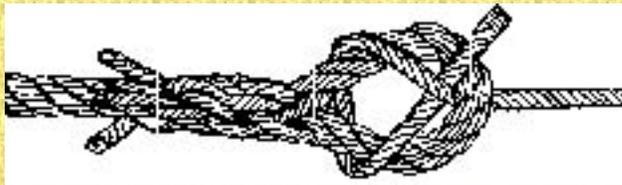
loops of the overhand knot through the half knot part of the opposite overhand knot. (5) Place over a pole and draw the three loops up even. (6) Secure to the pole with a series of running half hitches above and below the mast head knot.

**[NOTE]**

A fourth loop may be formed by tying or splicing the ends together. If a fourth loop is made, nail a cleat to the pole to prevent the mast head knot from slipping.

**[NOTE]**

Attach the guy lines to the loops with becket hitches.



---

## KNOTBOARD OF THE MONTH

# ARCHIVE

---



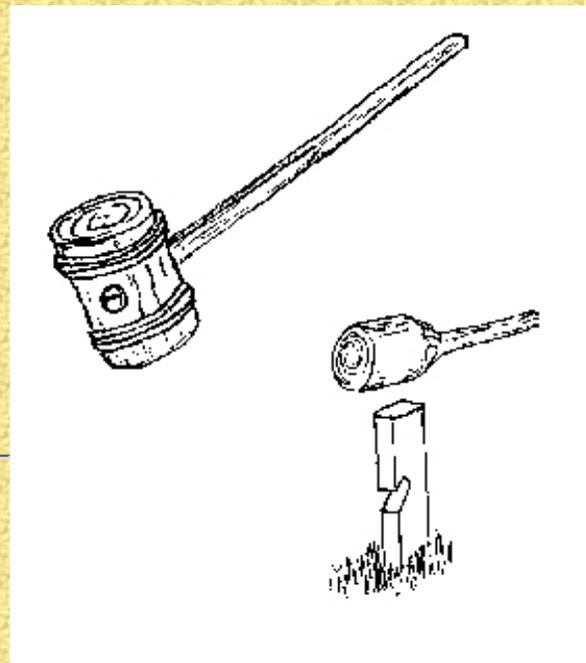
[Home](#)  
[E-Mail](#)

## ARTICLE OF THE MONTH

---

Each month there will be article on this page.

**THIS MONTH'S IS THE :**



## MAULS:

---

A maul is a wooden club or hammer that is used for driving stakes or wedges and for safety reasons should be used instead of an ax.

Using an ax instead of a maul exposes the user to the danger of being cut by its sharp edge. Even if the edge is covered by a sheath, a glancing blow can cause the sheath to be ripped off or to be cut through.

The pole of an ax serves as a counterweight to the blade. This counterweight adds to the balance of the ax head and helps to control and increase the force of momentum delivered to the bit. The ax head is shaped in such a way that the momentum of the ax head is delivered through the thin walls of the eye. However, when an ax is being used as a hammer, this same shape causes the eye of the ax head to spread and the handle to loosen.

The flat surface and angular edges of an ax pole makes it difficult to strike a stake squarely. This difficulty in striking a square blow results in most blows delivering some there force sideways, causing the end of the wooden stake to flare and split very quickly. In addition, when the pole of an ax contacts a stake, the metal surface of the pole lacks the ability absorb any of the force of the impact this contributes to the destruction of the stake. A wooden maul, on the other hand, absorbs some of the impact of the initial contact and a maul has no angular edges. Therefore, more of the force of the maul is used to do useful work and less of the force is used up in deforming or splitting the stake.

**FOR MORE INFORMATIOM GO TO "MAULS"**



"MAULS"

---

**ARTICLE OF THE MONTH**  
**ARCHIVE**

---



Home  
E-Mail

# *Die Affenfaust*



Ursprünglich als Wurfleinenknoten benutzt, wird er heute fast nur noch als Zierknoten verwendet.



[Home](#)  
[E-Mail](#)

## KNOTBOARD OF THE MONTH

### MONKIE'S PAW:

#### Description ----

Two forms of the monkey's paw are shown here the first is formed from four interlocking loops: a four crown turk's head; the second is constructed from three interlocking coils.

#### Use ----

The core determines what the monkey's paw can be used for. When tied over a stone or heavy ball, the monkey's paw can be used to add weight to a heaving line. If tied over a cork ball with small cord the monkey's paw makes a good float for boat keys or other small items used around a water front. Tied over a ball of twine or other soft material, the monkey's paw can be used as weight on the end of a rope for the game jump the shot. A Monkey's Paw can also be used as a toggle..

#### Comments ----

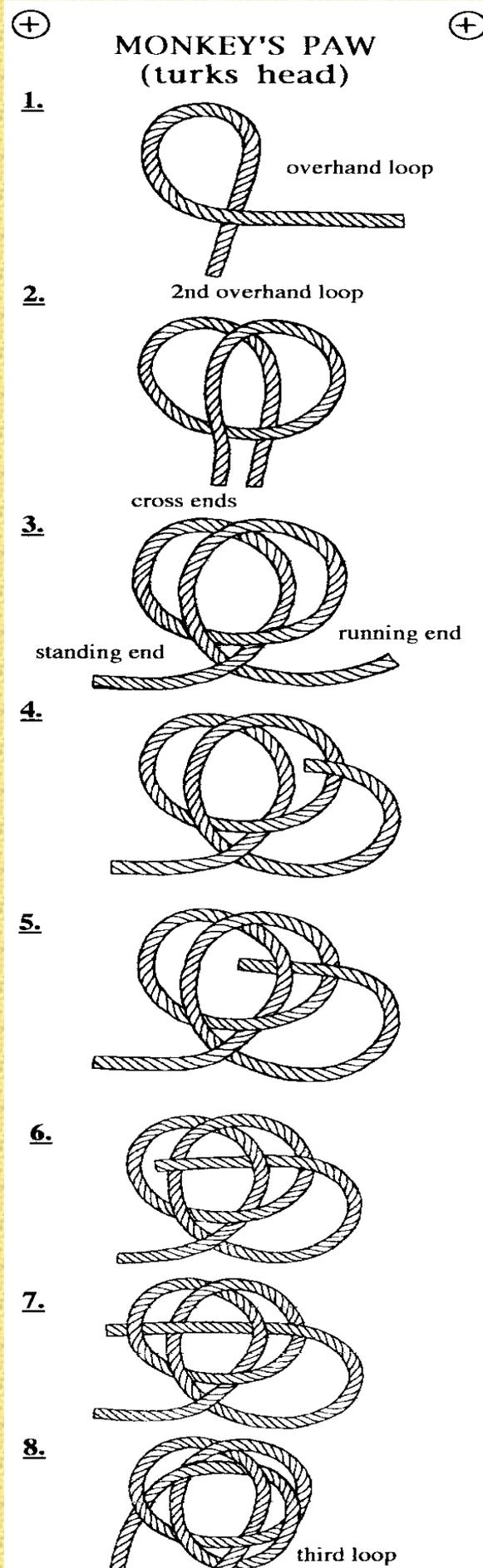
Neither form of the Monkey's Paw has an advantage over the other. Which one you choose to use is a matter of personal preference.

#### Core Size -----

The diameter of the core should be between three and four diameters of the rope being used..

#### Narration ----- (For Monkey's Paw Turk's Head knotboard.)

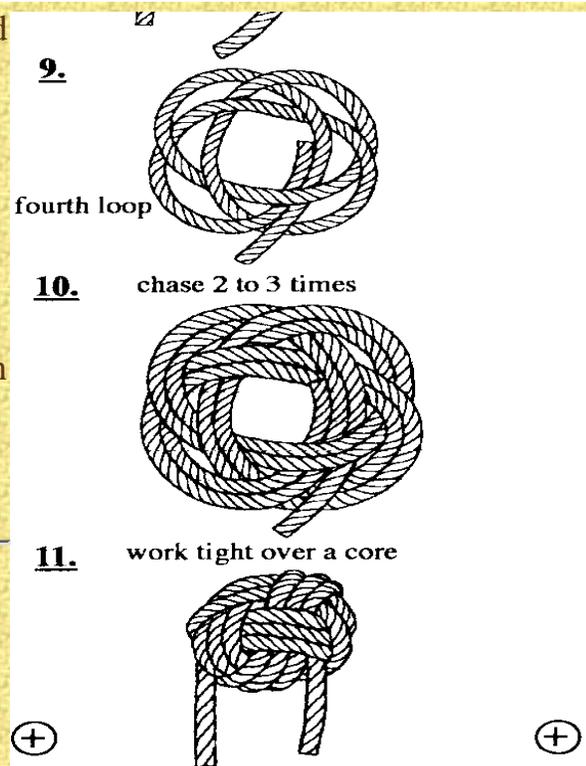
(1) Form an overhand loop (2) Form a second



overhand loop over the left edge of the first overhand loop . (3) Cross the standing end over the running end. (4) Weave the running end across the loops by placing the running end over the right side of the top loop (5) then under the right side of the bottom loop (6) next, over the left side of the top loop (7) and finally under the left side of the of the bottom loop. (8) Pull the running end through until a third loop equal in size to the first two loops. (9) Add the fourth loop by placing the running end parallel to the standing end. (10) Chase the original pattern 2 to 3 times. (11) Work tight over the core.

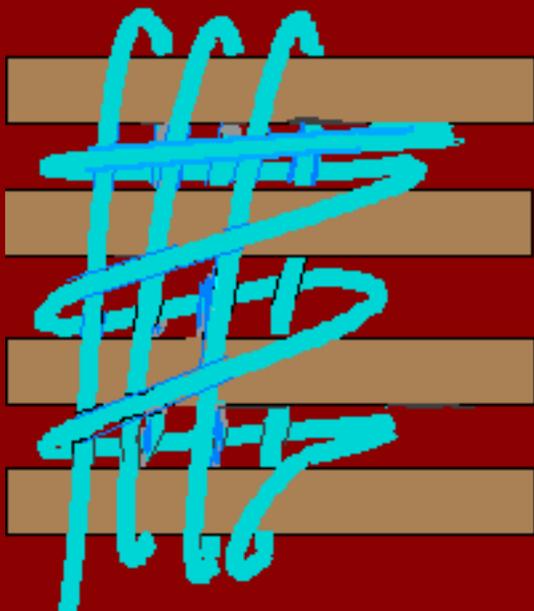


[Home](#)  
[E-Mail](#)



# Knot of the Month - June '97

## The Monkey's Fist



To tie a Monkey's Fist:

- Begin with three LOOSE parallel loops around the spread fingers of your left hand, Leave about 18 inches hanging at the beginning. We will call this set of loops "A loops."
- Start a fourth loop, only this time, come between your little and ring fingers.
- Now, work the end of the line back between the little and ring fingers close to your palm to "capture" the A loops. Also keep these loops loose.
- Next, pass the line over, between your ring and middle fingers, and come back through these same fingers.
- Repeat this process going between your middle and index fingers. We will call this second set of loops the "B loops."
- [Continue to part B.](#)

Return to [the Monkey's Fist beginning.](#)

Return to [Knots](#).



## Home ARCHIVE

# KNOTBOARD OF THE MONTH

Each month there will be new knotboard and descriptive text displayed on this page.

**THIS MONTH'S IS THE :**

## MOORING HITCH:

### Description ----

An underhand loop toggled to the standing part with a bight made in the running end.

### Use ----

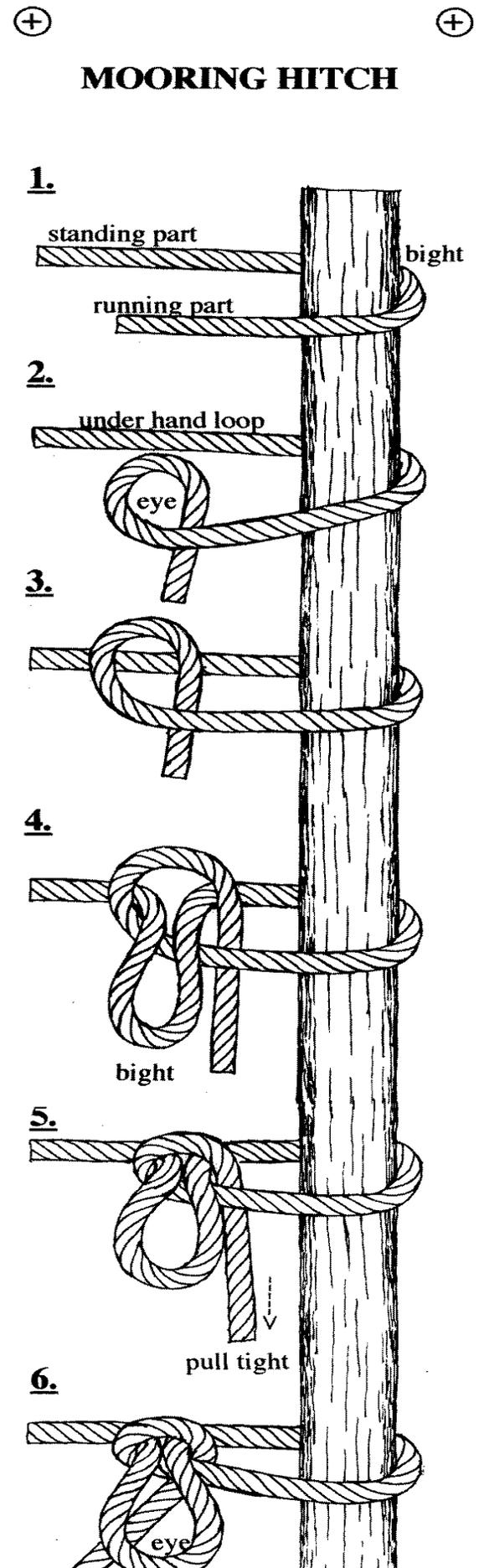
To securely tie off a rope so that it can be quickly untied, especially a small boat to a dock or piling.

### Comments ----

A secure knot that is easily tied or untied in wet or dry rope; when properly tied a non closing loop is formed, this allows the hitch to move up or down a piling as the water level changes.

### Narration ----- (For Mooring Hitch Knotboard.)

(1) Take a bight around an object. (2) Form an underhand loop in the running part. (3) Place the eye of the underhand loop over the standing part. (4) Pull a bight of the standing part through the eye of the underhand loop. (5) Pull the underhand loop tight around the bight. (6) Place the running part under the eye of the bight that was pulled through the underhand loop. (7) Pull a bight of the running part through the eye of the standing part bight. (8) Pull on

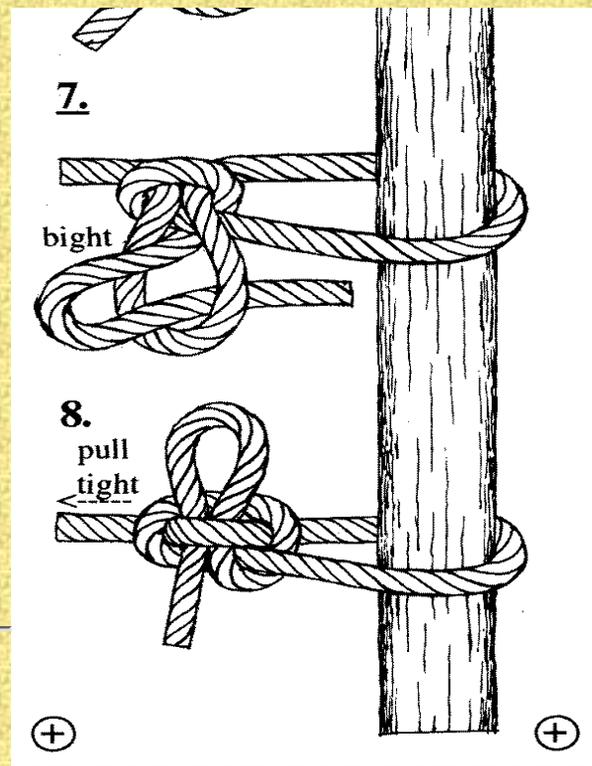


the standing part to tighten the standing part bight around the running part bight.

## ANIMATED KNOT



## MOORING HITCH



---

## KNOTBOARD OF THE MONTH

## ARCHIVE

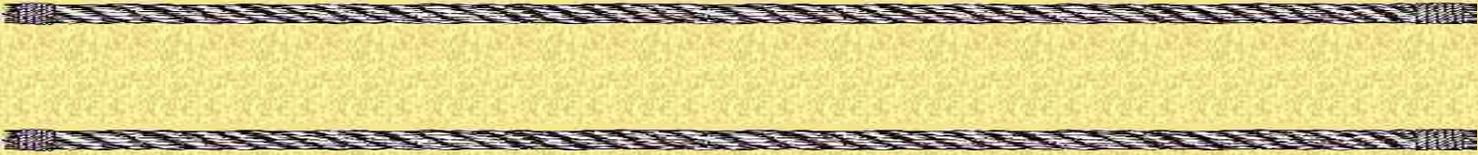
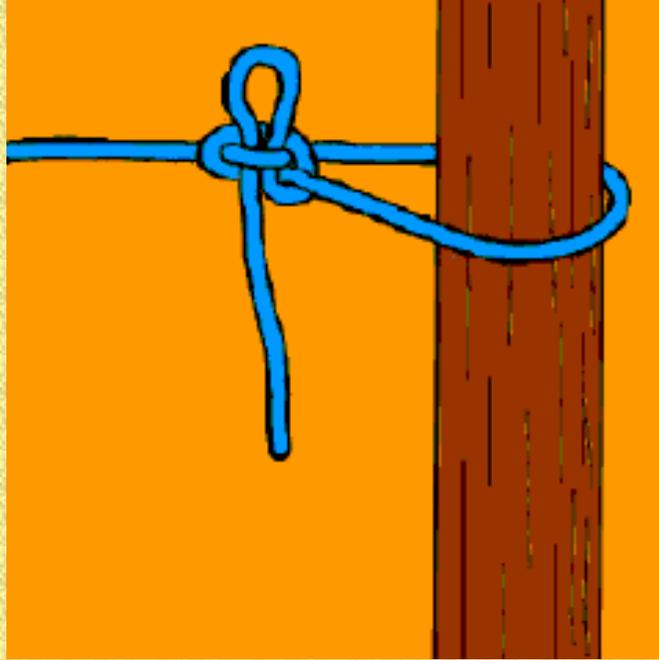
---



Home  
E-Mail

# MOORING HITCH

## RERUN ANIMATION



Home  
E-Mail

# Nyolcas



Kötélvégek csigából való kicsúszásának elkerülésére, más csomóknál a szabad végek kicsúszásának megakadályozására.

[<< Dupla bög](#) | [#eleje](#) | [index](#) | [levél](#) | [Kilences](#) >>

Utolsó módosítás: 2002.09.26 23:41:34 CEST



ROPE WORKS ©1996 Gerald L. Findley, all rights reserved

## INTRODUCTION

ROPE WORKS is a book that evolved to meet the needs of Scouts and Scouters. ROPE WORKS' 97 pages are bound in a plastic comb binding that allows it to lay flat while in use. Its 6 inch by 8 1/2 inch size makes it convenient to carry as a reference source. ROPE WORKS provides detailed step by step illustrations in a knot board layout. The knot board layout clearly shows each step required to tie a knot. The detailed steps allows the user of ROPE WORKS to learn the art of **knot tying, splicing, and lashing** without the constant supervision of an instructor. The table of contents, glossary of terms and complete index will help you find and tie the knots you need.

Twenty-two pages of ROPE WORKS are devoted to **rope making** and the building of a **geared rope machine**.

View our sample illustrations to see what we are talking about. Then order your copy of Rope Works today by using the handy mail in **order form** found at our Ordering Information button.

## KNOT SAFETY

If a knot is improperly tied or a wrong knot is used, an unsafe condition is created. Therefore it is not just enough for the teacher to teach someone how to tie a knot correctly, but it is also necessary to teach them how to use the knot correctly. Likewise it is the student's responsibility to learn how to correctly tie and use the knot. If either the teacher or the student does not accept their responsibility they are endangering themselves and others.

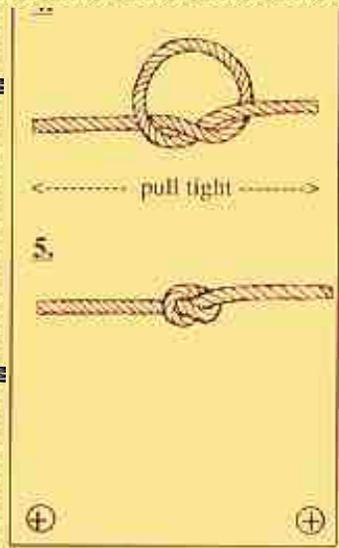
The most commonly used rope is right hand-lay rope; that is as you are looking at the rope, it appears to twist to the right and away from you. Because of the right-hand lay of most rope, the majority of knots hold best when tied in a right hand manner. If the knot is tied in a left-hand manner or the mirror image of its usual form, the knot may fail because the right-hand twist of the rope may cause the knot to loosen or spill more easily. This is especially true if the tension on the rope is repeatedly changed.

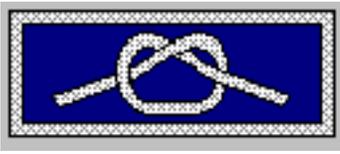
Thanks and safe tying.





[Home](#)  
[← GUESTBOOK →](#)  
[E-Mail](#)





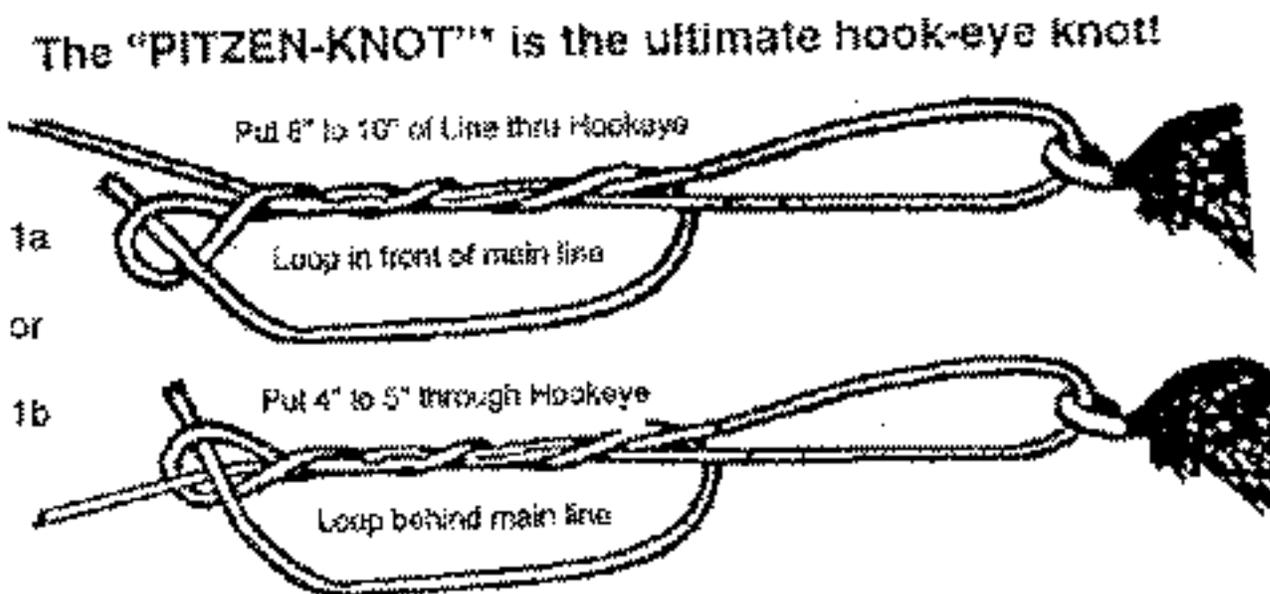
# Overhand Knot



This simple knot and its cousin the barrell knot can be used to back up another knot. All knots should be backed up.

[Back to Main Knot Page](#)

# The Pitzen Knot



You can start with either 1a or 1b to tie this knot, which has a breaking strength close to 100% of the tippet rating.

1a -- position the fly to the right as shown!

2 -- Thread 8-10" of tippet through the hook eye. Hold the looped tippet line and tag end with your left thumb and finger. The tag end behind your fingers should be about 4" long. Leave a loop as illustrated. Let the fly hang!

3 -- Make 3 twists ONLY as shown, insert the tag end through the loop.

4 -- pull the tag end with the left hand so the twist close up loosely toward the loop. Now pull the tippet (not the tag) so the twists slide up toward the eye. Lubricate, and pull steadily until you feel the knot set into place.

1b -- The main difference is that you thread only 4-5" through the hook eye, and use hackle pliers or similar to hold the fly, rather than holding it in the palm of your hand.

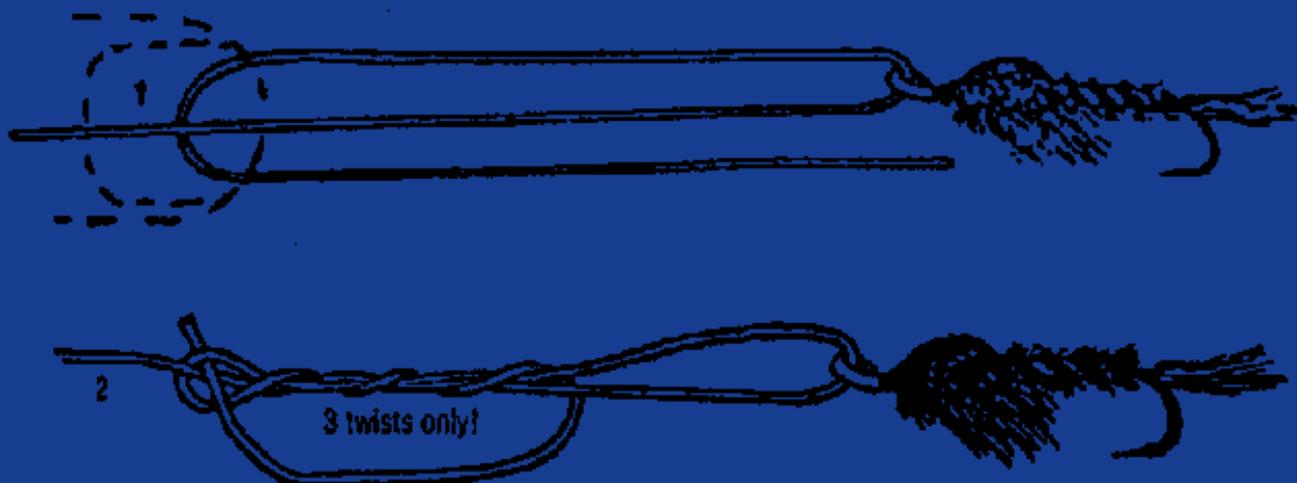
The Pitzen knot, invented by Edgar Pitzenbauer of Germany is easy to tie with a little practice, and results in a knot the retains 95-100% of the tippet's rated strength as opposed to 65% for a Clinch knot. The Pitzen knot is also smaller by about 40%.

---

[Return](#) to the Techniques page.

[Return](#) to the Missouri Flyfishing page.

# PITZEN KNOT



## Knot Tying Instructions

1. Position fly to the right as shown.
2. Thread 3" to 4" of tippet through the hook-eye and loop as shown. Hold in place between your left thumb and finger. Now let the fly hang.
3. Make 3 twists (only) as is illustrated leaving a loop through which you thread the tag-end *exactly* as shown...(i.e. 'in' topfront and 'out' back of loop!)
4. Pull the tag-end with the left hand so twists close up loosely, not firmly! Now pull the tippet line (not tag-end) so that the knot slides to the hook-eye; do this steadily and then *firmly* until you feel the knot set

With repeated ties you will feel the knot set; pull it a second time as sometimes you may feel a second smaller 'knot-set'. Retie if you do not feel at least one 'knot-set'. This knot is as easy to tie as a Clinch-knot but it tests, on average, an incredible 95% to 100% of straight-line strength of *our* tippets verses as little as 65% for the Clinch-knot. The "Pitzen-knot" is so simple; it's a small knot, not at all bulky and you can snip the tag-end close!

---

Last modified: Wed Nov 15 17:26:47 1995

# Reef Knot

(Square Knot)



- An excellent *general purpose* knot for tying two pieces of string or twine together, the reef knot is possibly the most commonly used knot for the job, and is easy to learn. However, it cannot be overly stressed that the Reef knot is not a long term or secure knot, and it should only be used to finish parcels or bindings. In other cases, use a more secure method of bending two ropes together, such as a [Sheetbend](#), a [Double Sheetbend](#), or a [Fisherman's Knot](#).
  - Unfortunately, the Reef knot can easily change into a slipping [Lark's Head](#) (see below), so it should *never* be used where life or limb are at risk.
  - Holding one end of each rope in each hand, pass the left rope over the right, and tuck under. Then pass the same rope, now in the right hand, over the left rope, and tuck under.
  - It is common to chant "Left over Right and Under, Right over Left and Under" when tying the knot. (This can also be performed as "Right over Left and Under, Left over Right and Under".)
  - The reef knot can easily be undone by gripping one loose end, and pulling it back over the knot, in the opposite direction, thus straightening the rope which is pulled. The other rope forms a [Lark's Head](#) knot, and slips off the tugged rope.
  - The knot gets its name from its use on sailing ships, when the sails were "reefed" - rolled up and tied to the cross spar with a reef knot. To release the sail, the sailors would climb the rigging, and work their way along the cross spar, pulling the top end of the reef knot down. They only had to use one hand, holding on with the other. The weight of the sail would cause the reef knot to slip, and the sail would be released.
- 
- Tip. If you want to tie two ropes together of similar thickness then never use a Reef knot. Only use it with string and twine when tying parcels, whippings and bindings.
  - Tip. Never use this knot to join ropes of two different thicknesses.

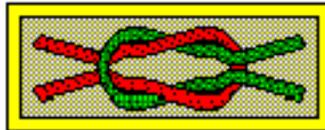
[Return to Knot Menu](#)



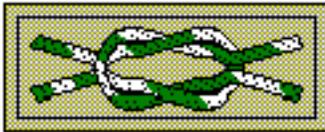
*Copyright (C) Dick Ruck 1997*

[Ovingdean Saltdean Rottingdean Telscombe Cliffs Peacehaven Newhaven PC Computer Repair, Training and Virus Help](#)

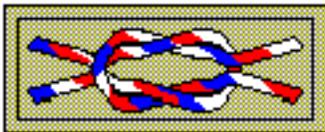
## YOUTH ACHIEVEMENT AWARDS



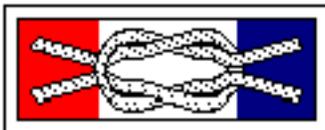
ARROW OF LIGHT



HORNADAY AWARD



EAGLE SCOUT

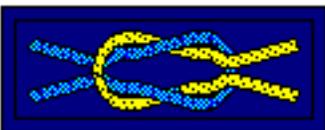


EXPLORER ACHIEVEMENT AWARD

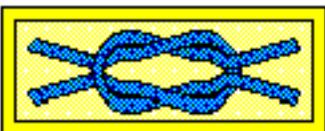


QUARTERMASTER AWARD

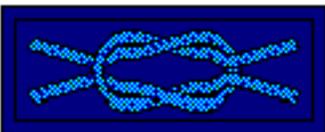
## LEADERSHIP AWARDS



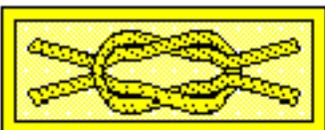
CUB SCOUTER AWARD



CUBMASTER AWARD



DEN LEADER COACH AWARD



WEBELOS DEN LEADER AWARD



DEN LEADER AWARD



TIGER GROUP ORGANIZER AWARD

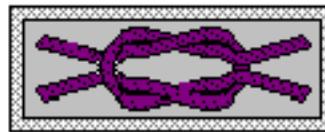


SCOUTER TRAINING

## RELIGIOUS EMBLEMS

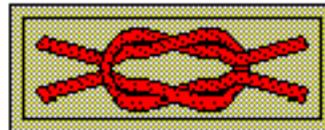


RELIGIOUS EMBLEM (YOUTH)

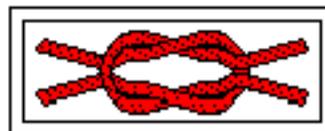


RELIGIOUS AWARD (ADULT)

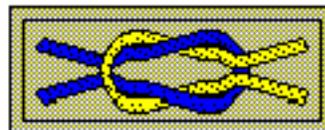
## BRAVERY AWARDS



HONOR MEDAL

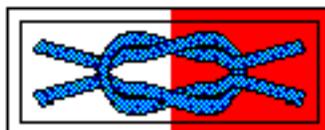


HEROISM AWARD

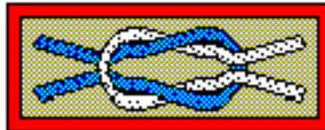


MEDAL OF MERIT

## HONOR AWARDS



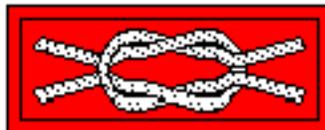
GEORGE MEANY AWARD



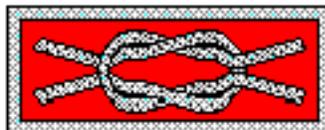
WHITNEY YOUNG, JR. AWARD



WILLIAM H. SPURGEON AWARD



ORDER OF THE ARROW DISTINGUISHED SERVICE AWARD



DISTINGUISHED COMMISSIONER SERVICE AWARD



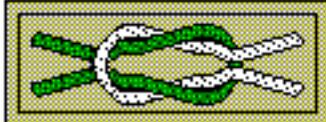
DISTRICT AWARD OF MERIT



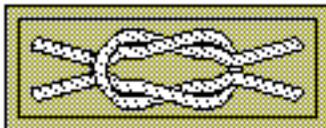
SILVER BEAVER



**AWARD**



**SCOUTER'S  
KEY**



**SCOUTMASTER  
AWARD OF  
MERIT**



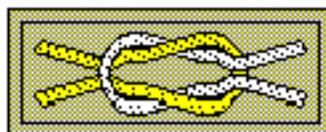
**SEA BADGE**



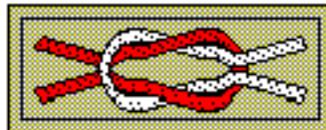
**PROFESSIONAL  
TRAINING  
AWARD**



**SILVER BEAVER**



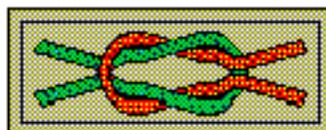
**SILVER ANTELOPE**



**SILVER BUFFALO**



**SILVER WORLD**

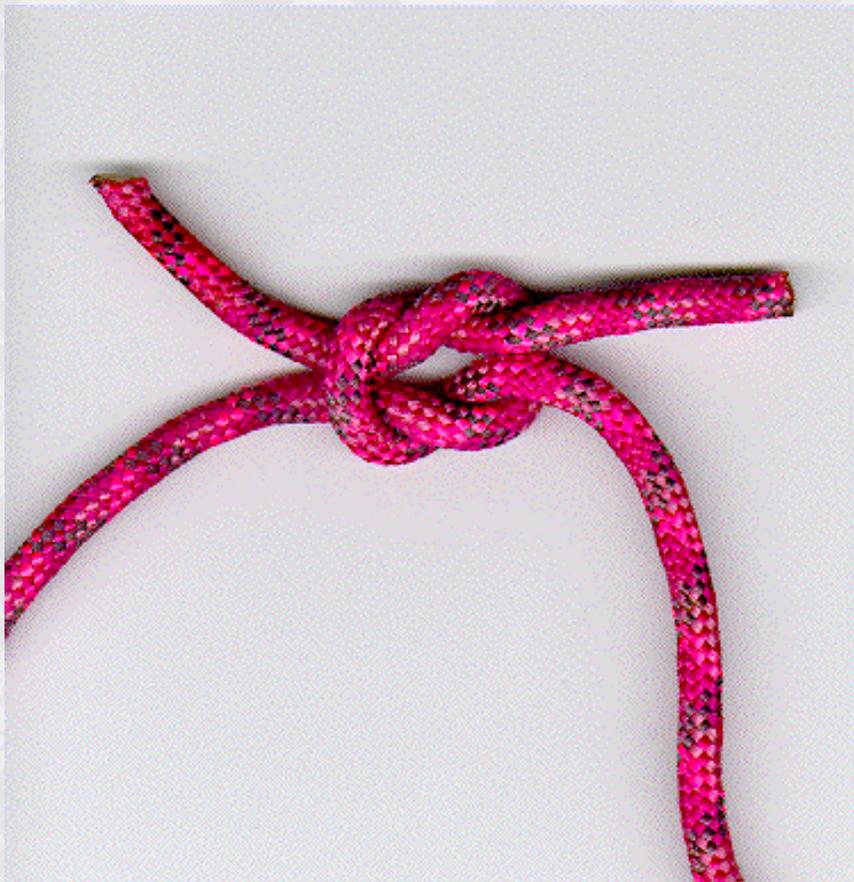


**JAMES E. WEST  
MEMORIAL AWARD**

# Square Knot

This knot is used in the ASRC seat harness. Be careful to tie it correctly and not wind up with a "Granny knot"





[Back to Main Knot Page](#)



# Rolling Hitch

(Magner's Hitch, Magnus Hitch)



- One of the most underrated knots in Scouting and Guiding, the Rolling hitch is used to attach one rope to a second, in such a manner that the first rope can be easily slid along the second.
- The knot can be considered a [Clove hitch](#) with an additional turn.
- When tension is applied and the ropes form a straight line, the rolling hitch will lock onto the first rope. When the tension is released, the hitch can be loosened and slid along the first rope to a new location.
- The tension must be applied on the side of the knot with the extra turn.
- Tip. Use this knot if you have a guy rope with no adjuster. Create a loop on the end of a second rope which is slipped over the peg. Use a rolling hitch to attach the second rope to the guyline. Alternatively, take the guyline around the peg and tie the Rolling hitch back onto the standing part of the guyline, above the peg, thus forming an adjustable loop. This is known as the Tautline Hitch in America.
- Tip. Use this knot when constructing camp gadgets such as a suspended table. A Rolling hitch in each suspension rope will allow easy adjustment and a level table!
- Tip. When adjustments are complete, lock the rolling hitch into place by using a stop knot such as a [Figure of Eight](#) in the first rope, below the Rolling hitch, to stop it slipping.

 [Return to Knot Menu](#)



*Copyright (C) Dick Ruck 1997*

[Ovingdean Saltdean Rottingdean Telscombe Cliffs Peacehaven Newhaven PC Computer Repair, Training and Virus Help](#)

# Round turn and two half hitches



- Used to secure a rope to a pole, or to start or finish a lashing. Pass the running end of the rope over the pole twice. Then pass the running end over the standing part of rope, and tuck it back up and under itself, forming a half hitch. Repeat this for a second half hitch.
- This knot has a redeeming feature - it rarely jams!
- Tip. Superior to a [Clove Hitch](#) for starting and finishing a lashing as the half hitches prevent this knot from unrolling, as they have the effect of locking the knot. The [Clove Hitch](#) looks neater (!) but it has a tendency to unroll, and can be difficult to tie tightly when tying off.

[Return to Knot Menu](#)

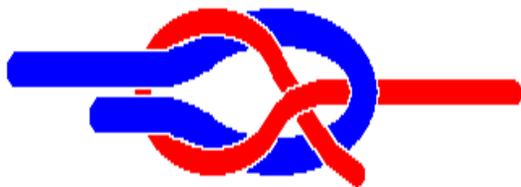


*Copyright (C) Dick Ruck 1997*

[Ovingdean Saltdean Rottingdean Telscombe Cliffs Peacehaven Newhaven PC Computer Repair, Training and Virus Help](#)

# Sheet Bend

(Flag Bend, Common Bend)



- The Sheetbend is commonly used to tie two ropes of unequal thickness together. The thicker rope of the two is used to form a bight, and the thinner rope is passed up through the bight, around the back of the bight, and then tucked under itself.
- The knot should be tied with both ends coming off the same side of the bend, as illustrated here. However it can easily be accidentally tied with the ends coming off opposite sides of the bend, when it is known as the [Left Handed Sheet Bend](#). The Left Handed Sheet Bend is to be avoided as it is less secure.
- Tip. If the ropes are of very unequal thickness, or placed under a lot of tension, use a [Double Sheetbend](#).

[Return to Knot Menu](#)



*Copyright (C) Dick Ruck 1997*

[Ovingdean Saltdean Rottingdean Telscombe Cliffs Peacehaven Newhaven PC Computer Repair, Training and Virus Help](#)



## Home ARCHIVE

# KNOTBOARD OF THE MONTH

Each month there will be new knotboard and descriptive text displayed on this page.

**THIS MONTH'S IS THE :**

## SHEET BEND:

### Description ----

An interlocked bight and half hitch.

### Use ----

To temporarily join two ropes, especially if the ropes are of different sizes.

### Comments ----

The sheet bend is a secure but easily untied knot. ----  
When tying the sheet bend the running parts should be left long because there is some initial slip in the knot when the knot is first brought under tension. ----  
The proper and more secure way to tie the sheet bend is so that the two end the rope are on the same side of the knot.

### Other Names ----

Weavers knot

### Related Knots ----

**Bowline; becket hitch; these knots share the same form but are tied in a different way or have a different use.**

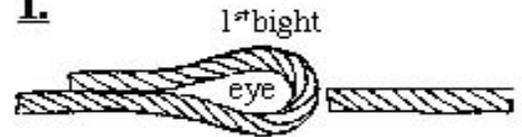
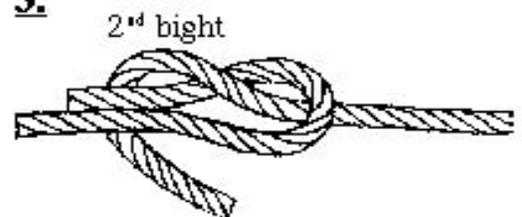
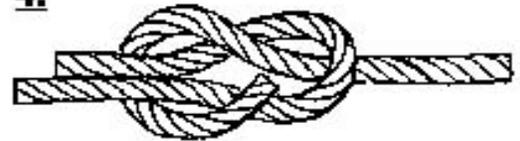
### Narrative ---- (For sheet bend knotboard.)

(1) Form a bight in the running part of the

+

## SHEET BEND

+

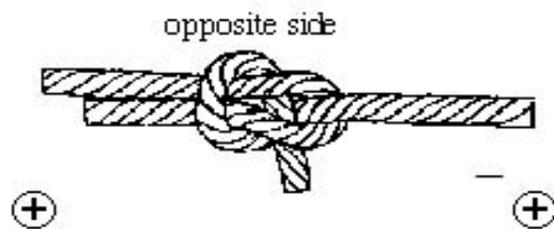
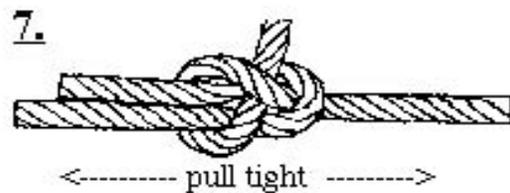
**1.****2.****3.****4.****5.****6.**

left-hand rope. (2) Reeve the running part of the right-hand rope through the eye of the bight in the left-hand rope. (3) With the right-hand running part take a bight around the running part and the standing part of the left-hand rope. (4) Pass the right-hand running part over the left-hand standing part, (5) under the right-hand rope, and (6) over the standing part of the left-hand rope. (7) Pull tight.

## ANIMATED KNOT



## SHEET BEND



---

## KNOTBOARD OF THE MONTH

## ARCHIVE

---



Home  
E-Mail



Main Categories

- ▶ [Business](#)
- ▶ [Cars](#)
- ▶ [Education](#)
- ▶ [Entertainment](#)
- ▶ [Finances](#)
- ▶ [Health](#)
- ▶ [Homes](#)
- ▶ [Insurance](#)
- ▶ [Internet](#)
- ▶ [Legal](#)
- ▶ [Shopping](#)
- ▶ [Travel](#)

More Categories

- ▶ [Link](#)
- ▶ [Web Site Creation](#)
- ▶ [Dns Hosting](#)
- ▶ [Web Host Directory](#)
- ▶ [Search Engine Listing](#)
- ▶ [Build A Web Site](#)
- ▶ [Web Page Design](#)
- ▶ [Dns Server](#)
- ▶ [Cheap Internet](#)
- ▶ [Computer Gaming](#)
- ▶ [Domain Name System](#)
- ▶ [Web Site Services](#)

Popular Searches

- ▶▶ [Links](#)
- ▶▶ [Free Links](#)
- ▶▶ [Search Engine List](#)
- ▶▶ [Site](#)
- ▶▶ [Internet Computer](#)
- ▶▶ [Web Site Design](#)
- ▶▶ [Directory](#)
- ▶▶ [Web Site](#)
- ▶▶ [Internet](#)
- ▶▶ [Web Site Listing](#)
- ▶▶ [Link Popularity](#)
- ▶▶ [Create Web Site](#)

We show you where to find the best LINKS, DIRECTORY and FREE LINKS resources through our comprehensive, search-friendly indexes. Simply click on what you need from the list above or conduct your own search using the box below.

**Search:**

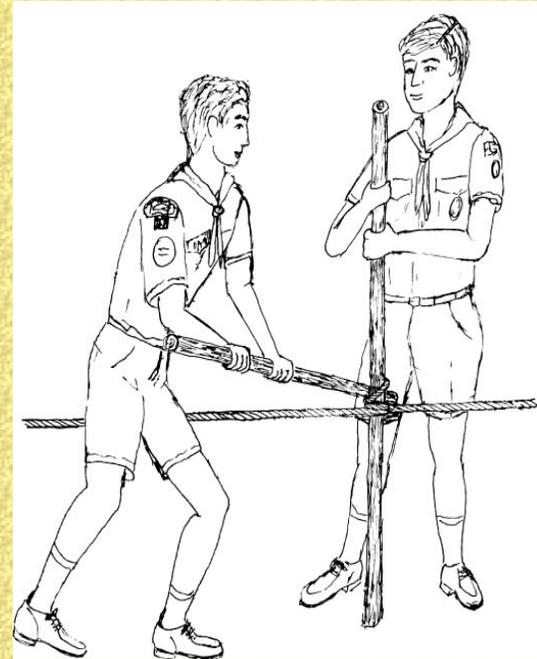


## Home ARCHIVE

# ARTICLE OF THE MONTH

Each month there will be new knotboard and descriptive text displayed on this page.

**THIS MONTH'S IS THE :**



## SPANISH WINDLESS:

### Description ----

A Spanish windless is a device for moving heavy loads such as rocks and logs.

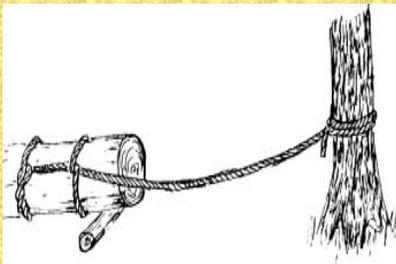
### [WARNING]

When setting up a Spanish Windless do not use nylon or other synthetic fiber ropes that stretch under a load. If you slip or let go of the poles the energy you used to stretch the rope will be released as the rope returns to its original length. This release of energy could cause the poles of the windless to spin around causing injuries to any one near by. Natural fiber ropes, such as sisal, have little stretch; therefore are much safer to use.

### MATERIALS:

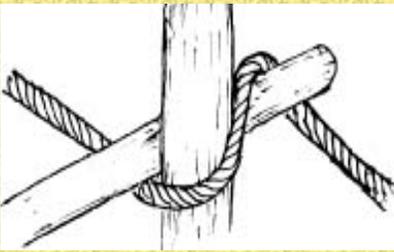
- 1 - 8 foot \* 3 inch pole
- 1 - 5 foot \* 3 inch pole
- 1 - 3/4 inch \* 50 foot (natural fiber)

### SETUP:



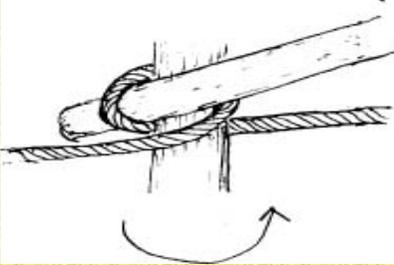
### STEP 1:

Tie one end of the rope to the load and the other end to a secure anchor point. Leave some slack in the rope so that the windless can be rigged.



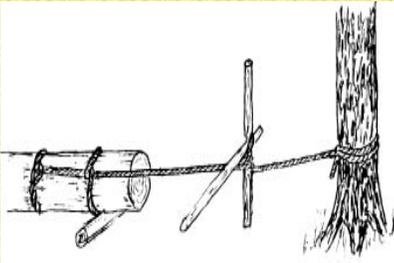
**STEP 2:**

Follow the diagrams to set up the poles at the mid point of the rope.



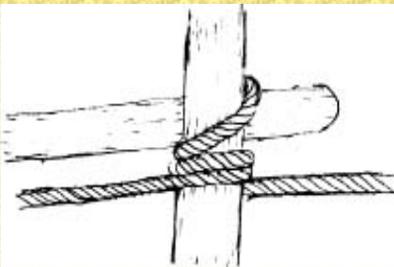
**STEP 3:**

While one person holds the up right pole, a second person rotates the longer pole around the upright so that the rope begins to wrap around the upright pole. Adjust the height of the rope so that it can be easily stepped over.



**STEP 4:**

Continue to rotate the longer pole around the upright.



**[NOTE]:**

As the rope wraps around the upright it will be necessary to move the base of the upright to keep it vertical.

**[NOTE]:**

Be careful that the two ends of the rope are kept at the same level on the upright.

## ARTICLE OF THE MONTH

# ARCHIVE

---



Home  
E-Mail



Gerald L. Findley, all rights reserved

ROPE WORKS ©1999

## Lashing

Lashings are used to join poles or spars when building pioneering structures. These structures can be functional, such as tables, bridges, and towers or decorative such as gateways. The only limit as to the type of structure is the imagination of the builder.

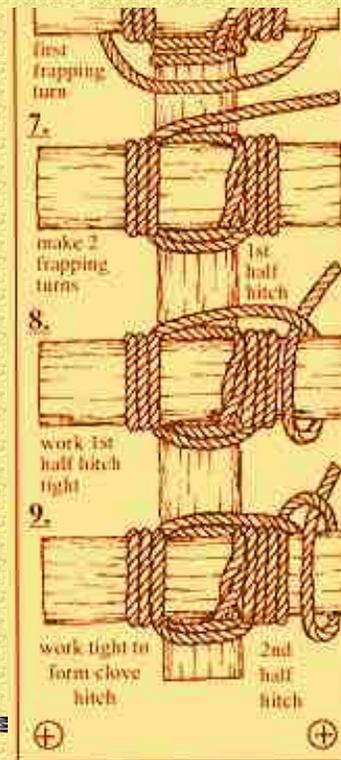
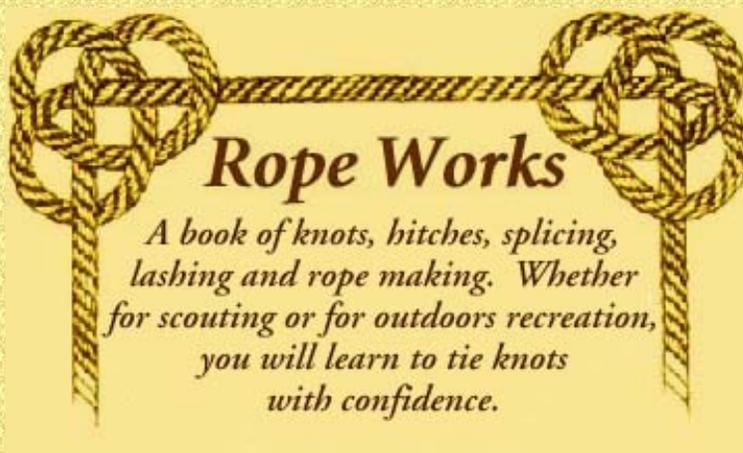
Correctly tied lashings in pioneering structures are essential for safety. When young people see an interesting structure they charge up and over with no thought as to the soundness of the structure. This places the responsibility for a safe structure directly on the builder.

The following topics about lashing are covered in :

# ROPE WORKS

Square Lashing  
Diagonal Lashing  
Tripod Lashing With Racking Turns  
Tripod Lashing With Plain Turns  
Shear Lashing With Racking Turns  
Shear Lashing With Plain Turns  
Shear Lashing Quick  
Round Lashing  
Round Lashing West Country  
Floor Lashing





**Order a copy of RopeWorks now !**



[Home](#)  
[E-Mail](#)



# Takács~



Hasonló kötelek összekötésére. Pl. takácsok a felvetőfonal toldására használták (van jobb is). Ha nem szorult meg nagyon, akkor az egyik kötélvéget az ellenkező szár felé rántva

egyszerûen lehúzható róla. Van aki ezt használja a reffzsinórokon is.

[<< Kilences](#) | [#eleje](#) | [index](#) | [levél](#) | [Halász~ >>](#)

Utolsó módosítás: 2002.09.26 23:41:34 CEST

# ARTICLE OF THE MONTH

Each month there will be article on this page.

**THIS MONTH'S IS THE :**

## TAUT-LINE HITCH:

### Description ----

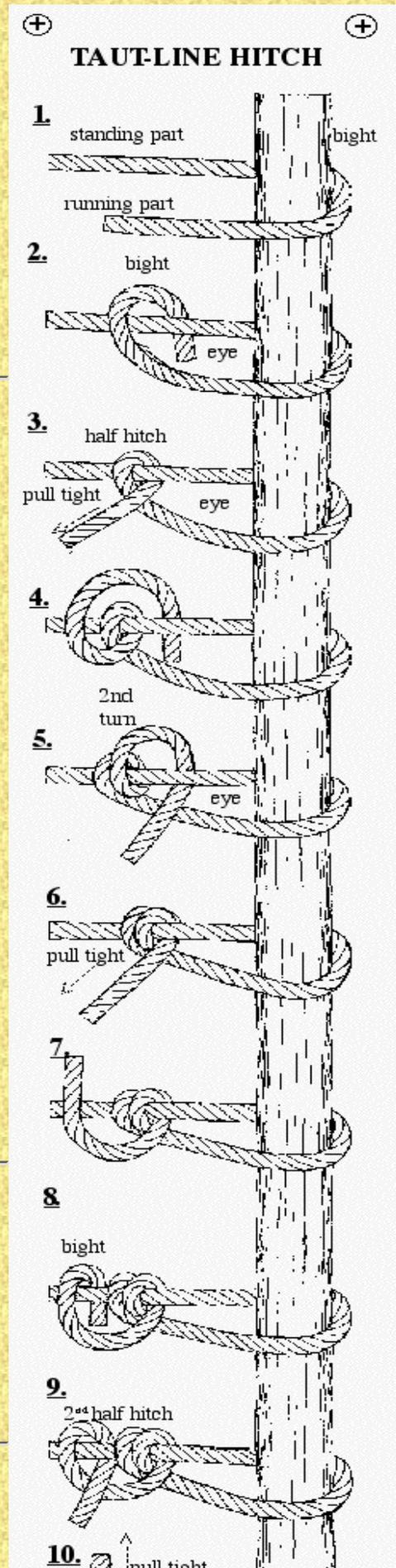
Two half hitches with an extra turn.

### Use ----

To adjust the tension on guy lines.

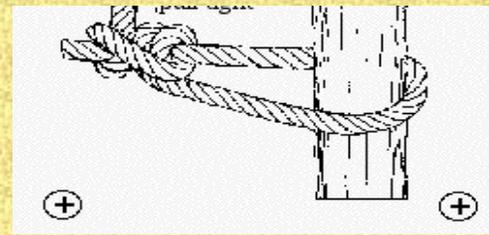
**FOR MORE INFORMATION GO TO "TAUT-LINE"**

# ARTICLE OF THE MONTH ARCHIVE





[Home](#)  
[E-Mail](#)



# Thief Knot



- The Thief knot resembles the [Reef knot](#) at a casual glance. Note that the ends of the Thief Knot come off opposite sides of the knot. In the Reef knot, they come off the same sides.
- However, the Thief knot has no strength whatsoever, and will slip under tension.
- Try it and see!
- Tip. Only use this knot for tricks. NEVER use it where life and limb are at risk.

[Return to Knot Menu](#)



*Copyright (C) Dick Ruck 1997*

[Ovingdean Saltdean Rottingdean Telscombe Cliffs Peacehaven Newhaven PC Computer Repair, Training and Virus Help](#)

# Timber Hitch



- Used to attach a rope to a log, or where security is not an issue. This knot tightens under strain, but comes undone extremely easily when the rope is slack.
- Wrap the rope around the log, then pass the running end around the standing part of the rope. Finally twist the running end around **itself** three or four times. (Note: this is only shown twice in the animation.)
- Tip: Jolly useful for dragging logs back to the camp fire!

[Return to Knot Menu](#)



*Copyright (C) Dick Ruck 1997*

[Ovingdean Saltdean Rottingdean Telscombe Cliffs Peacehaven Newhaven PC Computer Repair, Training and Virus Help](#)

# Toldó1~



Ennek nem tudom a nevét.  
Kedvelt díszítőelem giccses  
trikókon. Hasonló kötelek  
összekötésére való.  
Meghúzáskor kifordul.  
Könnyen bontható.

[<< Halász~](#) | [#eleje](#) | [index](#) | [levél](#) | [Zászló~ >>](#)

Utolsó módosítás: 2002.09.26 23:41:34 CEST



## Home ARCHIVE

# KNOTBOARD OF THE MONTH

Each month there will be new knotboard and descriptive text displayed on this page.

**THIS MONTH'S IS THE :**

## TRIPOD LASHING:

### Description ----

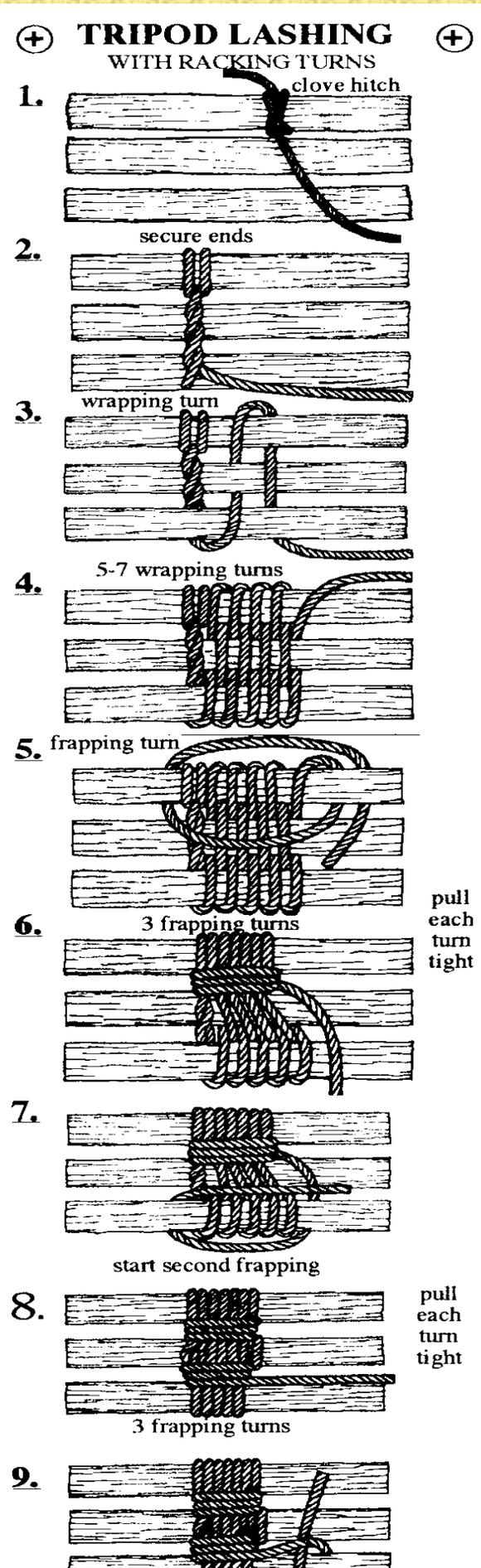
A shear lashing around 3 poles.

### Use ----

To bind three poles together, for the construction of a tripod. ---- To bind three poles together that contact at the same point in a structure

### Comments ----

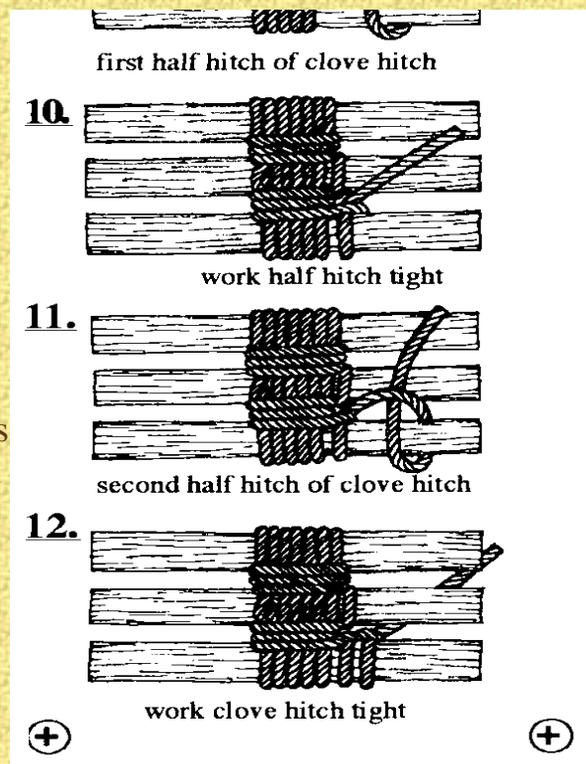
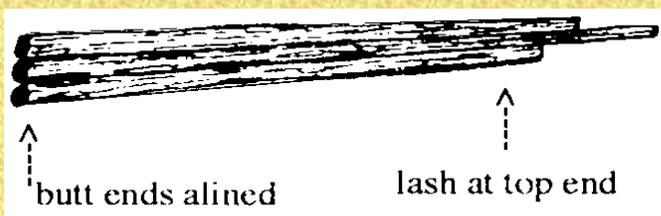
The tripod lashing is a shear lashing that binds three poles together at the same point. ---- The tripod lashing gets its name from the fact that its most common use is the construction of a tripod. ---- The tripod lashing can be used just about anywhere in a structure that three poles cross each other at the same point and the same time in the sequence of construction. ---- Tripod lashing takes two main forms; with racked wrapping turns (the rope is woven between the poles) and with plain wrapping turns (the rope is wrapped around the poles without weaving the rope between the poles). When the lashing is made with racked turns the rope contacts each pole around its entire circumference ; this



contact makes the tripod lashing with racking turns the most secure form of tripod lashing: therefore tripod lashing with racking turns should be used when safety is important. However, for light structures where there would be no danger if the lashing slipped, the faster to tie tripod lashing with plain wrapping turns may be used.

**Laying Out The Poles ----**

For most tripod lashings, lay the pole side by side with the butt ends aligned. The alignment of the butts of the pole insures that the tripod legs are the desired length.

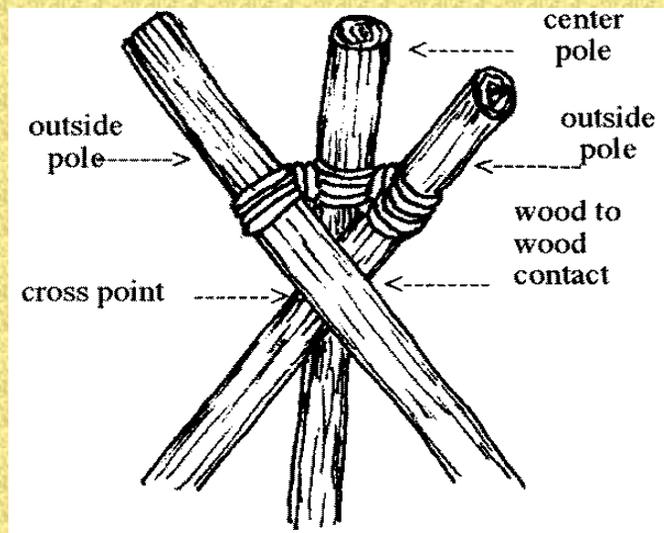


**[NOTE]**

The practice of laying the center pole in the opposite direction to the outside poles creates several problems. When the poles are laid in opposite directions the wrappings must be put on loosely so that when the center pole is rotated to its proper position the lashing is tightened around the poles. If the wrappings are put on too tight, the rope is stretched causing damage to the rope fibers, therefore weakening the lashing. On the other hand, if the rope is wrapped too loosely, the lashing will not tighten enough when the center pole is rotated and the lashing will be able to slip along the length of the pole. Either way, the rope too loose or the rope too tight, a dangerous situation is created.

**Setting Up A Tripod -----**

Set up the tripod by crossing the outside poles so that the cross point of the poles is under the center pole. Crossing the outside poles under the center pole causes part of the load that is placed on the tripod to be taken up by the wood to wood contact of the poles.



**Narration ----- ( For Tripod Lashing Knotboard.)**

(1) Tie a clove hitch around one of the outside poles. (2) Secure the standing part by wrapping it around the running part. [NOTE] Wrapping the standing part around the running part prevents the clove hitch from slipping around the pole. If the clove hitch slips the lashing will loosen up from the inside. (3) Start the racked wrapping turns by weaving the rope between the poles. (4) Take a total of 5 to 7 wrapping turns. Pull each wrapping turn tight as it is made. [NOTE] The stiffness of the tripod lashing depends on the number and tightness of the wrapping turns. As the tightness of the wrapping turns or the number of wrapping turns increases, the stiffness of the tripod will increase. (5) Take the first frapping turn by taking the rope around the pole that the clove hitch was tied to, then between the outside pole and the center pole. (6) Take 3 frapping turns. Pull each frapping turn tight as it is made. (7) Start the second set of frapping turns by taking the rope across the center pole and reeving it between the second outside pole and the center pole. Take the second set of frapping turns in the opposite direction to the first set of frapping turns. [NOTE] Taking the second set of frapping turns in the opposite direction to the first set of frapping turns prevents the rope from crossing the wrappings at a diagonal. Unnecessary crossing of the rope increases friction between the strands of the rope making it difficult to tighten the lashing properly. (8) Take a total of 3 frapping turns. Pull each turn tight. (9) Take the first half hitch of the ending clove hitch around the second outside pole by taking the rope past the pole and then around the pole. (10) Work the half hitch tight so that it is locked against the lashing. [NOTE] See the narration for square lashing for instructions on working the half hitch tight. (11) Take the second half hitch of the ending clove hitch. (12) Work the half hitch tight to complete the ending clove hitch. [NOTE] If the clove hitch is not worked tight so that it is locked against the lashing the clove hitch will slip around the pole allowing the lashing to loosen. [NOTE] If very smooth rope is being used, a 3rd half hitch should be added to the clove hitch to insure that the lashing will stay in place.

---

## KNOTBOARD OF THE MONTH

# ARCHIVE

---



Home  
E-Mail



[Home](#)  
[E-Mail](#)

## KNOTBOARD OF THE MONTH

### TURK'S HEAD:

#### Description ----

Three strand braid worked in a continuous circle.

#### Use ----

- (1) As a decorative knot around a staff or railing.
- (2) Worked tight around a checked or cracked tool handle or canoe paddle to reinforce them.
- (3) As a neckerchief slide or wogal.

#### Comments ----

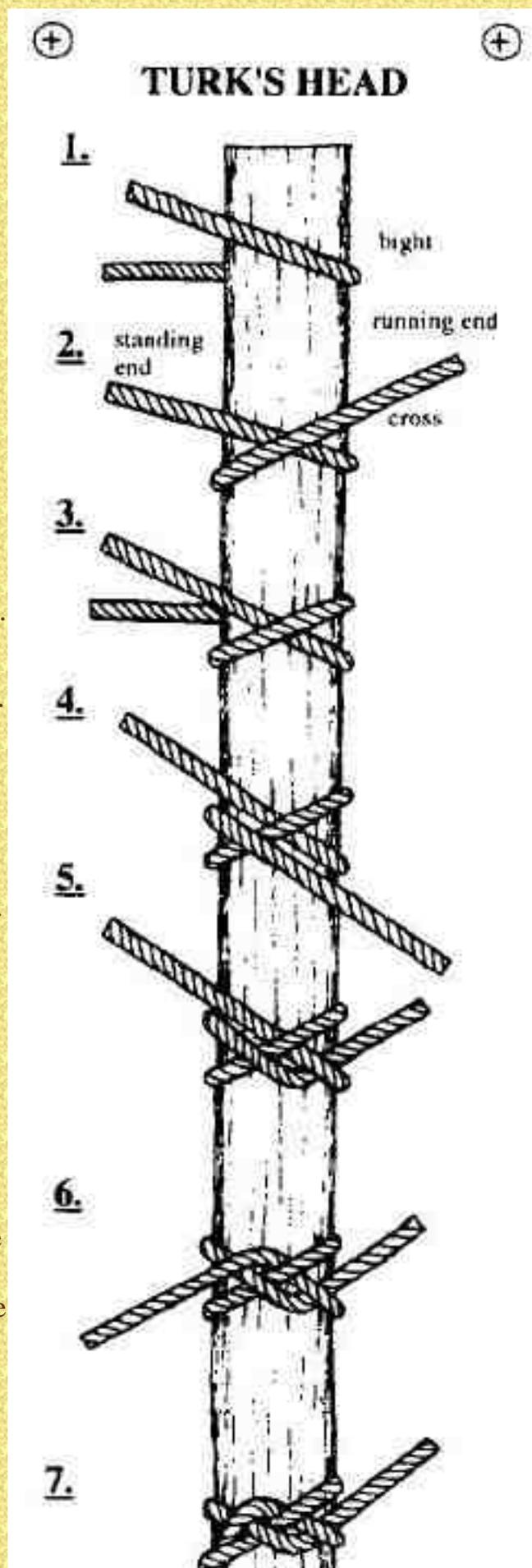
The form of Turks head shown here is a five crown Turk's head, this is only one of a group of knots that go by the name Turk's heads. The crown number is determined by counting the number of bights at the edge of the knot. To make a larger loop the, increase the size of the wraps made in steps 1 - 4 and then, at step 7 use three strand braiding to increase the number of crowns. The number of crowns can be increased by increments of three; so that the number of crowns in a larger loop can be 8, 11, 14, etc..The size of the finished Turk's head depends on the size of the rope used and the number of times the strand is chased.

#### Other Names ----

Three lead by five bight Turk's head, ordinary Turk's head.

#### Narration ----- (For Turk's head knotboard.)

- (1) Start at the center of the line, by taking a



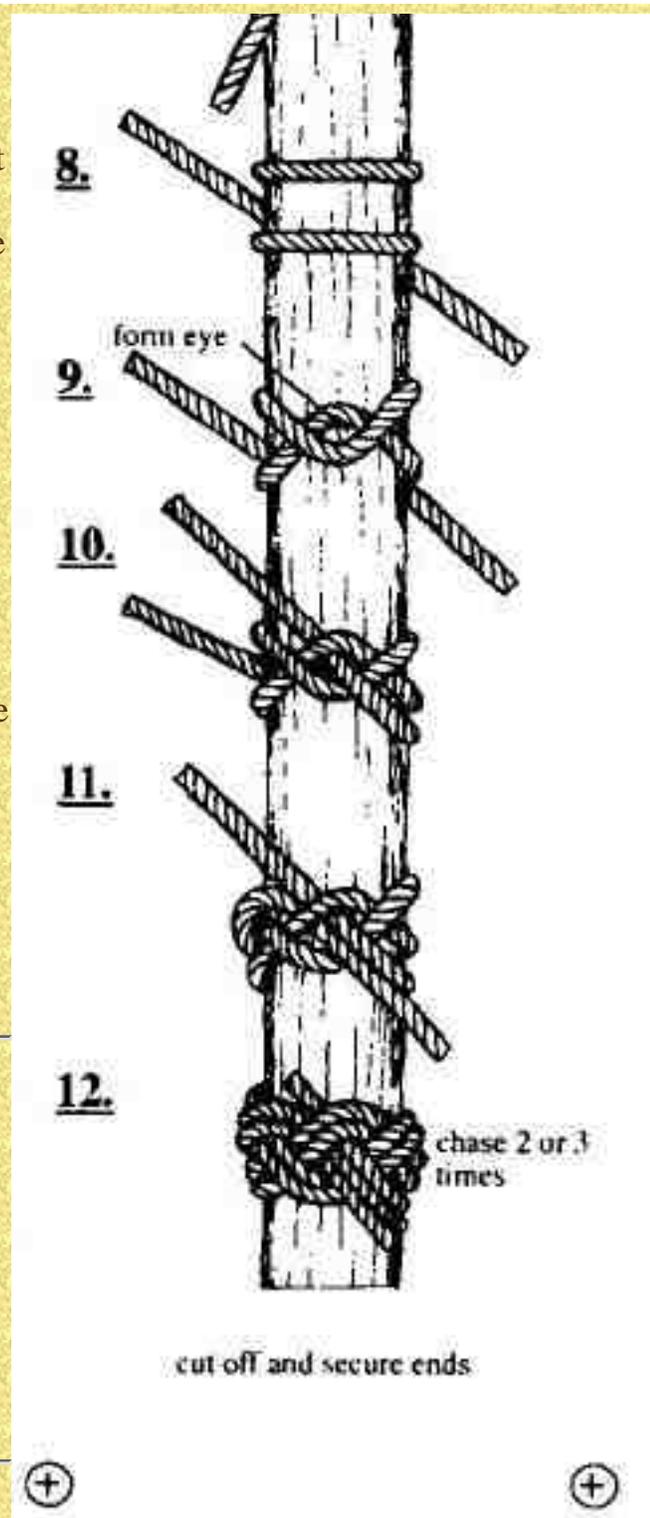
bight around an object (the fingers of the left hand work well) (2) Complete the round turn and cross the running end over the standing end. (3) Take a second bight around the object so that the running end is between the standing end and the first wrap. (4) Lay the running end across the first wrap then (5) tuck the running end under the standing end. (6) lay the standing end across the second wrap and (7) tuck it under the first wrap. (8) rotate the knot around the object so that you are looking at the opposite side. (9) Cross the second wrap over the first wrap. (10) Reeve the standing end through the eye formed between the two wraps. (11) Reeve the running end through the eye between the two wraps so that the ends are in opposite directions. (12) Chase, follow, the strand of the knot two or three times. Cut off and secure the ends.

[NOTE] To determine the length of line to use, wrap the line around the object four times for a single strand knot. Add three and one half wraps for each time you intend to chase the original strand.

## ANIMATED KNOT



## TURK'S HEAD KNOT

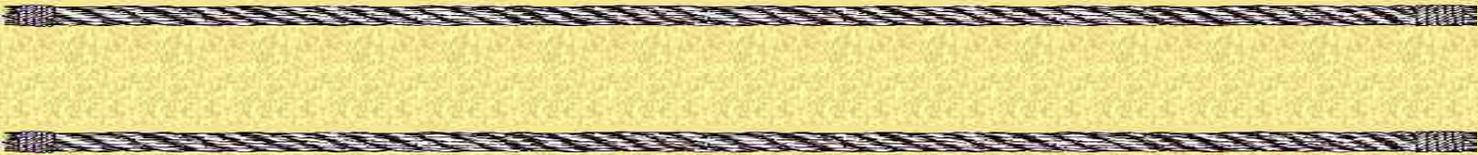
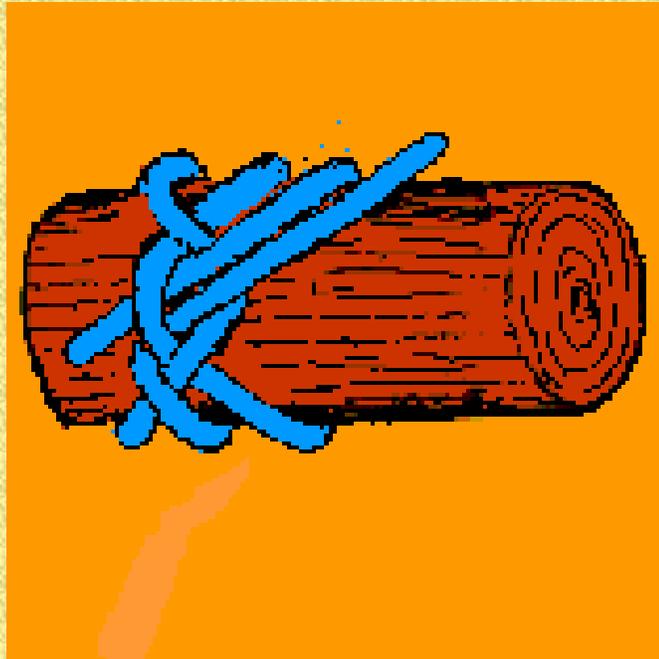




Home  
E-Mail

# TURK'S HEAD KNOT

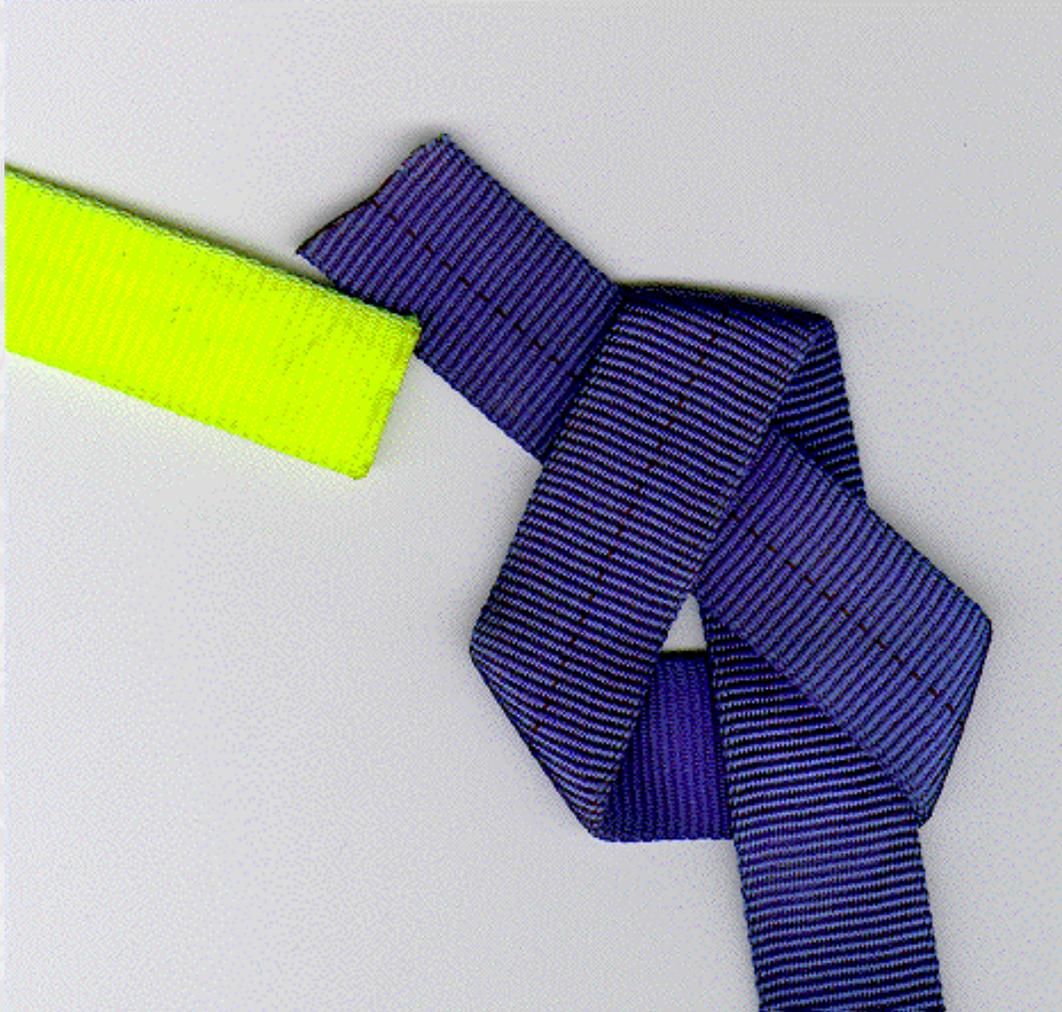
## RERUN ANIMATION

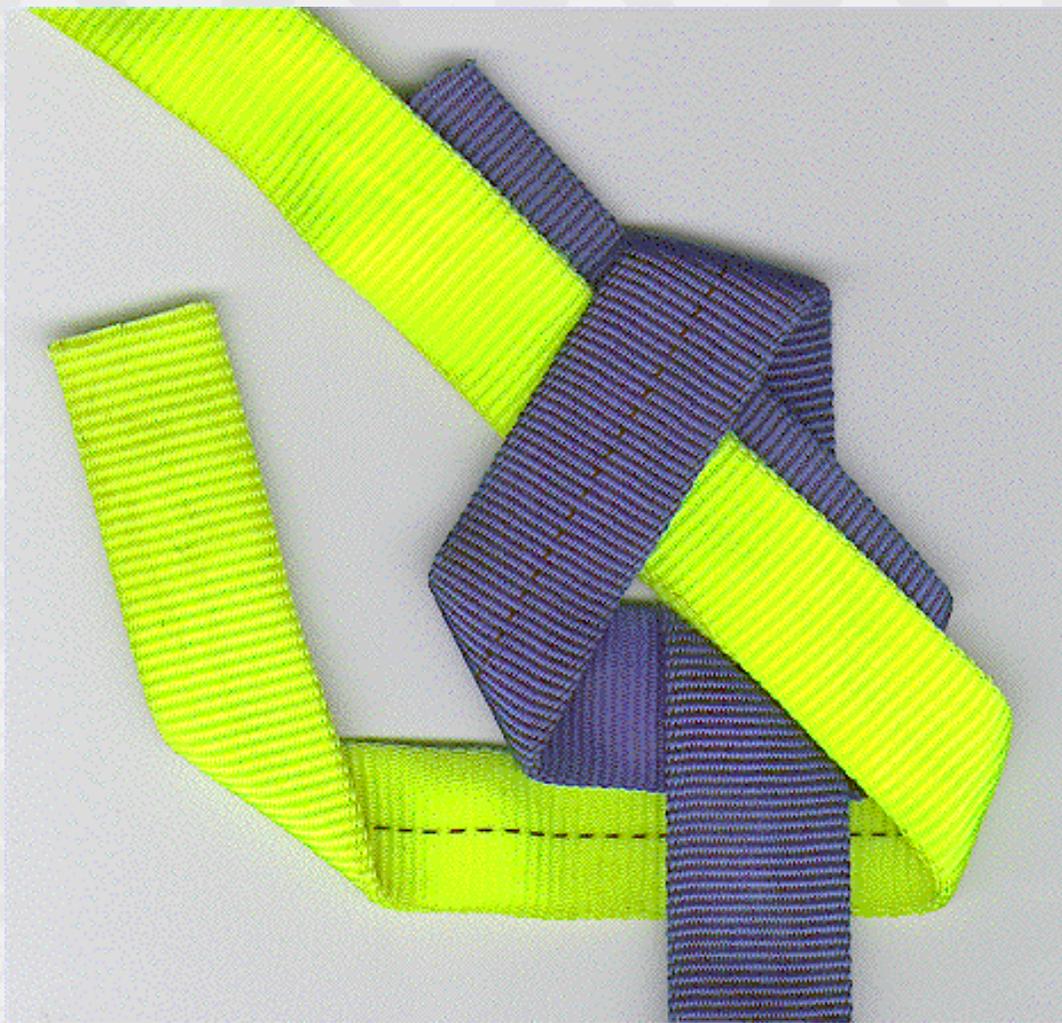


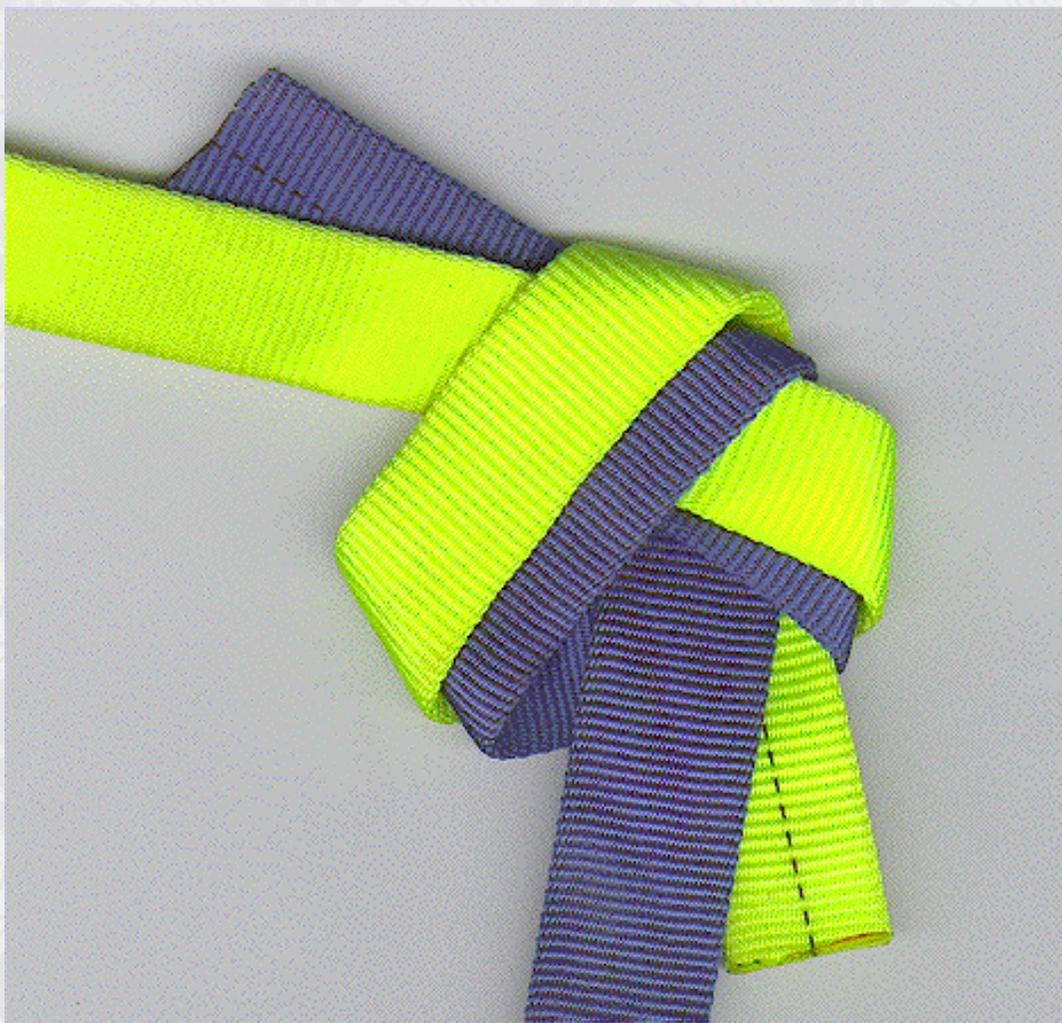
Home  
E-Mail

# Water Knot

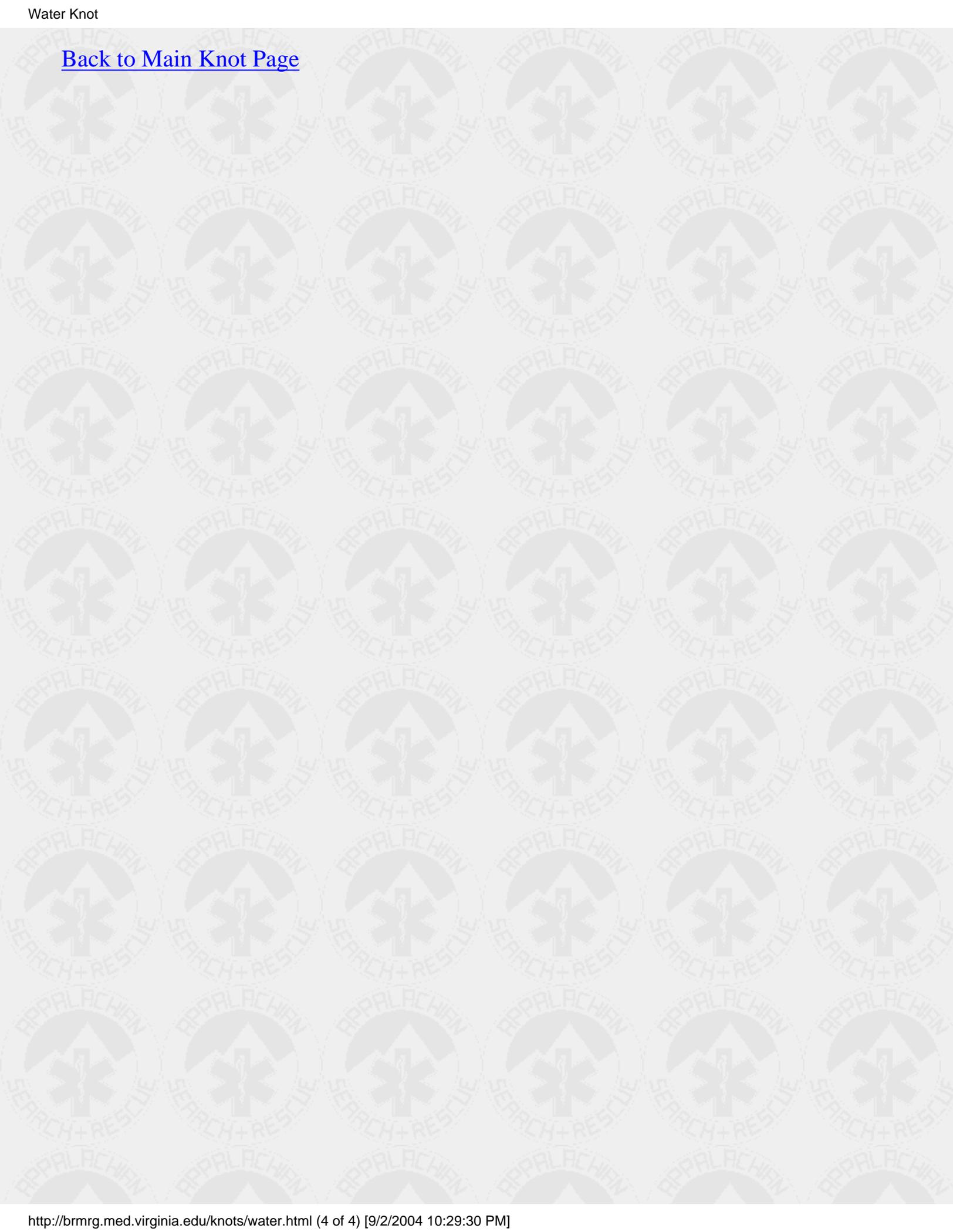
The water knot is arguably the strongest knot you can tie in webbing. It is essentially an overhand follow-through.







[Back to Main Knot Page](#)





## Home ARCHIVE

# KNOTBOARD OF THE MONTH

Each month there will be new knotboard and descriptive text displayed on this page.

**THIS MONTH'S IS THE :**

## WHIPPING:

### Description ----

Twine wrapped and secured to the end of a rope.

### Use ----

To prevent the fraying of the end of a rope.

### Comments ----

Even though "whipping" is done in several different ways, the finished "whippings" have similar appearance: the ends are secured under the turns, the length of the whipping is equal to the diameter of the rope, and all turns are parallel. Synthetic rope, rope made of plastic, should be whipped and fused to prevent the rope from fraying. Fusing helps to hold the whipping in place and the whipping helps to prevent the fused rope strands from braking apart.

### Narration ----- ( For Whipping Knotboard.)

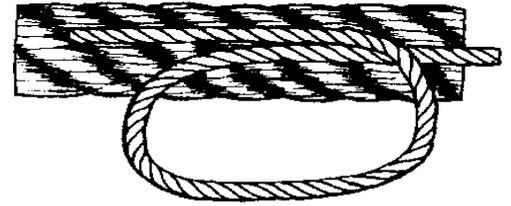
(1) Take a turn around the cleat and pull the line tight. (2) Complete a round turn around the cleat . (3) Place the line across the cleat. (4) Take a bight around one horn of the cleat. (5) Place the line across the cleat a second time. (6) Take a bight around the other horn of the cleat to form a figure eight around

+

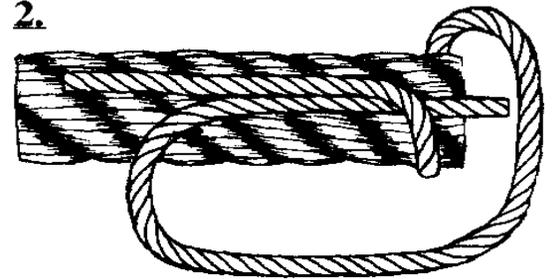
## WHIPPING

+

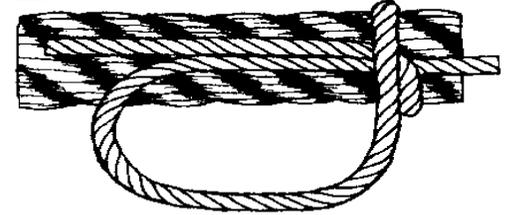
**1.** (12 inch twine)



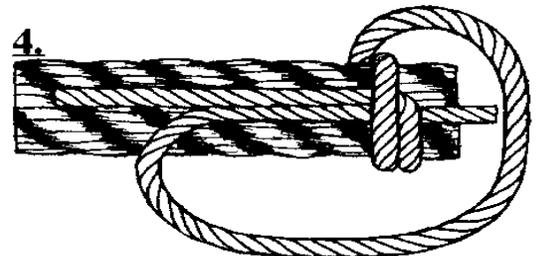
**2.**



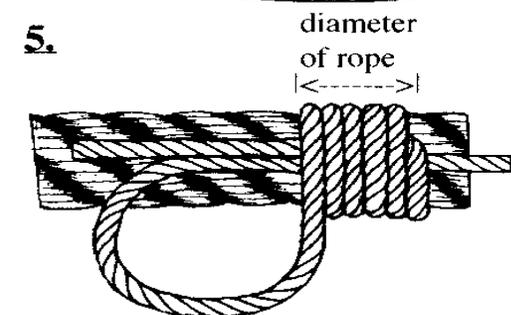
**3.**



**4.**



**5.**



**6.**



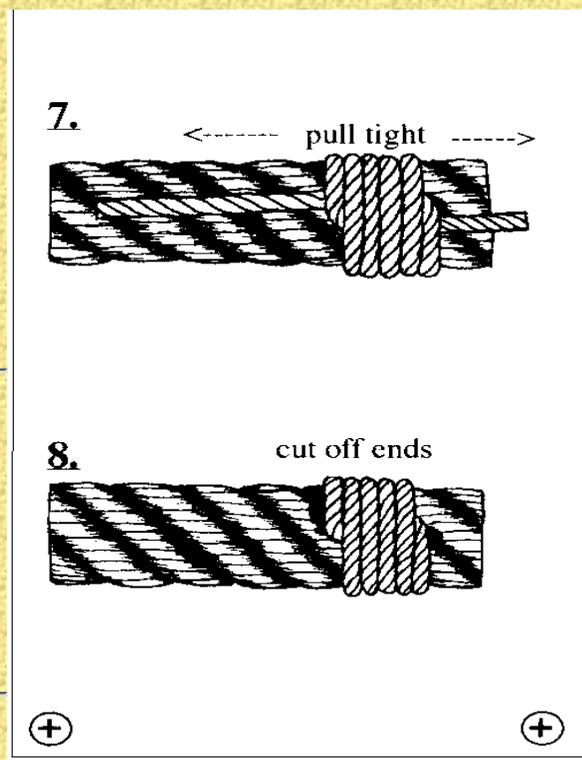
the horns of the cleat. (7) Repeat steps 3 through 6. (8) Form an underhand loop. (9) Place the eye of the underhand loop over the horn of the cleat. (10) Pull the underhand loop tight to form a half hitch around the horn of the cleat, this locks the rope in place.

---

## KNOTBOARD OF THE MONTH

# ARCHIVE

---



Home  
E-Mail

Hosted by 

 OPM NIGHT CLUB  
FORUM SHOPS IN CAESARS  
LAS VEGAS

a dj masterweb / sanford wallace production

**CLICK HERE**  
FOR FREE INVITATION SIGNUP!

[Check out the NEW Hotbot](#)

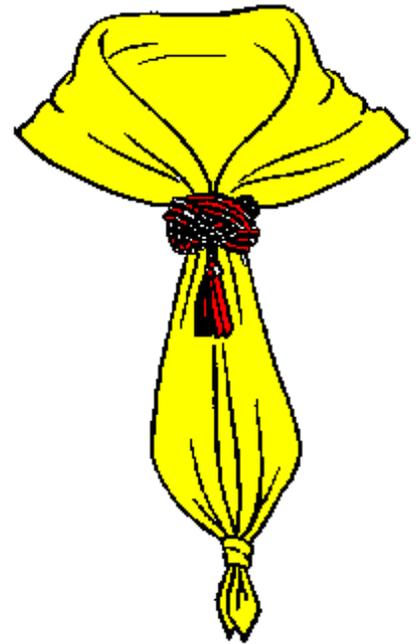
[Tell me when this page is updated](#)

 <b>RECYCLE-A-BIKE</b>	<b>BIKE SALE</b> 
---	--

## *Turk's Head Woggle, Page 1.*



## Turk's Head Woggle



made with plastic  
craftstrip

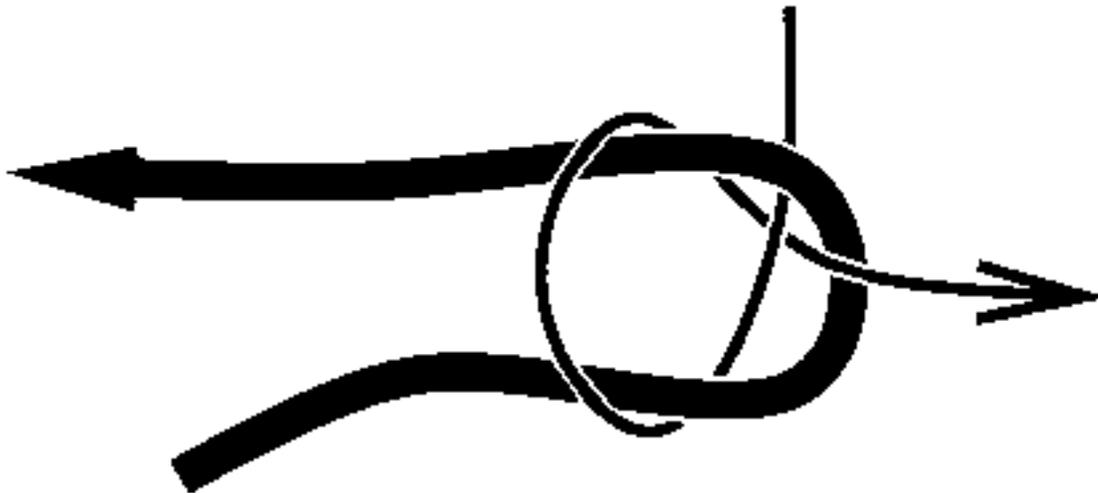
Here it is . . . the classic Turk's Head neckerchief slide! I made 3 or 4 of these during my youth. I used small rope and leather when I made mine. You could use plastic craftstrip to make one as well.

The directions on the following pages are from the BSA Craftstrip Braiding Projects pamphlet, available at your Scout HQ or through the BSA catalog. The instructions work for either rope, leather, or craftstrip.

If you intend to make the Turk's Head out of craftstrip, you'll need to create a craftstrip "braid" first. This involves another 15 steps and 20 figures. I don't have that kind of space on this home page. You'll need to purchase the Projects pamphlet for the detailed instructions.

[Go to Turk's Head Woggle, page 2.](#)

# Zászló~



Kötelek összekötése,  
különböző  
vastagságúaké is.  
Jónéhány más  
csomóban felismerhető  
egy-egy változata.

[<< Toldó1~](#) | [#eleje](#) | [index](#) | [levél](#) | [Bowlin >>](#)

Utolsó módosítás: 2002.09.26 23:41:34 CEST

# rec.crafts.knots FAQ

"to me the simple act of tying a knot is an adventure in unlimited space. a bit of string affords a dimensional latitude that is unique among the entities. for an uncomplicated strand is a palpable object that, for all practical purposes, possesses one dimension only. if we move a single strand in a plane, interlacing it at will, actual objects of beauty and utility can result in what is practically two dimensions; and if we choose to direct our strand out of this one plane, another dimension is added which provides opportunity for an excursion that is limited only by the scope of our own imagery and the length of the ropemaker's coil."

From The Ashley Book of Knots

by Clifford W. Ashley (see in books below)

---

## Table of Contents

1. [Netiquette](#)
  2. [Books](#)
  3. [Periodicals](#)
  4. [Organizations](#)
  5. [Internet Resources](#)
  6. [Sources for things](#)
  7. [Where can I find...?](#)
  8. [Miscellaneous questions](#)
  9. [Contributors](#)
- [Table of Contents](#)

### 1. **Netiquette in rec.crafts.knots (r.c.k)**

The usual standards of newsgroup netiquette apply in rec.crafts.knots. We suggest reading the group for a while before your first posting to see what sort of posts are common here. The usual rule of no-binaries (picture files, programs, etc.) applies. If you have a graphic file to share with the group, place it at a FTP or WWW (Web) site available to you and post an article in the group that describes where interested people may look for it. As a last resort, post it to one of the alt.binaries... groups (there **are** some general purpose a.b... groups) and post your pointer in r.c.k; we suggest putting 'KNOT' in the Subject to enable others to find it easily.

If you are **unable** to place a graphics file related to a posting in rec.crafts.knots at your own or a friend's Web or FTP site, you may be able to arrange temporary hosting from some other person who has an interest in knots. See [Resources](#) below.

[Table of Contents](#)

## 2. Books

Please send entries

1. The Ashley Book of Knots by Clifford W. Ashley  
Doubleday (1944) \$45; in its 35th printing  
This is the "must-have" book of knotting. Ashley's lucid style, clear drawings, background materials, and comprehensive coverage make this the book from which to learn knot tying. [pwm]
2. Symmetric Bends: How to Join Two Lengths of Cord by Roger Miles, Autumn 1995, 150 pages (16 pages of color photos) US\$32, £22 World Scientific Publishing Co., Inc., <http://www.wspc.co.uk> 1060 Main Street, River Edge, NJ 07661, USA FAX: 201-487-9656 Phone 800-227-7562

This book received a well-deserved glowing review by Lester Copestake in the Dec issue of Knotting Matters. I haven't finished reading it as yet, but have spent several happy hours confirming his lattice diagrams. Some of the topics covered by Roger Miles are: Elementary Symmetric Bends, Geometry and Planar Representations, Topological Considerations and a Theorem, Practical Considerations and Triple Symmetry, Sixty (60!) Symmetric Bends (diagrams and colored photos of each) and How to Invent Symmetric Bends.

The book provides a layman's window into the mind-bogling mathematics that has evolved out of knot theory (and won a Field's Medal (Nobel-equiv) in 1990 for Vaughan Jones). Dyslectic knot tyers will love this book, as the diagrams and photos are word-less.[dbl] Additional description is at:

<http://www.wspc.com.sg/books/mathematics/2686.html>. [pg]

3. Forget Me Knots by Karl Rohnke, 1992, ISBN 0-8403-7138-1  
Kendal/Hunt Publishing Company  
2460 Kerper Blvd.  
P.O. Box 539  
Dubuque, IA 52004-0539

This 67 page, spiral-bound handbook is designed for aspiring young climbers: "a gentle reminder of the knots, ropes and lore used on a challenge rope course." Safety and security are the theme in this fun-book. The illustrations by Plyn Williams include a couple of corner-series which animate the rope on its way to becoming a knot as you riffle through the page corners (a poor man's Quick-time movie for the computer-deprived). Interestingly, this book says nothing about bends, probably because of legal implications.[dbl]

4. The History and Science of Knots edited by J C Turner (Univ. Waikato) & P van de Griend (Aarhus Univ.); May 1996; ISBN 981-02-2469-9; US\$78 / £54  
A collection of essays with sections on the prehistory and antiquity, non-European traditions, working knots, the developing science of knots, and decorative and other aspects of knots. A more complete description is at:  
<http://www.wspc.com.sg/books/mathematics/2940.html>. [pg]
5. The Klutz Book of Knots by John Cassidy; 1985; ISBN 0-932592-10-4  
Klutz Press, Palo Alto, California [rp]  
This spiral bound book shows step by step how to tie 24 useful hitches, ties, wraps and knots. It comes with practice cord and has thick stiff pages with holes and slots for practicing the knots right next to its drawings.
6. The Knot Book by Geoffrey Budworth; 1985; ISBN 0-8069-7944-5  
Published by Sterling Publishing Co., Inc. New York  
This is a paperback book of about 100 knots chosen for their usefulness. This book is distinguished by its well drawn illustrations, well conceived text and scarcity of errors. Although the author is one of the foremost authorities on knots, he also includes knowledge from other high achievers on this subject. [rp]
7. The Morrow Guide to Knots by Mario Bigon and Guido Regazzoni, translated by Maria Piotrowska; 1982; ISBN 0-688-01226-4  
William Morrow and Company, Inc. ( American edition; Italian original 1981).  
This 255 page paperback contains about 80 knots covering a variety of uses. Its unique features include 647 color photographs, multiple ways to tie the bowline and various gems not usually found in a book this size. The photos are laid out with great care to illustrate the knot tying process. [rp]

### [Table of Contents](#)

## 3. Periodicals

1. Het Knoopeknauwertje -- a Dutch knotting magazine. For more details e-mail: [Pieter van de Griend <vdgriend@euronet.nl>](mailto:Pieter.van.de.Griend@euronet.nl)  
[An online, English language version of Het Knoopeknauwertje](#) [pg]
2. The Australian Whipmaker -- Australian; AU\$36 for overseas members; see AWPO under Organizations for address. [pg]

### [Table of Contents](#)

## 4. Organizations

1. IGKT -- International Guild of Knot Tyers  
(need detailed info for this item)
2. IGKT:NAB -- International Guild of Knot Tyers: North American Branch
  - [International Guild of Knot Tyers: North American Branch - info](#) [pwm]
  - [International Guild of Knot Tyers: North American Branch - application](#) [pwm]
3. AWPO -- The Australian Whipmakers and Plaiters Organization [pg]  
12 Faireyland Road  
Kuranda  
Queensland 4872 Australia  
phone: (070) 937474  
fax: (070) 514484

### [Table of Contents](#)

## 5. Internet Resources

1. [International Guild of Knot Tyers](#) (these don't seem to be getting updates) [dbo]
2. [International Guild of Knot Tyers: North American Branch](#) (these don't seem to be getting updates) [dbo]
3. [International Guild of Knot Tyers: North American Branch - info](#) [pwm]
4. [International Guild of Knot Tyers: North American Branch - application](#) [pwm]
5. [International Guild of Knot Tyers: Texas Branch](#) [gcs]
6. [Army Field Manual](#) on rigging; in-progress (sometimes not available); contains sections on ropes, knots, splices and more; opening page is reasonably sized, but chapters are large. [ep]
7. [Knot Books on the Web](#): WWW references to books. [ep]
8. [Ropers Knot Page](#) [ep]
9. [Ropers Knot Links](#) [ep]
10. [Suber's Knots on the Web](#) [ps]
11. [Animated Knots -- from a UK Scout troop](#) [df]
12. [International String Figure Association -- from cat's cradle on up](#) [pg]
13. Jack Keene's list of links to web pages with [Rope and Knot Strength](#) information. [jk]
14. If you are **unable** to provide a web or FTP site for a graphics file related to a posting in rec.crafts.knots, you may be able to arrange for temporary hosting from someone listed here. Send them mail to ask how they want to set it up.
  - Peter Suber [<peters@earlham.edu>](mailto:peters@earlham.edu)

have a look at Peter's [Gallery](#) to find out how to submit an image file.

## [Table of Contents](#)

### 6. Sources

1. [The Knot Shoppe](#) Supplies: para cord in different colors.
2. Foodrope Knots: Books on knotting. [ep]  
Des & Liz Pawson  
501 Wherstead Road  
Ipswich, Suffolk, IP2 8LL

## [Table of Contents](#)

### 7. Where Can I Find...?

1. What are the best sources/references for engineering data on ropes and knots?  
For several years, I have been looking for raw data on breaking strengths and creep rates under steady and cyclic loads. There must be a government agency (or several) concerned with rope and knot standards (e.g., parachute bureau), but I haven't found one.[dbl]
2. [Where can I find a particular knot on the Web](#) Ropers Knot Index [ep]

## [Table of Contents](#)

### 8. Miscellaneous Questions

#### **I've heard that many knot books have errors in them. Why is that and how do I find a book without errors?**

Knot books sometimes have errors because the books the author referenced have errors. The most common error is misnaming, though sometimes the illustrations or the recommended uses are incorrect, which can be dangerous. The books reviewed on this page are generally reliable, and other knotting web sites sometimes include book reviews.[rp]

#### **I keep seeing ABOK mentioned. What does that mean?**

Ashley Book Of Knots. It is usually followed by a number to indicate a particular knot in his book.[rp]

## **What is a good book for beginners to learn knotting who don't want to learn a squizzilion knots?**

The Klutz book of Knots reviewed in this FAQ is an excellent book with only 24 knots.[rp]

## **I have heard that the square knot (also called the reef knot) can be dangerous, is that true?**

Yes, It should never be used as a bend (to connect two pieces of rope for the purpose of making a longer rope). This knot often slips when used this way and has caused injuries and deaths.[rp]

## **Why would someone want to learn knots when bungee cords and straps are so easy to use?**

A length of rope and the knowledge of a few knots make for infinitely versatile connections and lashings. It's never a bad idea to have some around to fill in for when the bungees and straps are too awkward or wrong for the job.[rp]

## **Why would someone want to learn to put whipping on a rope when you can just use tape?**

There are many activities where it helps to know whipping, like the increasingly popular practice of making and fixing your own fishing poles, or for decorative reasons.[rp]

## **Why do I always see fishing knots include their strength, but not other knots?**

Fishing is usually done with line of very limited strength (especially in competitions) and the goal is to use knots that weaken it as little as possible. For most non fishing uses, a few percentage points of strength is not as important as security, being untied easily or whatever else your job may require.[rp]

## **How can you get a knot to hold in these new slippery synthetic ropes? Don't they just come undone?**

Sometimes knots come loose because they were not worked down correctly. All knots must be worked down snug and proper for maximum reliability. It is also important to choose the correct knot for the job. Knots should be tested to see when they hold, slip

or jam when tied in different ropes. Other options include securing the working end with a half hitch, overhand or multiple overhand knot, or seizing.[rp]

### **What does IGKT mean?**

The International Guild of Knot Tyers. The IGKT is open to anyone interested in knotting (whether expert or simply hoping to learn from others). For more information see their web pages in the Internet resources section above.[rp]

### **I sometimes see safety warnings about some knots, especially concerning children, why is that?**

Loop knots that slip make dangerous nooses. Children like to play hangman with slip loops. There have been many deaths as a result. Toddlers like to put things around their neck and have even died from playing with mini blind cord. Many parents cut mini blind cords short so that young children cannot reach them.[rp]

### **When I was young I remember a relative who used to tie a really useful knot. Is there anyway I could find out what that was?**

Many knot books organize the knots by use, or include a table listing them that way. If you can remember how or what the knot was used for that might help your search.[rp]

### **I know there is more than one way to tie a tie, but where do I find out how?**

The general knot pages listed above have a number of links to instructional pages for tying ties.[rp]

### **Every time I try and carry furniture or boxes on the top of my car, they have to call out the national guard to help clean up the mess on the highway. Is there a good way to secure something like that?**

Though it is never recommended to carry items on top of a car with no roof rack, many people do it. (I have, but don't tell anybody.) The way it's usually done is to make a small loop in one end of a rope and run the other end through the inside of the car while the doors are open (but not through the windows), and then over the items on top and back through the small loop. If the resulting wrap is pulled tight with a truckers hitch the items on the roof will be pulled tightly down on the roof (though not necessarily securely). You may want to run more than one of these loops. When the doors are closed the lines will be pulled even tighter. The cargo should also be secured with ropes to the front and back bumpers if possible.[rp]

## **Half the time I see someone using a tarp on the highway, it looks like a wreckage scene from the movie Waterworld. Why is that?**

A tarp under wind pressure suffers the forces of a net, airplane wing and a whip all at once. Care should be taken to keep it from behaving like a flag or a kite. All the corners should be tied down so that it cannot be move in any direction. Extra crossing ropes would not be a bad idea, and all cargo underneath should be secured independently of the tarp, to keep the tarp from having to do the job of a net. Since it is easy to underestimate the forces of wind on a tarp, highway travelers will continue to entertain (or frighten) us.[rp]

## **Why does it seem that for some knots nobody can agree on a name?**

Use by different hobbies, professions, languages and cultures make multiple names for some knots inevitable. Some people use the number of the knot in Ashley's book (ABOK ###) to clarify communications.[rp]

## **How can I tell if a knot is safe and can hold a load?**

Always practice with and test a knot before trusting it. Working a knot down to its proper snug form is just as important as tying it correctly. Also, remember that many knots will reduce the breaking strength of rope to about 40% to 60%. [rp]

## **How long have people been using knots.**

Egyptians used them, Vikings used them, and according to knot historian and researcher Pieter van de Griend, they are "man's oldest technological achievement, possibly even predating the discovery of fire." [rp]

## **How many knots are there and can you patent them?**

Many books say there are about 4000 in the literature, probably because Clifford Ashley has nearly that many in his knot book. There are actually infinitely many variations. You can't patent a knot but Clifford Ashley said he patented # 3028 in his book, which is a sinnet (braided cordage).[rp]

## **If you think you have discovered a new knot but you are not sure, how do you find out?**

Because so much knotting knowledge is lost to history, you may never know for sure.

But the first step for most people is to see if it is in Ashley's book (See book review section above). If it isn't and you're still curious, post a link to a picture of it on this newsgroup. There are some very knowledgeable knot tyers who monitor rec.crafts.knots. Also, one of the reasons for the establishment of the International Guild of Knot Tyers is to serve as an authoritative body for consulting purposes. [rp]

### **What is the best knot?**

People can be very opinionated about knots. But it's good to remember that a knot that is good for one purpose is not necessarily good for another. Many experienced knot tyers never cease to try out new discoveries and update their repertoire.[rp]

### **What is the worst knot?**

There are many opinions about this too so here's mine; use a square knot to hang your bait bucket over the pier and you will be watching it float away.[rp]

### **I get lost half the time when I am trying to follow a knot diagram, what can I do?**

Some people work better from written directions than from diagrams, so you might try that. Here are some other tips: try a different book, try a different web page, try making other knots of similar type, try different rope or cord, try pinning the rope on a cork board, try photocopying and enlarging the diagram, try turning the diagram in a different direction, try drawing it yourself, ask someone to help you in person and last but not least -- ask for help from rec.crafts.knots. [rp]

### **Does it take 4 years of post doctorate work to learn how to do a good looking splice like you see on dock ropes?**

Eye splicing is simple but some book diagrams and descriptions are tricky to learn from. Try some of the tips from the previous question. [rp]

### **If a rope has a sheath, how can you tell if the center might be damaged?**

There is no easy way to be sure so if you suspect it is damaged it should never be used for climbing or rescue. One test is to tie its length under tension and feel for defects.[rp]

### **What ever happened to cotton rope and where can I find some?**

Many of the uses for cotton rope are being handled admirably by synthetic ropes. Still it is the rope of choice for magicians and horseman, so you might try their shops. Magicians remove the core of cotton braid to facilitate sliding knots. Cotton rope is less likely to "burn" when pulled through the hands and prevents rope burns if a horse should get tangled when tied. It also makes a spiffy dog chew.[rp]

**I've heard that some animals can tie knots, is that true? And if so, are any of them members of the IGKT.**

Gorillas tie grannies and square knots to hold saplings down in their nests. The hagfish ties itself in an overhand knot, and the weaver bird ties a number of knots. I didn't see any animals listed in the membership handbook, but the IGKT is open to anyone interested in knotting (whether expert or simply hoping to learn from others). [rp]

**A neighbor of mine puts half a dozen extra twists and loops and half knots on his knots when he secures gear in his pickup. He says that it is necessary to make it secure. Is that true?**

No. It will just make it impossible to untie in a hurry if he needs to. The same applies to people who "bury the cleat" when docking a boat; they must assume there will never be a dock fire.[rp]

**A friend of mine always pulls out a lighter and starts torching whenever he finishes a knot. Is that necessary?**

Some people like to flame the working end of a knot after it is finished to swell up the end in the hope that it won't pull back into the knot. It is more important to use the correct knot and work it down properly. If that's not enough maybe another knot should be used.[rp]

**Nylon 3-strand rope unravels at just short of the speed of light. What gives?**

Nylon is a slippery material and although it's stable in 3-strand form, it will unravel easily if the ends are not whipped, taped or otherwise secured. One trick for cutting it neatly is to tape the spot you want to cut first, and then cut in the middle of the tape. Then you will automatically have two taped ends.[rp]

**I am usually concerned about knots being secure but I have heard that some knots are stronger than others. Is that important?**

Synthetic ropes are very strong. It's common to use a rope much stronger than needed

just to be thick enough to "get a grip." If you are using a knot that is correct for a given purpose then other knots will probably not be more than 10% or 20% stronger. Splicing however can be 40 to 100% stronger than some knots.[rp]

### **Every time I put a knot under a load, I can never get the \*!! thing untied. Isn't there a better way?**

Knots vary in how easily they untie after being stressed. For example; the bowline unties easily after a load, but the double half hitch can be ornery. Many knots are still secure when the last tuck is with the end folded over, like in shoelaces. This can make release much easier. Many knots known for their quick release abilities behave poorly under a load -- the highwayman's hitch can give way, the mooring hitch can jam. [rp]

### **I found your FAQ page, but I can't find your newsgroup on my server. What gives?**

Different systems need different solutions. Some people have attained access through DejaNews at <http://www.dejanews.com/> [rp]

### **I have heard that there is a computer program that makes knots. Is that true?**

Yes, it's called KnotPlot and it makes astounding images and performs many mathematical operations on knots. There are several links to it on pages referenced from this page.[rp]

### **A friend told me that nobody uses knots on a sailboat anymore, is that true?**

No, there are four or five knots that are used regularly plus many more for special tasks and emergencies.[rp]

In a recent, informal survey on the newsgroup rec.boats.cruising, asking about the necessary knots for the recreational sailor, boaters submitted 20 useful knots.

By far the most frequently mentioned (3 to 5 responses each) were the square (reef) knot, clove hitch, figure 8, bowline, sheet bend, and rolling hitch. Buntline hitch, alpine butterfly, and round turn and two half hitches each got 2 votes, while mentioned only once were Ashley's bend, overhand, constrictor, carrick, monkey chain, cleat hitch, monkey's fist, prusik, bowline on a bight, double sheet bend, and trucker's hitch.

(Amazing, not one anchor bend or becket bend, yet virtually every book of boater's knots features these!)[dh]

## **How do you get out a knot that is jammed?**

I have leveraged some open with a Marlinespike, but if all else fails, try rec.knives.[rp]

## **I know that I am tying my fishing knots right, but they still break too often. What's happening?**

When a knot is pulled down in fishing line it saws harshly against itself. If it is not wetted it will cut itself badly and then break under light strain. Also, you might want to test if the line is brittle by tying an overhand knot in it and seeing how easy it breaks (if the line is OK it should hold to about 50% line strength).[rp]

## **Where can I find some games for my boy scout troop to play that involves knots?**

Many knot books have a recreational section in them. There are also many scout links on some of the pages referenced on this page.[rp]

## **I can read postings on the newsgroup, but I can't seem to post anything.**

DejaNews has a search engine for computer and technical questions at:  
<http://www.dejanews.com/>[rp]

## **I was reading a message on the rec.crafts.knots newsgroup, but now it won't show it.**

Some news browsers will not show a message again after it has been marked "read". In Netscape 2 and 3, you can chose "show all messages" from the Options menu. Also, see question above. Sorry Peter, I haven't had a chance to look up the menu Items on MSIE yet.[rp]

## **I'm concerned that if I post to a newsgroup, I will get a lot of junk mail. Is that true?**

I received a couple of junk emails (spam) soon after joining rec.crafts.knots, but not enough to be a bother. The worst newsgroup for getting spam is news.admin.net-abuse.email ...since the spammers troll it for revenge. Some people put the letters NOSPAM in their return email address. That way other newsgroup members can still contact you by taking out these letters, but some automatic engines for collecting email addresses from newsgroups will be fooled.[rp]

## I heard that everybody likes knot puns. If I hear a new one should I post it?

Try alt.humor.puns. But if you think it is so good that knot tyers MUST see it, then maybe post a link to it instead of posting it directly so there will not be any unintended victims (no pun intended).[rp]

### [Table of Contents](#)

## 9. Contributors to the FAQ

[dbl]

Dick Blackmer <[easy@wizvax.net](mailto:easy@wizvax.net)>

[dbo]

David Bowie <[dbowie@webshirt.com](mailto:dbowie@webshirt.com)>>

[df]

Doug Fry <[br816@freenet.toronto.on.ca](mailto:br816@freenet.toronto.on.ca)>

[dh]

Dwight Hall <[dwihall@ix.netcom.com](mailto:dwihall@ix.netcom.com)>

[ep]

Ed Prins <[erpprs@dds.nl](mailto:erpprs@dds.nl)>

[gcs]

Gary Sessions <[gcsessions@netgazer.net](mailto:gcsessions@netgazer.net)>

[jk]

Jack Keene <[knotter@juno.com](mailto:knotter@juno.com)>

[pg]

Pieter van de Griend <[vdgriend@euronet.nl](mailto:vdgriend@euronet.nl)>

[ps]

Peter Suber <[peters@earlham.edu](mailto:peters@earlham.edu)>

[pwm]

Peter W. Meek <[pwmeek@mail.msen.com](mailto:pwmeek@mail.msen.com)>

[rp]

Randy Penn <[rlpenn@gte.net](mailto:rlpenn@gte.net)>

[Table of Contents](#)

---

## Suggestions for entries needed

I can always use suggestions for entries in all of the sections, especially 'Books', 'Periodicals' and 'Organizations'. Please include e-mail and surface-mail addresses, phone/fax numbers, dues or subscription costs, and anything else pertinent. Please also include which information about yourself to include in the contributors list.

Send suggestions to [<pwmeek@mail.msen.com>](mailto:pwmeek@mail.msen.com)

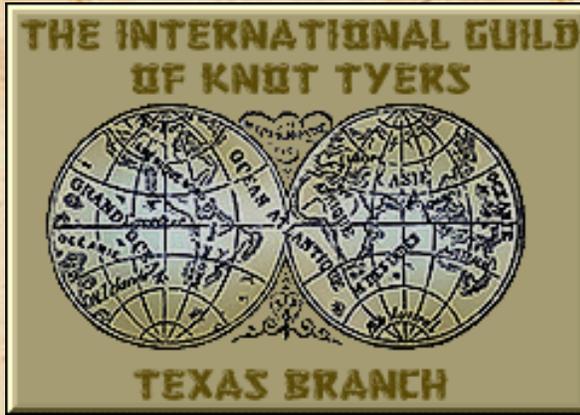
---

Created: Fri 7-Feb-1997

Modified: 12/29/98 12:40:06 PM

By: Peter W. Meek <pwmeek@mail.msen.com>

[Send comments or suggestions](#)



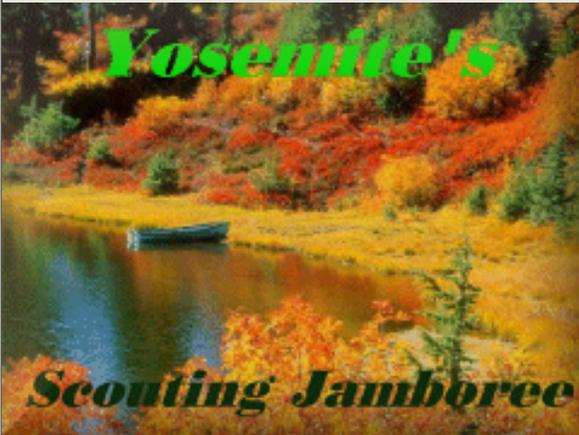
***"Tying a knot is an adventure in unlimited linear space." Clifford W. Ashley***

[\[Home\]](#) [\[Instructions\]](#) [\[Contacts\]](#) [\[Related Links\]](#)

[\[Bookshop\]](#) [\[Graphics\]](#)



The Author is a Member of

	<p>This <u>Yosemite's Scouting Jamboree</u> site is owned by <u>Rags</u></p>
	<p><a href="#">[Previous 5 Sites   Previous   Next   Next 5 Sites   Random Site   List Sites]</a></p> <p>Are you a Scouting Website in GeoCities' Yosemite neighborhood</p>

and  
interested in  
joining this  
webring?  
Contact  
RingMaster.

# Not Found

The requested URL was not found on this server.

---

Apache Server at webshirt.com

[Startseite](#)[Begriffe](#)[Knoten & Steke](#)[Festmacherknoten](#)[Zierknoten](#)[Spleisse](#)[Krawatten](#)[Knotenindex](#)[Bücher](#)[Fanshop](#)[Forum](#)[andere Knotenseiten](#)[Links >>>](#)

# Klabautermanns Knotentafel



## Die letzten Artikel:

- Knoten:**  
[neuer Knotenspass mit Scoubidou](#)  
27.07.04  
[Ausstellung geht nach Hamburg](#)  
12.07.04  
[Ausstellung in Flensburg](#)  
01.07.02  
[Knotentafel in Englisch](#)  
01.06.02  
[In eigener Sache](#)  
15.01.02  
**IGKT:**  
[4. Gildentreffen in Bremen](#)  
10.05.04  
[IGKT Treffen in Bremen](#)  
01.03.04  
[Grosses Interesse in Duisburg](#)  
11.04.03  
[IGKT Treffen in Duisburg](#)  
20.03.03  
[IGKT Treffen in Flensburg](#)  
16.07.02

## Aktuelles auf den Knotentafeln

[\[Knotentafel\]](#) [\[Knoten-Archiv\]](#)

### [neuer Knotenspass mit Scoubidou](#)

Knoten



27.07.2004

Früher nannte man es Fancywork, heute Scoubidou. Früher knotete man mit Flechtschnüren und Seilen, heute knüpft man mit Plastikbändern. Wie auch immer man es nennt,

Knoten knüpfen war schon lange nicht mehr so aktuell wie heute. >> [weiterlesen](#)

geändert am 15.08.2004 von Matthias Böving

[Matthias Böving](#)

## Aktuelles von der 'International Guild of Knot Tyers'

[\[IGKT-Home\]](#) [\[IGKT-Archiv\]](#)

### [4. Gildentreffen in Bremen](#)

IGKT



10.05.2004 IGKT Mitglieder aus 5 Nationen trafen sich vom 7.5-9.5.2004 auf der "Segelschulschiff Deutschland" in Bremen-Vegesack. >> [weiterlesen](#)

geändert am 10.05.2004 von Webmaster

[Webmaster](#)

Werbung



[Gästebuch eintragen](#)  
[anschauen](#)

	<p>This <a href="#">IGKT--KnotTyers</a> site owned by <a href="#">Matthias Boeving</a>. [<a href="#">Previous 5 Sites</a>   <a href="#">Previous</a>   <a href="#">Next</a>   <a href="#">Next 5 Sites</a>   <a href="#">ListSites</a>] Find out how to join this ring. Go to the <a href="#">IGKT--KnotTyers Ring Homepage</a></p>
---	---

© Copyright 1998- 2003 by Matthias Böving  
[www.klabautermann.de](http://www.klabautermann.de)

[ausschluss](#)

*Impressum*

# KNOT KNOWLEDGE

## PHOTO-ILLUSTRATIONS

Twenty-three practical knots are presented with photographs of the steps involved in tying each knot. Every step is also described in text. It is not the function (yet) of Knot Knowledge to teach how to use these knots, so please do not use friction hitches for dangerous activities like climbing rope unless you have been properly trained. Knot Knowledge provides in its [lexicon](#) definitions of the few knot tying terms used in the text descriptions.

Clicking on a category shows all the knots within that category on one page. Clicking on the name of a knot shows just that knot.

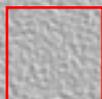
- [Single Loop Knots Page](#) (272K)
  - [Bowline](#)
  - [Figure 8 Loop](#)
  - [In Line Figure 8 Loop](#)
  - [Butterfly Knot](#)
- [Double Loop Knots Page](#) (297K)
  - [Spanish Bowline](#)
  - ["A Rigid Double Splayed Loop in the Bight" \(ABoK #1100\)](#)
  - [Triple Crown Knot](#)

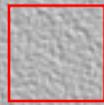
- [Bowline on a Bight](#)
- [Hitches Page](#) (324K)
  - [Clove Hitch](#)
  - [Constrictor Hitch](#)
  - [Anchor Bend](#)
  - [Bunt Line Hitch](#)
  - [Highwayman's Hitch](#)
- [Stopper Knots Page](#) (108K)
  - [Figure 8](#)
  - [Heaving Line Knot](#)
  - [Double Overhand Knot](#)
- [Bends Page](#) (118K)
  - [Sheet Bend](#)
  - [Full Carrick Bend](#)
- [Friction Hitches Page](#) (552K)
  - [Blake's Hitch](#)
  - [Kreutzklem](#)
  - [Prusik](#)
  - [Kleimheist](#)

- [Tautline Hitch \(aka Rolling Hitch\)](#)
  - [Sliding Sheet Bend](#)
- 

## Links:

- If you didn't find the knot you wanted on Knot Knowledge, try Peter Suber's [Knots on the Web](#). It's the most complete index of knot-related web sites on the web.
- [Roper's Knot Page](#) is Ed Prins' knot-related website index, which also has an [instruction section](#).
- Want to tie a rope halter for your horse? The Fiador (aka Theodore) knot can be found on [Part II](#) of Connie Nygard's [Rope Halter website](#).
- The trucker's hitch is a frequent request. It can be found on NetKnots.com's [Outdoor Knots](#) page.
- For information on using the Blake's Hitch in recreational tree climbing, check out Peter Jenkins' [Tree Climbers International](#) website.
- See the \*NEW\* knots on the [contributions page](#).





# Knot Knots



--This page is moving. Please update your bookmarks to [KnotKnotes](#)--

*"Every Scout ought to be able to tie a knot. To tie a knot seems a simple thing, and yet there are right and wrong ways of doing it, and Scouts ought to know the right way. Very often it happens that lives depend on a knot being properly tied." -- Baden-Powell .*

The business of rope and cordage represents one of humankind's oldest technical accomplishments. This skill coupled with the knots that hold it all together are part of the building blocks of civilization. Even in these times of bungee cords and Velcro a bit of cord tied properly can do a better job.

While this might seem a trivial pursuit to some, this knowledge is shared and prized among Scouts, campers, sailors, climbers, craftsmen and many more in their own special applications. There are knots for both function and decorative needs.



STATISTICS Since  
19APR97

Page updated  
29SEP02

<< What's  
newest?

*If you have comments and links you want to share with other knotters... please sign my guestbook.*



[View My Guestbook](#)

[Sign My Guestbook - Comments and Questions](#)

**For no frames follow the links below**

[Home](#)

[KnotKnotes](#)

[Knot Knots II](#)

[Knot Funny](#)

[Links & Resources](#)

[Comments?](#)

[Me?](#)



*Visit the  
Museum of Fancy Knots*

Site  
Meter

and 160,000 or so before that since 1997.

*Home Knotes Knotes 2 Knotfun Mail ?*



# Knots on the Web

[Artwork credits](#)

Unfortunately I'm much too busy with real, paying work nowadays to update *Knots on the Web* as often as I used to. Consequently, it has far too many dead links and omits far too many good, new sites. I wish I could say that this will change soon, but it won't. Until it does, please use what is still useful here and forgive the weak spots. If you have a specific knot need or question, and the surviving links here don't help you with it, then try posting your question to [rec.crafts.knots](#) or running a search on [Google](#). —Peter.

Welcome to my collection of knotting resources.

My major sections are on [Knot Tying](#), [Knot Theory](#), and [Knot Art](#). But knot lovers will understand that these distinctions are artificial. For example, a good practical knot is both a nugget of hard-won technology and a thing of beauty. Decorative knotting can be useful, and in any case requires uncommon dexterity and practical tying ability. Software developed to help mathematical knot theorists has produced some of the most beautiful knot images ever seen. So look at all three sections even if you think your interests are narrow. You might become happily entangled.

My fourth section is on [Knot Discussion](#). Use these discussion forums to find answers to your knotting questions and to help others who know less than you do.

My fifth section is on [Knot Software](#). You'll be surprised at how knotting software can make it easier for you to learn to tie knots, to explore the mathematical properties of knots, and to create stunning images of knots, including knots never seen on Earth.

My sixth section is on [Knot Videos](#). If written instructions and still photos don't explain the intricacies of knotting well enough for you, try some of these videos (or some instructional [software](#)).

My seventh section is on [Knot Books](#). Click on these links to buy knotting classics from Amazon.com. I've designed this section to aim for excellence, not completeness. It's limited to books I can personally recommend.

My eighth section is a [Knot Gallery](#) to display the images from [rec.crafts.knots](#), the only usenet newsgroup devoted to knots.

To find something in particular, wait for the whole page to load and then use the search function on your browser. This will cover all my sections except the [Knot Gallery](#), and my site [awards](#), which are in separate files.

Open links in new windows.

Stuck in a frame? [Click here](#) to escape.

If you are a frequent visitor, then press **reload** (on Netscape) or **refresh** (on Explorer) to make sure you get the latest version of the page, not the version cached on your hard drive from your last visit.

---



### Table of Contents Major Sections

	Knot Tying	Knot Theory	Knot Art
Links			
Discussion			
Software			
Videos			
Books			

These links will only work when the corresponding section of the file has loaded, which may take a minute.



### All sections

- [Knot tying](#)
  - [General](#)
  - [Animal-handling knots](#)
  - [Climbing and caving](#)
  - [Craft knots](#)
  - [Fishing knots](#)
  - [Necktie knots](#)
  - [Not knots](#)
  - [Rope and cordage](#)
  - [Rope rescue](#)

- [Sailing and boating](#)
- [Scouting](#)
- [Suppliers](#)
- [Surgical knots](#)
- **[Knot theory](#)**
  - [General](#)
  - [Bibliographies](#)
  - [Glossaries](#)
  - [Journals](#)
  - [Primers](#)
  - [Tables](#)
- **[Knot art](#)**
  - [General](#)
  - [Celtic knotwork](#)
  - [Fancy and decorative knots](#)
  - [Metalwork knots](#)
  - [Related arts](#)
- **[Knot discussion](#)**
  - [Discussion of knot tying](#)
  - [Discussion of knot theory](#)
  - [Discussion of knot art](#)
- **[Knot software](#)**
  - [Software for knot tying](#)
  - [Software for knot theory](#)
  - [Software for knot art](#)
- **[Knot videos](#)**
  - [Videos on knot tying](#)
  - [Videos on knot theory](#)
  - [Videos on knot art](#)
- **[Knot books](#)**
  - [Books on knot tying](#)
  - [Books on knot theory](#)
  - [Books on knot art](#)
- **[Knot gallery](#)**
- **[Awards](#)**



# Knot Tying

## Knot Tying Sub-Sections (more to come)

[General](#) | [Animal-handling knots](#) | [Climbing and caving knots](#) | [Craft knots](#) | [Fishing knots](#) | [Necktie knots](#) | [Not knots](#) | [Rope and cordage](#) | [Rope rescue](#) | [Sailing and boating](#) | [Scouting](#) | [Suppliers](#) | [Surgical knots](#)

**General.** Also see the [discussion forums](#), [software](#), [videos](#), and [books](#) on knot tying.

- [The International Guild of Knot Tyers](#). This is the organization to join if you are a serious knot tyer. Its journal, *Knottling Matters*, is the only English-language print journal devoted exclusively to knots.
  - The [North American Branch](#) has its own web page. The NAB publishes the InterKnot newsletter. (Interknot was formerly on the web, but the link is now dead. Does anyone know whether it's gone for good?)
  - The [Pacific Americas Branch](#) has its own own page.
  - The [Texas Branch](#) also has its own page.
  - There are many other branches [without their own web sites](#).
- [Het Knoopeknauwertje](#). The English-language International Edition of the Dutch knotting journal. *Apparently defunct. I'm still investigating what happened to it.*
- [Nylon Highway](#). The magazine of rope, climbing, and cave exploration. From the Vertical Section of the National Speleological Society. The back issues do not exist in electronic form. Recent issues are online but only accessible to paying subscribers
- [Ropers Knots Page](#). Maintained by Ed Prins. The most thorough page of links to knot sites, except possibly mine; but he includes some sites I omit and *vice versa*. Also available [in Dutch](#). Now contains an ambitious [Knot Index](#), an alphabetic list of links to every distinct knot discussed or illustrated on the web.
- [Brion Toss Rigging](#). The professional site of Brion Toss, the leading authority on ship rigging alive today. (I sell his knotting and rigging books in my [book section](#), below.) Includes a catalog, news, links, and [Spar Talk](#), his wonderful discussion board.
- [The Knotting Dictionary of Kännet](#). Maintained by Jan Korpegård. Under each knot, Korpegård gives the knot's name in 10 languages, and asks readers of other languages to send him the names of the same knots in their languages; he even provides the form for submitting the names electronically. Also available [in Swedish](#).
- [Knot Notes](#). A knot miscellany from Jack Keene that includes illustrations, instruction, links, lore, and a cartoon.
- [Knot Tying Resources](#). From Martin Combs. On request he'll send you an email with his list of sources for materials, tools, and books for knot tying. Also see his very good page of [books](#) on knots and tall ships.
- [Folsom's Knots and Knotting Page](#). A strong and interesting page of knots and knot



links. Covers the basic knots, 50 more advanced knots, animations, Turk's Heads, and knot knives, knot books, and more. From Alan Folsom.

- [Notable Knot Index](#). Thirteen knots, well-illustrated, and lots of useful related information. The site author wishes to remain anonymous except for his email address, which is on the front page.
- [Nudos](#)A very large number of well-illustrated knots, with their names in Spanish. From Hernan Murno. *This site has disappeared and Google can't find it. Does anyone know where it went?*
- [Splicing Guides](#). Select the kind of rope you want to splice, click, and follow the detailed, illustrated directions. From [New England Ropes](#).
- [Rigging](#). An enormous, illustrated work in progress. The U.S. Army Engineer School is putting full-text of the Army Field Manual of Rigging on the web. You'll have to download large files, but it's worth it. [An earlier edition](#).
- [NetKnots.com](#). A fairly large collection of knots for camping, fishing, and boating. Well-organized and well-illustrated.
- [Knots Online](#). From Northern Mountain Supply. Sixteen illustrated knots for camping and climbing.
- [Knot Tying Notation](#). A "programming language" to record the steps in a knot tying method. Not for everyone, but the only notation of its kind for those who need one. From the Suberian knot labs.
- [Six Exploding Knots](#). Some of my own knot work.
  - One of my [exploding knots](#), under the name *Exploding Hitch*, was featured as the Knot of the Month in the October 1999 issue of *Boating Magazine* (p. 64). Unfortunately, the magazine is not on the web.
  - Two of them have been [re-drawn by David Blume](#). One has been illustrated in a series of eleven photographs by [an anonymous fan](#).
- [Knot So Fast](#). A proposal for regulating the world knot tying speed record. Another of my contributions.
- [Notes on Clinton Bailey Sr.](#) Notes on the world speed record-holder based on my conversation with his son in April 1998.
- [World Record Six Knot Challenge](#). Photographs and drawings of the six knots used in the world record. From Daniel Callahan.
- [Knot](#). A sort of online knotting journal in which the author reflects on new knots and knot tying and illustrates his reflections with very clear drawings. From Paul Shin-Hong Hahn.
- [Some useful knots](#). Has links to some MPEG knot movies. Better than *Knot's Landing*.
- [Knots and Hitches](#). Two elementary knots. Anonymous.
- [Love Those Crazy Knots](#). JAVA-animated Turk's Head and Ocean Plain. From Thomas McClain.
- [Klabautermanns Knotentafel](#). Animated knotting instructions from Matthias Böving.
- [Knot Page of Mac Stevens](#). Superb knot animations. Temperamental, but when they are working, they are the best on the web.
- [S.A. Kids Knots](#). A small number of knots but with stylish multimedia presentation. Requires Netscape 3.0 and the Shockwave plug-in; both may be downloaded from the

site. Beware, the bowline is the less safe "left-handed" bowline, and some of its crossings are incorrect.

- [Knots](#). Project ideas for kids. From [42eXplore](#).
- [Learn2 Tie Basic Knots](#). Eight elementary knots fully explained and illustrated for the novice. From [Learn2.com](#).
- [Ropes and Knots](#). From the [Arboriculture](#) homepage. One knot so far (Cat's Paw), otherwise just links to other, knot-related sites.
- [Rope Tips](#). Eleven basic knot illustrations from Lehigh Samson, a rope manufacturer. Also see its page on [splicing](#).
- [Rope Works](#). Generous excerpts from the book of the same name, by Gerald Findley. Very good illustrations.
- [Flip Flop Winch](#). Winding cord around a winch log to aid in flipping it, from John Goude (based on an idea by Mors Kochanski).
- [Hojojutsu](#). Japanese rope restraint for prisoners.
- [Nunchaku Tying](#). Tying in to this Japanese martial arts weapon. From Sei Shin Kan, Inc.
- [Tsukamaki](#). How to tie the knots on a traditional Japanese samurai sword. From Thomas L. Buck.
- [How to Tie a Figure-8 Knot](#). Remarkable only because it is animated. From the [Nathan Lowe Memorial Climbing Wall Network](#).
- [GORP Knot of the Week](#). Knots useful for camping described and illustrated. From GORP (Great Outdoor Recreation Pages).
- [The Art of Marlinspike](#). Elementary.
- [Splicing a Rope on a 30 hour Longcase Clock](#). Instructions for splicing woven, synthetic cord. From George Aldridge.
- [Forensic Knot Analysis](#). The only site of its kind on the web. From J.J. Van Tassel.
- [Knots for Bondage](#). 14 basic knots, illustrated (but not in their application to bondage). From Slakker. Probably the only major knotting application neglected by Ashley.
- [Square Knot](#). From an online First Aid manual. Any paramedic who needs four illustrations to learn to tie a square knot should lie down and wait for help. *This site has disappeared and I can't relocate it. Can anyone help?*
- [Talking Knots of the Inka](#). Abstract of an article by Viviano and Davide Domenici on the use of Peruvian quipus to designate syllables of words, not numbers. No knot illustrations. From the journal [Archaeology](#), Vol. 49, No. 6 (November/December 1996).
- [The Quipucamayú](#). An article on the Inca quipu by Madge Miller.
- [Knots and twists](#). Part of a display on pre-historic knotting and [weaving](#) at the [Pecos Rio Grande Museum of Early Man](#).
- [Knotscape](#). Links to other knotting sites including pictures of some of the author's knots. From [Starknot](#).
- [The Turk's Head](#). Twelve illustrations to help you tie a Turk's Head (or as this site calls it, a WoodBadge Woggle).
- [Tying a Five-Lead by Four-Bight Turk's Head](#). Part of Loren Damewood's site on

knotted jewelry.

- [The Better Bow](#). Anonymous. A improvement over the standard bow for shoe-laces, well-illustrated, but not as good a bow as variations with two ripcords where this has only one.
- [How To Tie an Ian Knot](#). A well-illustrated, symmetrical, two-ripcord shoelace bow with a very rapid method of tying. A real improvement over the standard bow. From Ian Fieggen.
- [How I Tie My Shoes](#). A simple shoelace knot from Howard Cheng.
- [The Sling, Ancient Weapon](#). History and use of slings. The author, James Burdine, sells hand-tied slings but does not give tying instructions on the site.
- [Des noeuds en Jèrriais](#). The basic knot names in English and Jèrriais [Jersey], a dialect of French. From Geraint Jennings.
- [How to amaze your friends in seven easy steps!](#). Guess what? A knot trick.
- [Security was a knotted rope](#). First chapter in the Schlage History of Locks, implying that knotted ropes are obsolete now that metal locks have arrived. Schlage executives probably wear tassel loafers at work so that the steel hasp locks on their cross-trainers don't clank during meetings.
- [Kaylee, the Knot-Tying Parrot](#). With photographs of a few of Kaylee's creations. From Doug and Shelly Lane.
- [Knot Natural](#). Photograph of a knotted live cactus cultivated by sculptor Denny North by growing it on its side and upside down.
- [The Legend of the Gordian Knot](#)
- [Should You Secure Wire Rope With Knots?](#) The U.S. Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) says "no" in this memorandum opinion interpreting federal regulations. This site has made me realize that the federal government regulates almost every aspect of rigging in the name of workplace safety. One day I'll find all the relevant parts of the [Code of Federal Regulations](#) and link to them here. (Although the CFR is searchable, don't naively search for "rigging" or you'll get 150,000 hits on bid-rigging.) Here are some of the more salient sections of the CFR to get you started.
  - 29 CFR Sec. 1915.112, [Ropes, chains, and slings](#)
  - 29 CFR Sec. 1919.24, [Limitations on use of wire rope](#)
  - 29 CFR Sec. 1926.251, [Rigging equipment for material handling](#)
  - 33 CFR Sec. 401.42, [Passing hand lines](#)
  - 46 CFR Sec. 91.37-50, [Use of wire rope and chains](#).
- [All About Knots](#). From Dick Chisholm. Contains excerpts from Chisholm's writings about knots (full-text is available only for a fee) and describing his forthcoming book.
- [The Clifford W. Ashley Commemorative Stamp Project](#). News of the effort to commemorate Ashley plus general knotting news especially about meetings and conferences. From Dick Blackmer.
- [The Gospel According to Ashley](#). An article by Steve Knauth, in [Soundings](#), on the effort to persuade the U.S. Post Office to issue a stamp honoring Clifford Ashley, author of *Ashley's Book of Knots*.
- [Clifford Warren Ashley](#). A short biographical note from the New Bedford Whaling Museum.

- [Ties That Bind](#). An article by Steve Knauth, in [Soundings](#), on knots and the [International Guild of Knot Tyers](#).
- [Knotted Word Worms](#). A word puzzle by Mike Keith in which the challenge is to find words that trace a knot on a three dimensional grid.
- [Knot Calendar](#). Twelve photos for twelve months, sinuous curves for your wall. From the [Ink Group](#), calendar series.
- [Knots & Splices \(a bibliography\)](#). Maintained by [Lars Bruzelius](#) for the [The Maritime History Virtual Archives](#).

**Animal-handling knots.** Other than [fishing](#) knots.

- [Falconer's Knot](#). (Note that this is the knot, not the net. Nyet?) Scroll to the sixth topic. The illustrations are probably too small to teach this knot to newcomers, but large enough to remind those who once knew it.
- [Making a Falconer's Net](#). Detailed instructions and illustrations for making a Dho-gazza. *This site seems to have disappeared without a trace. Can any readers help locate it?*
- [Making Your Own Ganglines](#). If you need to ask what ganglines are (harnesses for sled dogs), then you don't need to make your own. Otherwise, these clear instructions should help. From Stephen Lee.
- [Tie a First-Class Rope Halter](#). By Connie Nygard. Detailed directions for the series of knots needed to make a horse's halter out of rope. See especially her [diagram on the Fiador knot](#).
- [Horse Knots](#). Different methods for tying a fiador and links to others. From Jef Vandenberghe.
- [Rope Halter](#). Detailed instructions for tying a rope halter from the Pony Club Association of Victoria.
- [Halter Tying Instructions](#). From David Dill.
- [Tying Horse Knots](#). Instructions for the fiador, mecate, and a halter. From Cynthia Cavanaugh.
- [The Hackamore](#). Illustrated instructions for tying and using this headstall for a horse or mule. From Sue King.
- [Hackamores](#). Hand-braided leather hackamores for sale, made by Ed Pass, Sara Hagel, and Ray Huffman.

**Climbing and caving knots.** Also see the [books on climbing knots](#) in the [Book section](#).

- [Animated Knots](#). Several well-done animations by "rhinckle". From [New England Climbing](#).
- [Belaying Guide](#). From the Outdoor Action Program at Princeton. Instruction on harness knots.
- [Caving Knots](#). Good selection and graphics. From Sherry Mayo.
- [Freeclimbing](#). The best climbing site on the web. I've linked to a search for knots.
- <http://www.climbing.ie/knots.html>>Climbing Knot Dictionary. 20 knots, mostly for climbing, well-illustrated in three colors. From Dave Hunt and [Irish Climbing On-line](#).
- [Knot Knowledge](#). 23 knots, mostly for climbing, clearly illustrated with 4-6

black-and-white photographs each. Anonymous.

- [Noeuds Spéléos](#). Two illustrated caving knots. From Manuel du Secouriste.
- [Nudos en Espeleología](#). Clear illustrations of some caving and climbing knots.
- [Prusik Rappel "Safety"](#). An article by Dr. Gary D. Storricks, arguing against the use of the Prusik knot at least in caving.
- [The Prusik Knot](#). From Geoff Kuenning and Marc Anderson. On use of the Prusik in place of ascenders for climbing the mast of a ship.

**Craft knots.** Also see [fancy and decorative knots](#).

- [Beading Knots](#). Four knots for beading. From Maxine.
- [The Bindery Knot](#). A knot for tying packages. From Donna Ashley for the benefit of MIT librarians.
- [The Clones Knot](#). An Irish crochet knot, illustrated with eight photographs.
- [French Knot](#). An illustrated cross-stitch knot. From Debbie Wilcock.
- [Hammock Instructions](#). From Rita Barthelomew's larger site on [netting](#).
- [Making a Netted Hammock](#). Adequate but minimal instructions. From [Earth Guild](#).
- [Hammock Pattern](#). Scanned from an uncited printed source. Slow-loading. From [Pu Bear's Collectibles](#). *This site has also disappeared without a trace. Does anyone know where it went?*
- [Hammock Instructions](#). Minimal but helpful. From Earth Guild.
- [Hammock Kits](#). If you want to make your own but don't want to start from scratch. From [Hammocks from Bougainville](#).
- [Kite Flier's Knot Gallery](#). Four knots, well illustrated.
- [Netting](#). A comprehensive site. From Rita Bartholomew.
- [Knotcraft](#). Excerpts from a book by Stuart E. Grainger. Useful for netting.
- [Slatt's Rescue Belt](#). Instructions for making a woven belt which instantly unweaves when you need an emergency length of cordage. From Philip Sinnet-Slattery.
- [Some Weaving Knots](#). Two clear photographs.

**Fishing knots**

- [The Best Knots](#). Advice on fishing knots. No illustrations. From [Fly Fisherman Magazine](#).
- [Fishing Knots](#). Chapter 1 of Ern Grant's book, *Grant's Guide: Fishing Knots and Rigs*. Many knots and good illustrations. One of the better sites on fishing knots.
- [Fishing Knots](#). Eight fishing knots, well-illustrated. From [High Sierra Fly Casters](#).
- [Fishing Knots](#). Seven knots, each with multiple, clear illustrations. From Grays of Kilsyth, a Scottish fly maker.
- [Fishing Knots and Rigging](#). Twenty-two knots, animated illustrations. From [Marineews](#).
- [Fisherman's Knots](#). Seven knots illustrated. From the [Toledo Bend Reservoir](#).
- [Killroy's Knots](#). Ten fishing knots, well-illustrated. From [Killroy's Fly Tying and Fly Fishing](#). Knotting instructions and illustrations courtesy of [The Orvis Co.](#)
- [Knots and Connections \[for Fishing\]](#). For these Danish fisherfolk, a "connection" is a

bend.

- [Useful Fishing Knots](#). Three knots from the [Bass Fishing Home Page](#).
- [Knots](#). Five fishing knots, three illustrations each. From [New York Bass](#).
- [Knots](#). Three fishing knots, 4-5 illustrations each. From [Backwater Tackle](#).
- [Flyfishing knots](#). Illustration from online ad for FlyTy software.
- [Knots for the Flyfisher](#). From Bruce Harang.
- [The Bimini Twist](#). From [WorldWideAngler.com](#). There are many other fishing knots at this site. Just use their search engine to find them. Unfortunately there doesn't seem to be a page collecting them all together.
- [Knot Tying Overview](#). Six fishing knots from [High Country Flies](#).
- [Knots](#). From The Fishernet.
- [Three Fishing Knots](#). Text and illustrations poorly scanned.
- [Knots for the Flyfisher](#). Knot links from elsewhere on the web.
- [Knots: Putting It All Together](#). Knots for flyfishing by Dave Whitlock.
- [Davy's Knot](#). A fishing knot by Davy Wotton.
- [Tying the Huffnagle](#). One (fishing) knot illustrated with seven photographs.
- [Knots and Fishing Knots](#). Animated knot-tying software for Windows by Frank Cooke. A large number of knots, taught with great clarity. View the tying process step by step, forwards and backwards. Better instruction than books or videotape. The web site now has a sample animation.
- [The Nail Knot](#). One (fishing) knot illustrated with three line-drawings.
- [Knots](#). Nine fishing knots illustrated. From [The HorseMinnow](#) fishing site.
- [Knot Tying Page](#). Five fishing knots. Poor illustrations.
- [Fisherman's Ty-All](#). Ad for a fishing knot tool.
- [Rudy's Snell Tyer](#). Ad for a fishing knot tool.
- [EZKnot](#). Ad for fishing knot tool.
- [Fishing Fool Tool](#). Ad for a fishing knot tool. With RealVideo instruction for two fishing knots (Nail Knot, and Snell knot) and instructions and illustrations for another nine fishing knots.
- [Knot-Tying Aids](#). Manufacturers of various fishing knot tools.
- [The Needle Knot](#). From [Saltwater Fishing in New Jersey](#).
- [The Rapala Knot](#). From [Rapala Corp.](#), a fishing supplies company.

**Necktie knots.** Look how many sites there are on necktie knot compared to (say) climbing or fishing knots. This shows you what men care about these days —vanity and conformity even at the price of discomfort. Men of the world, awaken! This is the age of the internet. If your boss makes you wear a tie, leave your boss. Start your own company. Telecommute. Tie the knots you want to tie and no others.

- [How to Tie a Tie](#). From [BizWeb](#). The classical necktie knots.
- [Four Ways to Tie a Tie](#). More classical necktie knots, from [FashionMall](#).
- [Knots Etc.](#). More classical necktie knots, from [Knots Etc. Ties and Apparel](#).
- [How to Tie a Necktie](#). More classical necktie knots, with some [variations](#), from [MBA](#)

### [Style Magazine](#)

- [Necktie Repository](#). More classical necktie knots, from Jim Scarborough.
- [Online Ties](#). Illustrations for eight different necktie knots.
- [Tie Yourself in Knots](#). From Jim Landman. Landman's [page of necktie-related links](#), including necktie knot links, is the best I've seen.
- [Learn2.com](#) has clear illustrations of the [4-in-hand](#) and [bowtie](#) knots.
- [Animated necktie knot](#). The instructions are in Dutch but the picture is self-explanatory. *This site seems to have disappeared. Can anyone help relocate it?*
- [McSea necktie knot page](#). Illustrates the windsor and half-windsor. *This site seems to have disappeared. Can anyone help relocate it?*
- [The Pratt Knot](#). From [The Fashion Page](#).
- [Tiecrafter's necktie knot page](#). Collecting links to several necktie pages.
- [Tying the Knot](#). A book of instructions by Andrew Cochran.
- [Five scarf-tying knots](#). Accompanied by [Rush Limbaugh's demonstration](#), in which this sartorial authority misperceives which knot the world would like to see him tie around his neck.
- [Tie Master](#). A device to help you tie a necktie knot. "A simple solution to an age old problem." Not quite as simple as an unassisted knot —or as giving up neckties.
- See how Marvin Minsky improvised a necktie with climbing rope —and no knots— in his [Original Rope Tie](#).
- You've probably heard about [Yong Mao](#) and [Thomas Fink](#), the two physicists from Cambridge's prestigious Cavendish Laboratory who turned from physics, even from respectable knot theory, to necktie theory. Because they published their mathematical analysis of necktie knots in the equally prestigious journal [Nature](#) (vol. 398, pp. 31-32, March 4, 1999), their new knots have become the biggest knot story in the mainstream press since the supposed discovery of the Hunter's Bend in 1978. But while the Hunter's Bend is a useful knot, this is just a pain in the neck. Here are some details.
  - [Solving a Knotty Problem](#). From the BBC. Contains links to video demonstrations (require a RealPlayer plugin).
  - [Telling a Fink From a Pratt](#). From the London Telegraph.
  - [Physicists Tie the Knot](#). From Reuters, presented by Wired News.
  - [Physicists' Work is All for Knot](#). From the Dallas Morning News.
  - [An HTML version of the Fink & Mao Article](#). From Fink's home page, not [Nature](#). Also see their [page of instructions](#) for the four traditional necktie knots (not for any of their own).

**Not Knots.** Products which make knots unnecessary, mostly for shoelaces. I don't plan to link to all sites for buckles, velcro, hooks, carabiners, nails, staples, glue, and so on. Hey, I'm a partisan. But these Anti-Knot sites can be helpful to parents of very young children, boaters with arthritic fingers, and those turning to the dark side.

- [Con-Ferr Rope Locks](#). For cargo lashing and boat lines.
- [Flip Lacer](#). Flipping plastic toggle for shoelaces.
- [Lazy Lock](#). Adjustable, sliding lock for shoelaces.

- [Safety Plus Rope Lock](#). For closing bags like laundry bags.
- [Y \\* Ties](#). Curly elastic shoelaces tangle together to make tying unnecessary.
- [Zip-A-Rope](#). The ad inconsistently appeals to "anyone who enjoys the outdoors" but who hates "to fight with stubborn knots."

### **Rope and cordage**

- [Basic Ropework Test](#). Test yourself with this exam designed for Australian rescue workers.
- [Cordage](#). Lots of useful information from the SailingProShop.
- [Rope-Making Machines](#). Choose from the Bradshaw Rope Maker and the Leonardo Rope Machine (and formerly Apollo Cord Winder). Described, illustrated, and ready to order. From the [Textura Trading Company](#). Textura also sells all kinds of fiber supplies for textile artists.
- [Bradshaw's Rope Machine](#). From the Bob Patterson Company. A one-person machine powered by a variable speed, reversible hand drill.
- [Cordage](#). Data on strength, elasticity, tenacity, weight, and so on, of common synthetic ropes. From Allied Signal Fibers.
- [Cordage Fibre Characteristics](#). Strength, weight, elasticity, coefficient of friction, critical temperature, and so on. From Layline.
- [The Cordage Institute](#). A non-profit association of manufacturers which works toward voluntary technical standards for cordage, rope, and twine.
- [Making Rope](#). See Jack Keene's instructions for making laid rope without a machine.
- [Native American Cordage](#). An excellent, illustrated compendium of Native American cordage technology. Part of the larger [NativeTech](#) site.
- [New England Ropes](#). A cordage manufacturer's home page.
- [Pelican Rope Works](#). A cordage manufacturer's home page.
- [Rope and Gear Testing](#). One of the most thorough rope-testing pages I've seen. From Tom Moyers.
- [Rope Basics](#). From Boy Scout Troop 940.
- [Rope Care](#). Excerpts from a Samson Rope brochure.
- [Rope Care](#). A page from [Jimmy Green Marine Ropes and Rigging](#).
- [Rope Care](#). A page from [Marlowe Ropes](#).
- [Rope Data](#). Weight per meter, elongation, mantle shifting, and so on, for climbing ropes. Anonymous.
- [Rope Data](#). Breaking strength, linear density, working load, and so on. From United States Rope Company.
- [Rope Locker](#). Good collection of links to sites on rope, rigging, knots, and block and tackle systems. A page within the larger [SchoonerMan](#) site.
- [Rope Making](#). A Yahoo discussion group on the craft.
- [Ropes and Cords](#). From Merv Martin. Very thorough and well-illustrated. Also see his [recipe for a rope stretcher](#).
- [Strength of Rope](#). Incorrectly asserts that "knotted rope" (regardless of the knot)

reduces strength by 15%. From Diver's Datalog.

**Rope rescue.** Here I only include rope rescue sites which include some knot-related instruction online. Also see the [books on rope rescue](#) in the [Book section](#), the section on [suppliers](#), and the knot [discussion forums](#).

- [Basic Knots](#). Not rescue-specific knots, but I put it here because it's published in a search and rescue newsletter. Illustrated with color photos of colored cord.
- [The Blue Ridge Mountain Rescue Group Knot Review](#). Good collection of knots, well-illustrated with color photographs.
- [Considerations for Technical Rope Rescue](#). From Kenneth N. Laidlaw. Thorough text, very clear illustrations.
- [Herschel Rope Rescue Training Systems](#). From Herschel Rescue, Toronto.
- [MUEMS Rope Rescue Team](#). From Marshall University. Contains a large number of illustrated knots.
- [River Rescue](#). Many useful links. From otterman.
- [Rope Rescue](#). From the Mountain Ambulance Service (Mountain, Wisconsin). Contains some very clear knot illustrations.
- [Rope Rescue Page](#). Tips and [discussion](#) from the [Search and Rescue Society of British Columbia](#).
- [Ropes, Webbing, and Knots](#). An outline of a search and rescue training course. No illustrated knots.

### Sailing and boating knots

- [Boating Knots](#). Seven elementary boating knots. From [Black Lake](#), a fishing site.
- [Boating Knots](#). Five elementary boating knots. From [OnWater](#), a boat store.
- [Boating Rope Knots](#). Seven elementary boating knots. From [Marinews](#), an Australian boating site.
- [Burglar-Proof Knot](#). For \$9.95 this company will sell you the secret for tying up your dingy with a "burglar-proof knot". The ad ends with a joke (if you have thievery in your heart, they'll send you a fake knot), so it may be a hoax. Of course, every knot that can be tied can be untied with time and a fid—even the Gordian knot. If anyone learns what you get for your \$9.95, please let me know.
- [Common Boating Knots](#). Ten common knots, described and illustrated. From [New England Ropes](#).
- [Commonly Used Boating Knots](#). From [Suncoast Boating](#). Elementary.
- [How To Tie One On](#). Tips on tying up canoes and kayaks. Good text but no illustrations.
- [Knots, Hitches, and Splices](#). Elementary knots for sailing, no illustrations.
- [Knots To Know \[for sailing\]](#). The knots are elementary, but their illustrations are animated.
- [Line Handling and Marlinspike](#). Five boating knots each illustrated with three still drawings and one animation. From [BoatSafe.com](#).
- [Marlinspike Knot of the Month](#). Over a dozen common boating knots. Now animated GIFs being converted to Java scripts that permit stopping and reversing. From the

[Shooting Star Boating Safety Page.](#)

- [Marlinespike Learning Guide.](#) Advertisement for a course and booklet. From [United States Power Squadrons.](#)
- [NautBob's Knots.](#) Elementary boating knots. Also a page of [fishing knots.](#)
- [Nós de Marinheiro.](#) Illustrated sailing knots. Instructions in Portuguese. From the Associação Nacional de Cruzeiros (Lisbon).
- [Rigging for Windsurfers.](#) From Easy Riser, Inc.
- [Rope Loop.](#) Illustrated instructions for tying a "handle" into loop to ease the pressure on your hand. From Paul.

## Scouting

- [Animated Knots.](#) From Boy Scout Troop 700. These pages require the Microsoft PowerPoint Animation Player, a browser plug-in you can download from the site.
- [Basic Knots in Outdoor/Adventure Awards.](#) Includes [bends and lashes](#), [loops](#), [hitches](#), and [stopper knots](#). From the [Boys' Brigade Australia.](#)
- [Boy Scouts of America Knot Designs for Awards and Badges.](#) Thirty ways to color a square knot.
- [Get Knotted! Animated Knots for Scouts.](#) Clear animations of 15 useful knots, with helpful comments on each. From the 42nd Brighton Scout Group, East Sussex.
- [Knot Diagrams.](#) Four elementary knots. From Brad Pozarnsky.
- [Knotmasters.](#) A knot-learning program for scouts in England's North Star District.
- [Knots.](#) A large site on knots for scouts. The most useful feature is an [alphabetical guide](#) to 130+ common knots.
- [Knots! Knots! Knots!.](#) Animated instructions from Troop 72.
- [Knots and Scouting.](#) From André van der Salm. Jump to his [main knot page](#). In English and Dutch.
- [Knottng.](#) From the 22nd Farnworth Scout Group. Includes an impressively large knot index, organized both [alphabetically](#) and [by use](#). Each knot indexed is illustrated with very clear drawings.
- [Knot Tying.](#) Five elementary knots for sea scouts.
- [Lashing Projects.](#) A large number of clear drawings of lashing projects built by scouts.
- [Learn to Tie a Few Knots!.](#) Three basic knots. Aims at beginners yet uses words more than pictures. From the [Royal Ambassadors](#) of Kennesaw, Georgia.
- [Pictures of Scouting Knots.](#) Apparently scanned from a book, including the accompanying text.
- [Royal Rangers Ropecraft.](#) Requirements for the "advanced merit" level, no illustrations.
- [The Scout Association of Australia, Index of Knots and Lashings.](#)
- [Scouting Knots.](#) A collection of common knots (still growing) illustrated with photographs and demonstrated with effective animations. From Bob Gibson and the Montana Council's Troop 9.
- [Cub Scout Knot Quiz.](#) *This page seems to have disappeared without a trace. Can any readers help locate it?*

- [Boy Scout Knot Quiz](#). What knots would you use for various common applications?
- [Know Your Knots?](#). Another scouting knot quiz. From the [boy scouting](#) section of [About.com](#).
- [Commonly Used Rope and Knot Terms](#). Another scouting knot quiz (well done). Also contains animated instructions for six basic knots. From [Troop 222](#), Belaire Texas.

## Suppliers

- [American Hemp](#). Twine, yarn, cordage, rope, and webbing, but wholesale only. Seattle, Washington.
- [Custom Cords](#). Multi-colored braided cords for purchase and special order. In cotton and synthetic fibers. From D. Booker and Associates.
- [Fid-O / McGrew Splicing Tool](#). You may not think you need this, but can you splice braided to twisted cord? If not, see the MPG at the site of Jim McGrew, the inventor, showing how it's done.
- [Footrope Knots](#). Des Pawson's cordage and knot-tool shop, now with a web site.
- [Hemplant's Twine and Rope](#). Hemp twine, cord, and yarn in many sizes.
- [Jimmy Green Marine Ropes and Rigging](#). Mail order chandlery in Beer, East Devon. Large inventory.
- [The Knot Shoppe](#). Purveyor of fancy knots and supplies for fancy knotwork. See [his online store](#). From "knot tyer" in Anchorage, Alaska. Also see the proprietor's [Museum of Fancy Knots](#), and [knots for sale at eBay](#).
- [Macramé cord](#). Synthetic, 16 colors available. From Pu Bear's Collectibles.
- [Marlowe Ropes](#). Many varieties. In East Sussex.
- [Osborne Marlinspikes](#). From C.S. Osborne and Co., Harrison, NJ.
- [Petzl](#). Suppliers for climbers and rope rescue e.g. cordage, harnesses, helmets, carabiners, etc. Crolles, France (with offices around the world).
- [The Rescue Source](#). Specializing in water rescue equipment, including cordage.
- [Rock-n-Rescue](#). Supplies for climbers and rope rescue teams, e.g. cordage, ascenders, pulleys, carabiners, etc. Valencia, Pennsylvania.
- [Rope Magic](#). Supplies for rope magic from Denis the Magician.
- [Scientific Nature Hemp Emporium](#). Twine, yarn, cordage, rope, and webbing. Bellingham, Washington.
- [Brion Toss's Catalog](#). Knotting tools (plus Brion's books and videos).
- [U-Braid-It Braiding Supply Co.](#) Synthetic cord, leather, and mohair supplies for making horse tack. The site also includes some [lessons](#).
- [Urban H.A.R.T. Rescue Training](#). Buy rescue equipment from the site, including [rope](#) and [harnesses](#).
- For suppliers without web sites, see [Martin Combs' good list](#).

**Surgical knots.** If you go to [PubMed](#) and enter the search string, **knot\* OR sutur\*** , then you'll get a huge list of citations to surgical knotting (more than 2200 articles in January 2001). Unfortunately, PubMed searches don't have unique URLs so I can't link to such a search for you.

- [Arthroscopic Knot Tying](#). From Don Johnson. Illustrated with nine photographs or in an animation (which is really a slide show of the nine still photos).
- [Arthroscopic Knot Tying](#). From Robert K. Lieurance and Wesley M. Nottage. Detailed descriptions of many techniques, with thumb-nail and enlarged illustrations.
- [Ethicon Knot Tying Manual](#). Another detailed and well-illustrated, professional manual for surgeons. From Ethicon Inc., which is a division of Johnson and Johnson.
- [Excision: Knot Tying](#). Surgical knot tying. Click the "next" and "previous" buttons at the bottom of the screen for more detail and context.
- [Interactive Suturing](#). The front page contains an alert service to recently published papers on suturing. Visit regularly to stay up to date. From InteractiveSuturing.com.
- [Intracorporeal Knot Tying with the Endo Stitch](#). Text and illustrations. Part of a larger site on the Stringer laparoscopic suturing technique.
- [Med I.A. Knot Tying and Suturing](#). Multimedia instruction for surgeons. This content was formerly on the web, but its producers evidently decided to make some money by pulling it off and selling it as a CD. The link takes you to an ad for the CD with a tiny bit of content.
- [Surgical Knot Tying Manual](#). Detailed and well-illustrated. By pros for pros. From Richard F. Edlich of the University of Virginia School of Medicine.
- [Vesalius Clinical Folios on Surgical Technique](#). Another detailed, well-illustrated, professional manual for surgeons. Don't overlook the "next" and "back" buttons at the bottom of the screens. There are several pages of instruction in each folio. From [Vesalius](#).
  - [One-Handed Surgical Knot](#).
  - [Two-Handed Surgical Knot](#)
  - [Basic Surgical Hand Ties](#). Instruction in the basic surgical knots tied by hand.
  - [Basic Instrument Tie](#). Instruction in tying knots with surgical instruments rather than fingers.

---

## Contents

[Knot Tying](#) | [Knot Theory](#) | [Knot Art](#) | [Knot Discussion](#) | [Knot Software](#) |  
[Knot Videos](#) | [Knot Books](#) | [Knot Gallery](#) | [Awards](#) | [Top](#)



---

## Knot Theory

**Knot Theory Sub-Sections** (more to come)

[General](#) | [Bibliographies](#) | [Glossaries](#) | [Journals](#) | [Primers](#) | [Tables](#)

**General.** Also see the [discussion forums](#), [software](#), [videos](#), and [books](#) on knot theory.

- [MathSearch Knot Pages](#). Clicking on this link will initiate a search for knot-related pages on [MathSearch](#), the dedicated mathematical search engine.
- [The KnotPlot Site](#). Information on the fabulous knot-projection graphic software written by [Rob Scharein](#), with stunning examples, one of which I use at the top of this page; see [Artwork credits](#). Essentially the same as [The Knot Square](#) site, which I've listed under [Knot Art](#) below.
- [International Knot Theory Meeting, August 7-15, 1998](#).
- [The Geometry Junkyard Page on Knot Theory](#). An excellent page of links to web sites on knot theory, maintained by [David Eppstein](#).
- [Knot Theory](#). From Mark Brittenham. Good collection of links.
- [Entrance to WWW on Knot Theory](#). From Masakazu Teragaito. Selected links to knot theory sites.
- [Yahoo Guide to Knot Theory](#). Not very extensive but will probably grow.
- [Knot Theory](#). Course and lectures by Brian Sanderson.
- [Knot Theory](#). From Mouse Bousfield. Hand-outs and links for a course on knot theory.
- [Knot Theory](#). An excellent collection of links from [Icarus Research Data Centre Math Bookmarks](#).
- [Knot Theory: Project Suggestions](#). Ideas for student projects. From Paul J. Kapitza.
- [Knot Theory Lab](#). Apparently in Korean. But even if you don't read the language, there are some great graphics, including a nice [table of prime knots](#). *These pages seem to have disappeared without a trace. Can anyone help find them again?*
- [Knot Theory at Liverpool](#). From the University of Liverpool Department of Mathematical Sciences.
- [Knots and Templates](#). Part of larger book on nonlinear dynamics and chaos by Nicholas B. Tufillaro, Jeremiah Reilly, and Tyler Abbott.
- [Knots](#). Some basic concepts of knot theory, with some links to related topics. From Alexander Bogomolny.
- [The Unknotting Number of a Knot](#). February 1997 cover story for [What's New in Mathematics](#).
- [Modularity in Art and Mirror Curves](#). Two unique and beautiful sites that would belong under [Knot Art](#) below but for their unusual combination of beauty and mathematical explanation. From Slavik Jablan.
- [Ordering Knots](#). Another beautiful and lucid site from Slavik Jablan.
- [Knot Theory Puzzles](#). Excerpts from a forthcoming book (sept 99); from Heather McLeay.
- [Les Noeuds](#). French edition of *Scientific American*, issue devoted to knots.
- [UMass GANG Knot Library](#). Contains links to a large number of knot diagrams, which require a PostScript viewer.
- [Knot images](#). Beautiful, computer-generated images by Tom Longtin.
- [Knot Gallery](#). Beautiful, complex knots from Milana Huang.

- [Math Art Gallery](#). Many beautiful images of knots.
- [Geometry and the Imagination in Minneapolis](#). Handouts for a two-week seminar led by John Conway, Peter Doyle, Jane Gilman and Bill Thurston at the Geometry Center in Minneapolis, June 17-28, 1991. Many pertain to knots.
- [Knots and Links](#). Nine elegant knot and link graphics generated by Mathematica, with accompanying instructional text. From Leo Piilonen.
- [Square Knots](#). An article by Brian Hayes in American Scientist on knots conceived as self-avoiding walks in 3-dimensional space.
- [Ideal knots](#). An online catalogue of knot images and coordinates. From Ben Laurie, author of the Apache-SSL web server.
- [Global curvature, ideal knots and models of DNA self-contact](#). An article by Oscar Gonzales.
- [Ming](#). Knot software, plus neat illustrations, by Ying-Qing Wu.
- [Scott Carter](#). Home page of a knot theorist.
- [Morwen Thistlewaite](#). Home page of a knot theorist. Many beautiful knot graphics.
- [Piotr Pierański](#). Home page of a knot theorist, with links to several papers, including [In Search of Ideal Knots](#), which has wonderful illustrations.
- [On Composite Twisted Unknots](#). An article by Chaim Goodman-Strauss.
- [Is A Knot Classification Possible?](#). An article by Charilaos Aneziris. Also see his [The Problem of Knot Classification](#).
- [Knots and Knotwork](#). From a site on Mathematics and the Liberal Arts. Summarizing articles on the mathematics of Celtic, Islamic, and Moorish knot designs.
- [Design Any Knot From DNA](#). From Ned Seeman.
- [Mathematics and Origin of String Figures](#). Taking string figures seriously. From Martin Probert.
- [Jason's Favorite Knot](#). Borromean rings, with a brief introduction to knot theory, from [Jason Cohen](#).
- [Loops, Knots, Gauge Theories and Quantum Gravity](#). An article by Rodolfo Gambini and Jorge Pullin.
- [Knots and DNA](#). An article using knot theoretic topology to explore the action of enzymes, by De Witt Summners.
- [Knots and Everything Book Series from World Publishing](#). Edited by Louis Kauffman.

### **Knot theory bibliographies**

- [Knots, Braids, and Links](#). A list of online papers on knot theory, especially in physics rather than pure mathematics.
- [A Bibliography of Literature on Knots and Braids](#). A very comprehensive list by Joyce A. Riley. Because of its size, slow-loading.
- [Bibliography of Knot Theory](#). Another bibliography, not as good as Riley's. Anonymous.

### **Knot theory glossaries**

- [Glossary of Terms](#). Part of the excellent [Knot Theory](#) from High School students Jason Alonso (team leader), Andrei Garcia, and Stefan Nagey.

- [Knot Glossary](#). Part of the excellent [Mathmania knot theory site](#) for kids. Apparently this supersedes the "Erdős For Kids" glossary of knot theory, made by the same folks, [still on the web](#).

### **Knot theory journals**

- [Journal of Knot Theory and Its Ramifications](#).

### **Knot theory primers**

- [Knot Theory](#). From Bryson R. Payne. An introduction for students. Uses animation to advantage.
- [Knot Theory](#). From John Starrett. Brief introduction and collection of links under construction.
- [Knot Theory](#). Clearly written, handsomely illustrated. From a team of high school students at the Severn School: Jason Alonso (team leader), Andrei Garcia, and Stefan Nagey.
- [Knot Theory](#). Part of Eric Weisstein's larger [World of Mathematics](#). Very thorough, clear, and well-illustrated.
- [A Knot Theory Primer](#). By Charilaos Aneziris. Essentially an online textbook which treats a very large number of subtopics. Admirable thoroughness and clarity.
- [Mathmania Knot Theory](#). A primer for kids, with challenging problems. One of four branches of mathematics covered at [Mathmania](#). From Day Kirby.
- [Mathematics and Knots](#). Online catalog of an exhibition at the School of Mathematics of the University of Wales, Bangor, sponsored by the London Mathematical Society. This site has grown over time to become a very good general introduction to knot theory.
- [Tie Me Up, Tie Me Down](#). Handsome primer on knot theory. Anonymous.
- [Untangling the Mathematics of Knots](#). A useful tutorial in knot theory for children from [MegaMath](#), a group trying to bring mathematical ideas to elementary school classrooms. Written by Nancy Casey. Among its subsections, [Knots, Links and Other Mathematical Tangles](#) introduces the basic notions with illustrations, and [Activities with Knots](#) suggests project ideas for teachers and students. Nancy has a follow-up site called [New Ideas about Knots](#), with additional puzzles and exercises.

### **Knot tables**

- [Atlas of Oriented Knots and Links](#). From Corinne Cerf. An extremely useful reference.
- [Knot Table](#). From Charilaos Aneziris. All distinct knots up to 12 crossings. Notation only, no projections.
- [Knot Tables](#). Amazing work from 1992 done by the Claremont High School Supercomputing Club. Unfortunately, apart from [this description](#), there is little to read directly on the web. Instead there are several files of prime knot tables to download by FTP (notation only, no projections).
- [Knot Tables](#). Tables in English and Portuguese. Each knot in table is manipulable with the mouse; users may rotate them in any direction, even "throw" them into a spin. Both high-res (bigger download) and lower res (smaller download) available, but even low res is stunning. Anonymous, using routines by Victor Sousa.

## Contents

[Knot Tying](#) | [Knot Theory](#) | [Knot Art](#) | [Knot Discussion](#) | [Knot Software](#) |  
[Knot Videos](#) | [Knot Books](#) | [Knot Gallery](#) | [Awards](#) | [Top](#)



## Knot Art

### Knot Art Sub-Sections (more to come)

[General](#) | [Celtic knotwork](#) | [Fancy and decorative knots](#) | [Metalwork knots](#) | [Related arts](#)

**General.** Also see the sections on [software for knot art](#) and [books on knot art](#).

- [The Knot Square](#). More on KnotPlot, the incredible knot-projection graphic software written by [Rob Scharein](#), with stunning examples. Essentially the same as [The KnotPlot Site](#), which I've listed under [Knot Theory](#) above.
- [The Elegantly-Contrived Knot Page](#). Beautiful knot graphics from *Knot*, software written by Lloyd Burchill. I use an example on my [Nomic](#) page; see [Artwork credits](#). Mac users: download the program!
- [Knotology](#). Folding and tying strips of paper into elegant mathematical sculptures. Art by Heinz Strobl, text by Paula Versnick.
- [The Knot Room](#). An elegant collection of animated graphics, many based on knots. From Staceyjoy.
- [Knot That Small](#). Poster of a 2001 exhibition of fiber art objects built up by tying many small knots.
- [Jaskets](#). Knotted fiber baskets by Tony Stubblefield.
- [Chinese Knotting Home Page](#). An ancient art (Jai Yie), almost destroyed by the Cultural Revolution, now revived by a few books and this web site. Maintained by Carol Leon-Yun Wang.
- [Chinese Decorative Knotting](#). Thorough and well-illustrated. Now in English. From Yvonne.
- [Rough Art](#). Bold paintings of working knots. From Bruce Blanford. *This page has disappeared without a trace. Does anyone know where it went?*
- [The Salomon's Knot](#). A knot depicted in early Christian mosaics and Roman petroglyphs. From Umberto Sansoni.
- [Kuba Cosmology and Crafts](#). On the knot motif in the designs of the Congolese culture.
- [How To Tie An Orthodox Prayer Rope Knot](#). Written instructions by Martin Watt and an ad for a video from Firebird Video. (The video links are dead. If anyone can help relocate the video, I'll add a link to the [video collection](#).)

- [Endless Knot Carpet](#). From Rupert Smith Textiles. *Temporarily off-line*.
- [Decorations from Andrew Birrell's Home Page](#). Intricate and attractive. I use two of his copyrighted knot keys on this page, with permission; see [Artwork credits](#).
- [Math art gallery](#). Contains "Singularity Knots" and "Singularity Knot Animations".
- [MATLAB Gallery](#). Contains a nice 10.9K [knot image](#) by Rouben Rostamian.
- [Artesanía Mediterránea](#). Knot boards for sale.
- [Mariyo Yagi's Rope Art](#). Making a huge rope as an art event.
- [Knot Images](#). Images created by Steven Abbott and Jon Hawkes using Visual Basic Graphics Programming.
- [Solmuja Sipoosta](#). Knot art by Kari Nikrus.
- [Solmuja](#). Knot art by Hannu Kesitalo. Also available [in Finnish](#).
- [PB-Takilapaja Oy](#). Knot art from Paavo Broström. The text is in Finnish.
- [Torus Knots](#). Handsome graphics linked to an image of a handsome sculpture by John Robinson.
- [Not Knot](#). An image by Scott Kim.
- [The Endless Knot](#). A nine-crossing knot projection which this site is pushing as "the peace sign for the next millenium". It's a nice knot, but its advocates do not apparently realize that all knot projections are "endless" in the same way.
- [The Rope Show](#). An original play featuring human beings and cordage by the Chicago troupe, Local Infinities. It premiered 1/30/99 at Chicago's Museum of Contemporary Art.
- [Wooden Knot Puzzles](#). From [Interlocking Puzzles](#). Not very knotty.

**Celtic knotwork.** For Celtic knotwork jewelry and related 3D art, see the section on [Metalware knots](#), below.

- [Aon Celtic Art](#). Celtic knotwork by Cari Buziak. The site includes instruction, clip art, cross-stich patterns, cards, and much more. Extensive and beautiful.
- [The Art of Keltia](#). Celtic knotwork by Vitor Gonzalez. Beautiful images.
- [Calamity's Celtic Page](#). On Celtic knots.
- [The Celtic and Heraldic Center](#). The [gallery](#) contains Celtic knot artwork in copper by Gerry and Sean Forde.
- [Celtic Art](#). Large, detailed, classy. From A. Reed Mihalow.
- [Celtic Clip Art](#). Many knot designs. From the [House Ravenscroft Scriptorium](#).
- [Celtic Clip Art at Ceolas](#). Some very nice examples. From Gerard Manning.
- [Celtic Computer Art](#). Intricate and precisely rendered Celtic knotwork. Images plus advice on drawing them with graphic software. From A. Reed Mihalow.
- [Celtic Desktop Icons](#). Free for downloading. Some based on knots.
- [Celtic Knot Graphics](#). From Jason Gabler. Scanned from original sources.
- [The Celtic Knot Page](#). By Danno. Elegant pencil drawings. There are a few more designs at [his home page](#).
- [Celtic Knot Tattoo](#). Part of a larger (Leprechaun) site unrelated to knots.

- [Celtic Knot Webring](#). Hundreds of participating sites.
- [Celtic Knots](#). Mostly original designs by the anonymous page author.
- [Celtic Knots](#). Designs by Frederick Cooper. Not in the same league as most of the other knotmeisters in this list.
- [Celtic Knots](#). By Marc Wallace.
- [Celtic Knotwork](#). Striking, original knot graphics from Andrew Glassner. (Although Glassner works in computer graphics professionally, these images are entirely hand-designed and hand-rendered.)
- [Celtic Knotwork Images](#). By John Williams. Beautiful works of art, including 3D Celtic knot animations, and Celtic fractals.
- [Celtic Mandalas](#). Complex, knotwork mandalas by Courtney Davis.
- [Celtic Page](#). Includes a Celtic knot tattoo. From Twistress.
- [Celtic Stone](#). Not your father's Celtic knotwork site. Includes a 3D virtual reality Celtic knotwork chat room and instructions for designing Celtic knots. From Celtic One Design. [Celtic Knotwork](#). Computer-generated celtic knotwork images as if in stone. Very nice images. From Celtic Stone.
- [Celtic Triple Knot](#). By Michael Dunn. Handsome bronze sculpture.
- [Celtic Web Art](#). Buttons, bullets, clip art, animated GIFS, and so on. All designs by Karen Nicholas.
- [Celtic Wood Sculpture](#). From [Celtic Carver Woodworks](#).
- [Computer Drawn Celtic Artwork](#). From Steven Abbott. If you run Windows, downloaded the program from the site.
- [Cours d'enluminure celte à base d'entrelacs](#). An online course in designing Celtic knots, in English and French, by Christian Mercat.
  - See Mercat's [Java applet](#) for making Celtic knots in your browser.
  - Thomas Guionnet has implemented Mercat's algorithm in [software for Windows](#). The screen shots are stunning.
- [Craig's Knot Page](#). Apart from two Celtic knot graphics, not related to knots.
- [Dave's Cave](#). Elegant and precise Celtic artwork from Dave Hall. He wrote the program (for Windows) on which he produced the designs, and sells it at the site.
- Pat Fish's Tattoo Santa Barbara. Photos of several Celtic knotwork tattoos.
- [Fractals](#). Includes many [Celtic knotwork](#) images. From Jos Leys.
- [Get Knotted](#). Beautiful Celtic knotwork from Bernadette Bultman-Fenlon.
- [Gruhn's Knots](#). Celtic knot designs from Peter Gruhn.
- [How to Draw Your Own Celtic Knots](#). By Drew Ivan. Clear and helpful instructions; great examples, one of which I use at the bottom of this page; see [Artwork credits](#).
- [Knots](#). A downloadable decorative font from Emerald City Fontwerks.
- [Knot Fonts](#). Three knot fonts for Windows by Jack Keene.
- [The Celtic Knot Font](#). Available in three styles (outline, filled, inverse) for both the Mac and PC. From ClanBadge.
- [Knot Magic](#). A painting with Celtic motifs by Freya Owlsdottir. Not about magic tricks with knots, but casting spells. That kind of magic.

- [Aidan Meehan's Celtic Design Series](#). Stunning. Not limited to Celtic knot designs.
- [Public Domain Knotwork Graphics](#). Very nice Celtic knotwork by [Josh Mittleman](#), including one I use on this page; see [Artwork credits](#)
- [Bradley W. Schenck's Art](#). A very handsome site by a graphic artist. Contains some striking Celtic [knot images](#) and Celtic [knot clip art and borders](#).
- [Threads of Time](#). Clothing with stitched Celtic knotwork.
- [Celtic Knot Design Chart](#). For making cross-stich patterns. From Stephanie Peters.
- [Vintage Type Celtic Knot Font](#). A font for Mac and Windows of elegant Celtic knot designs to decorate a page, by Susan Townsend.
- [Victoria Griebel Wright's Watercolors](#). Celtic knot paintings in a more florid style.

**Fancy and decorative knots.** Also see the [discussion forums](#), [software](#), [videos](#), and [books](#) on knot art.

- [The Art of Decorative Ropework](#). A brief, illustrated history of fancy knotting. From Richard Phelan. Also see [some of Phelan's decorative knots](#) (stills from his [video](#)).
- [Dave Does Knot Work](#). Decorative knotting for sale from Dave Hedgepeth. No illustrations on the web site.
- [Home Page for Fancy Knot Tyers](#). From Daniel Callahan. Also see his [Museum of Fancy Knots](#), [Fancy Knots From Around the World](#) and [knots for sale at eBay](#).
- [Knot Swap](#). A site allowing artistic knotters to display and trade their creations. View the guestbook to see the action. From Martin Combs.
- [Knots of Monicas Hemsida](#). Fancy knotting and macrame. Text in Swedish.
- [Marlinespikes and Monkey's Fists](#). An exhibit of "Traditional Arts and Knot-Tying Skills of Maritime Workers" at the Michigan State University Museum. This is a traveling exhibit which your own local museum can rent (details on the site).
- [Neat Knotwork](#). From Guy Lautard.
- [A Perpetual Account of the International Knot Expo in Weert, Belgium](#). From [Het Knoopeknauwertje](#), the Dutch knotting journal. The Expo opens Easter, 1999.
- [Rope Art By Chief Charles Haywood](#). Decorative knotting, some for sale, by a man who calls himself the world's best (which may or may be true), and who thinks of himself as alone in his art (which is fortunately false). *This link is now defunct, and the site does not seem to have reappeared at another URL. Can any readers help locate it?*
- [Some of My Knotwork](#). Fancy knotwork from S. Goodwin.
- [Sword Knots](#). Like miniature bell pulls, tied in fancy ribbon, leather, or cord hanging from the sword's sheath. From The Discriminating General.

### **Metalwork knots**

- [Turk's Head Rings](#) Knots in precious metal by Loren Damewood.
- [Celtic Knot Jewelry](#). Earrings, pendants, and rings from Talisman Jewelers and Metalsmiths.
- [Celtic Jewelry](#). Pendants, earrings, brooches, and hairslides, from Triplemoon Witchware. The same site sells Celtic knotwork [boxes, clocks, flasks, and frames](#).
- [Fair Winds Design](#). Nautical and Celtic knots in precious metal and pottery from Grey Chisholm.

- [Fisherman's Knot Ring](#). Ring by Ed Levin.
- [Hayman Celtic Jewelry](#). Amulets, necklaces, torcs, earrings, brooches, and rings. From Michael Hayman.
- [Knot Sculptures by Carlo H. Séquin](#). Elegant metal sculptures, mathematically inspired.
- [The Lover's Knot Collection](#). Necklace, brooches, and earrings from Sheila Fleet, a Scottish jeweler.
- [Nantucket Knot Bracelets](#). From [Nantucketer.com](#).
- [Symbolic Sculpture](#). Photograph of John Robinson's sculpture of a trefoil knot in a band of shining brass.
- [Topological Sculptures](#). Knot theorists will enjoy thinking about how these intriguing sculptures are related to knots. By Brent Collins. Here's a [second page](#) of his work.
- [Turk's Head Jewelry](#). Turk's Head rings, bracelets, brooches, earrings, and cuff links in gold, from A.G.A. Correa and Son.

**Related Arts.** I only want to list a couple of links for each of these arts, to get you going. Please let me know about web pages on knot-related arts that I don't already cover. But for those that I do already cover, I'd only like to hear about pages that surpass those I list at introducing or organizing the field. Sorry, I don't pursue any of these arts or crafts and cannot answer questions about them. Alphabetical by art.

- [Basketry Information](#). From Alan Beebe.
- [Braiding](#). Especially leather braiding for horse tack. From Gail.
- [Braids and Weaves](#). From Lenny Henderson.
- [The Pine Needle Group \(on the art of coiling\)](#). From Pamela Zimmerman.
- [Crochet](#). From Sandi Marshal for About.com.
- [The Art of Gimp](#). Anonymous.
- [Alissa's Lace Links](#). From Alissa.
- [Victoria's Knitting Page](#). From Victoria Palay.
- [Kumihimo](#). Japanese braiding. Anonymous.
- [The Lace Ring](#). Links to the major sites in lacing. Anon.
- [Lori's Lace Fairy Lace Pages](#). Very thorough. From Lori Howe.
- [Macramé](#). From tses.
- [Amanteca Artisans Macrame](#). Native American macramé. From Stephanie Stoermer.
- [Chinese Macramé](#). From the Taiwan Government Information Office.
- [The Craft of Echizen Mizuhiki](#). The Japanese art of making paper cordage for tying ceremonial knots in hair or gifts. [Another Mizuhiki site](#).
- [Iida Mizuhiki Association](#). Many color photos of stunning projects.
- [Rugmaker's Homestead](#). From Rafter-four Designs and Diana Blake Gray.
- [International String Figure Association](#). From Mark Sherman.
- [String Figures From Around the World](#). From Richard Darsie.
- [WWW Collection of Favorite String Figures](#). Anonymous.

- [Tattle Tales: The \*\*Tatting\*\* Newsletter](#). From Teri Dusenbury.
- [Tatting and Lacemaking Page](#). From trix.

---

## Contents

[Knot Tying](#) | [Knot Theory](#) | [Knot Art](#) | [Knot Discussion](#) | [Knot Software](#) |  
[Knot Videos](#) | [Knot Books](#) | [Knot Gallery](#) | [Awards](#) | [Top](#)

---

## Knot Discussion Forums

### Discussion of knot tying

- [CMC Rescue Forum](#). On rope rescue and related rigging issues. From [CMC Rescue](#). First-time users must register but there is no charge.
- [The Guild's Knot Forum](#). From the International Guild of Knot Tyers. Covers all knotting topics. Apparently an email forum.
- [KnotTyers](#). A Yahoo Club and discussion forum set up by the [North American Branch](#) of the International Guild of Knot Tyers. Supports graphics and email notification. Covers all knotting topics.
- [Rec.crafts.knots](#) is the only usenet newsgroup devoted to knots. An unmoderated group approved by voters on May 5, 1997. Covers all knotting topics.
  - This group does not allow the posting of graphics files. See my [Knot Gallery](#) for the images that accompany the discussion.
  - [Rec.crafts.knots FAQ](#). Maintained by [Peter W. Meek](#), who welcomes contributions. Under construction.
- [Rope Making](#). A Yahoo discussion group on the craft.
- [Rope Rescue Discussion](#). From the [Search and Rescue Society of British Columbia](#) (SARBC). Mostly on rope rescue. See the SARBC's page of [related discussion forums](#).
- [Spar Talk](#). From [Brion Toss Rigging](#). Mostly on ship rigging, often with comments and answers from Brion Toss.

### Discussion of knot theory

- The High School students who built the award-winning ThinkQuest website on [Knot Theory](#) originally had a discussion forum on the site. They have since closed it, perhaps from lack of traffic. There's a niche here, knot theorists.

### Discussion of knot art

- [Fancy Knots Forum](#). From Delphi. Mostly on fancy knots. First-time users must register but there is no charge. *This forum has disappeared. Does anyone know whether it relocated?*
- [The Knot Board](#). Administered by Daniel Callahan. Mostly on fancy and decorative knots. Supports the use of graphics.

## Contents

[Knot Tying](#) | [Knot Theory](#) | [Knot Art](#) | [Knot Discussion](#) | [Knot Software](#) |  
[Knot Videos](#) | [Knot Books](#) | [Knot Gallery](#) | [Awards](#) | [Top](#)

## Knot Software

Some of these programs are also listed in my sections on [knot tying](#), [knot theory](#), and [knot art](#). This increases the size of my file, but it also makes these programs easier to find for those who want them. If one day there is a much larger array of knot software, I may give up the double listing and index them only in this section.

### Software for knot tying

- [33 Knots](#). Illustrated tying instructions for 33 knots. From Dmitry Nikolayev. For the Palm Pilot. (Is there really knot tying software for Palm and not for Mac or Unix? I guess we know what OS will dominate in the 21st century.)
- [Knots and Fishing Knots](#). Animated knot-tying software for Windows by Frank Cooke. A large number of knots, taught with great clarity. View the tying process step by step, forwards and backwards. Better instruction than books or videotape. The web site now has a sample animation.

### Software for knot theory

- [KED](#). A Knot Editor for Windows by Kenny Hunt. Downloadable.
- [KnotSolver](#). Software by Lars Gilson. Platform unknown. Downloadable.
- [KnotTheory](#). Software by Mitsuyuki Ochiai and Earl Fife. For the Mac. Downloadable.
- [KnotPlot](#). The most flexible and elegant knot theory software. By [Rob Scharein](#). I use a few graphics from KnotPlot with Rob's permission on this page.
- [Knotscape](#). Software by Jim Hoste and Morwen Thistlethwaite. For Linux, Sun, and Alpha. Downloadable.
- [Knot Thickness](#). Some graphical output from a program by Eric Rawdon for maximizing the thickness of a given knot. Rawdon's program is a descendant of Ying-Qing Wu's Ming (see below).
- [LinkTool](#). Anonymous software for mathematical knot theory. (It might not be anonymous for those who download the source code, but I haven't done that.) For NeXT machines. Downloadable.
- [Maple-Generated Knot](#). An elegant trefoil graphic generated by the mathematical software, Maple. Programmed by ijmcgee.
- [Ming](#). Software by Ying-Qing Wu.
- [Programs and Procdures](#). Programs for mathematical knot theory, collected by the Liverpool University Knot Theory Group.
- [SnapPea](#). A program for creating and studying hyperbolic 3-manifolds. For Windows,

the Mac, and soon for Linux. Downloadable.

- [Snap Pea](#). *Not* the same as the previous program. Software by Jeff Weeks. For the Mac. Downloadable.
- [Surface Evolver](#). Software by Kenneth Brakker. Downloadable source code for DOS, Windows, Mac, and Unix.

### Software for knot art

- [Celtic Assistant](#). Freeware for the Mac by James Walker. Downloadable.
- [Celtic Designer](#). For Windows. Free trial version, but the main version costs \$28.00. Anonymous.
- [A Celtic Doodler](#). A Java applet which lets you make Celtic knots. The applet was written by "Thau". Also see the author's [article](#) about the applet.
- [Celtic Knot Draw](#). Software by Saul Scudder. For Windows. Downloadable.
- [Celtic Knot Software](#). Mostly screen savers and desktop icons.
- [Celtic Knot Thingy](#). Freeware for Windows, Linux, and probably the Mac, by Douglas Zongker. Downloadable.
- [Celtic Knots Designer](#). Software for Windows, apparently by Rita Godfrey. Free trial version downloadable.
- [Excel spreadsheet](#) implementing some Andy Sloss algorithms for designing [Celtic knot images](#). From Jos Leys.
- [Knot](#). Software by Lloyd Burchill. For the Mac. (A Windows version is coming.) Downloadable.
- [Knots3D](#). Software by Steve Abbott. For Windows. Downloadable.
- [KnotTyer3D](#). Another knot program by Steve Abbott. Lets you design knots in 3D, view the knot from any 3D angle, and watch an animation of it tie from any 3D angle. For Windows. Downloadable.
- [Knotware](#). Software for Celtic knotwork by Chaz Boston Baden. The program is written in Perl and operates from the web site through interactive forms (simple form to start, more complex forms to refine).
- [KnotWorker](#). A Celtic knotwork design tool for Windows, from Goldcup Software and Design. A free trial version is available for downloading.
- [L'Art Celtique](#). Software for Celtic knot art by Thomas Guionnet, apparently for Windows. Described in French.
- [Square Knots](#). A Java applet for making Celtic knots in your browser. Click to lay down basic shapes, then click over the shapes to alter them. By Christian Mercat.
- Thomas Guionnet has implemented Christian Mercat's Celtic knot algorithm in [software for Windows](#) but does not apparently make the software available to others.

---

### Contents

[Knot Tying](#) | [Knot Theory](#) | [Knot Art](#) | [Knot Discussion](#) | [Knot Software](#) |  
[Knot Videos](#) | [Knot Books](#) | [Knot Gallery](#) | [Awards](#) | [Top](#)



## Knot Videos

### Knot Videos Sub-Sections

[Videos on knot tying](#) | [Videos on knot theory](#) | [Videos on knot art](#)

When I started this guide, I disregarded web pages advertising knotting videotapes, because I linked only to knotting content, not to ads for knotting content. I've slowly and selectively changed this policy over the years, and have now (9/2000) begun to collect links to knotting videos. I wish I had URLs for all the video sites I once visited and ignored. I hope to bring this section up to date over the next few revisions of the page. If you know of videos I've overlooked, please [drop me a line](#).

If a knotting video doesn't have its own web site, but is for sale from Amazon.com, then I have not made its title into a link. For these videos, I only know what Amazon.com has disclosed in its video catalogue.

### Videos on knot tying

- [The Art of Knot Tying](#). A 60 minute video on fishing knots. I can't tell from the ad who made the video, but it's sold by [Sportsman's Mall](#).
- Basic Knots. Sorry, I don't have any more information on this video.
  - [Buy this video from Amazon.com](#)
- [Brion Toss Videos](#). Look down the left-hand column of this page for Brion's four videos. Mostly on rigging, though one is on rope magic and one is on decorative knots. From [Brion Toss](#).
- Bush Knots. From Randall Breeuwsmma. Sorry, I don't have any more information on this video.
  - [Buy this video from Amazon.com](#)
- Fishin' Knots. From Les Igoe. Sorry, I don't have any more information on this video.
  - [Buy this video from Amazon.com](#)
- Fishing Knots. Sorry, I don't have any more information on this video.
  - [Buy this video from Amazon.com](#)
- Hooked On Fly Fishing: Fishing Knots for Fresh & Saltwater. Twenty-one fly-fishing knots taught by Jim and Kelly Watt.
  - [Buy this video from Amazon.com](#)
- How to Tie Fishing Knots. Sorry, I don't have any more information on this video.
  - [Buy this video from Amazon.com](#)
- Instructional Video of Fishing Knots & Rigs Volume I. Sorry, I don't have any more information on this video.
  - [Buy this video from Amazon.com](#)
- [Just Knots and a Few Splices](#). Two hours of clear instructions on 47 knots and 6

splices. Also see the companion video, [Why Knot?](#), which covers the same knots but "in the field" with commentary on how to use them. Which 47 knots and 6 splices? The web site has a [nice page of stills](#) previewing each one. From [iKnots](#).

- Knots. From Robert Koester. Sorry, I don't have any more information on this video.
  - [Buy this video from Amazon.com](#)
- [Knot Tying: The Basic Knots](#). A CD-ROM covering 21 basic knots, taught by Dave Gulden. There are two additional volumes in the series, one on advanced knots and one on splicing, though they don't yet have their own web pages. As you watch a video of a knot being tied, you can pause or start over at any point. Stills of the major tying stages moved to a different part of the screen for review. Useful. From [Beutner Multimedia](#).
- [Teach Yourself Knots and Splices](#). A 60 minute video on seven elementary knots. Includes a section on tying methods for lefties. From [Bennett Marine Videos](#).
  - [Buy this video from Amazon.com](#)
- Useful Knots for Boatmen. Sorry, I don't have any more information on this video.
  - [Buy this video from Amazon.com](#)

### Videos on knot theory

- [MSRI Knot Theory Videos](#). Videotaped lectures given at [MSRI](#) (Mathematical Sciences Research Institute, Berkeley, California) between 1995 and 1997. More recent lectures are on [streaming video](#). Not all on knot theory. When the page loads, use your browser to search for "knot".
- [Not Knot](#). A 1991 knot theory video from the [Geometry Center](#). The web site also contains a good number of [stills](#) from the video. The distributor, [A. K. Peters](#), also has [a page](#) on Not Knot.

### Videos on knot art

- [Martin Combs' Decorative Knotting Videos](#). One on making a bellrope and one on boatswain pipe lanyard. The web page shows stills of the finished products.
- [Dave Does Knot Work Videos](#). Two videos for sale, one on Monkey's Fists, and one on Turk's Heads, each two hours long. From Dave Hedgepeth.
- [KnotsCD](#). Instructions for 64 knots. Available on a CD or as a huge downloadable MPG. I can't tell whether the MPG is all or part of the CD and I'm not going to download the file and buy the CD in order to find out.
- [Knots Made Easy](#). A 94 minute video on decorative knotting. From Richard Phelan. The web site contains a nice [history of fancy knotting](#). Although priced in pounds, knotters outside England will apparently pay in their own local currency if they order by credit card.

---

## Contents

[Knot Tying](#) | [Knot Theory](#) | [Knot Art](#) | [Knot Discussion](#) | [Knot Software](#) |  
[Knot Videos](#) | [Knot Books](#) | [Knot Gallery](#) | [Awards](#) | [Top](#)



## Knot Books

### Knot Books Sub-Sections

[Books on knot tying](#) | [Books on knot theory](#) | [Books on knot art](#)

Here are some of my favorite knotting books and an easy method to buy them at a discount. This service is offered [in association with Amazon.com](#).



With a few exceptions, I've listed books alphabetically by author's surname within each category. Because retail prices and the Amazon.com discounts are subject to change, I no longer list them. For prices, click through on a title of interest.

Here in the book section, the  flag means that a book is new to my page, not that it is newly published.

## Books on Knot Tying

- [The Alternative Knot Book](#), by **Harry Asher**, Sheridan House, 1989. Instead of simply giving instructions on the basic knots, Asher offers a theory of knot classification based on the similarities of knots to one another, and teaches the knots in their natural order. Paperback.
  - The only other book of this kind that I know is, unfortunately, not available from Amazon.com. It is **A Fresh Approach to Knotting and Ropework: Knots Arranged According to Their Structure**, by **Charles Warner**, published by Charles Warner (Picton, Australia), 1992. Of the two, Asher's is shorter and simpler; Warner's more extensive and sophisticated. Paperback.
- [The Ashley Book of Knots](#), by **Clifford W. Ashley**, Doubleday, 1944 (reissued 1993). If you are interested in practical knots and knot tying, this is the one book to own. [Ashley](#) collected knots from every occupation, illustrated them by hand, and described them in his concise and salty prose. His collection of 3,900 knots and 7,000 illustrations is unrivaled for scope and utility, even today. All knotting literature refers to it. Unusual knots without names are typically cited by their Ashley number. To make a *prima facie* case that a knot is a new creation, one need only show that it does not appear in Ashley. It makes a great read for the knotting lore interspersed among the technical

instructions and the window it provides onto many fascinating past forms of manual labor. Because the knots for (say) square-rigged sailing ships, stevedores, steeplejacks, and draymen have been made obsolete by modern technologies, the book is of immense historical value, even if these knots were not transferable to other applications. Ashley has his weaknesses, but these quickly become part of the charm of the book. For example, are some of his instructions confusing, or is he simply overestimating our intelligence and experience? Hardback only.

- My views are clear. If you can only buy one knotting book, buy Ashley's. There are a hundred knotting primers and collections shorter and less interesting than Ashley's. Most of them are not worth buying if you already own Ashley. But the best of them, while less comprehensive than Ashley, have their own advantages which make them useful even alongside Ashley. In this select company, I would put Bigon and Regazzoni (1982), Budworth (1997), Budworth (1999), Fry (1996), Pawson (1998), Toss (1990), and Toss (1998), all of which are listed below.
- **[The Art of Rigging](#)**, by **George Biddlecombe**, Dover Publications, 1990 (original 1925). If you think you know knots but can't tell your keckling from your kevels, your jiggers from your jib-guys, your gammoning from your gripes, or your catheads from your catherpins, then you need this book. It's the first I've seen that doesn't presuppose that you already know. Paperback.
- **[The Morrow Guide to Knots](#)**, by **Mario Bigon and Guido Regazzoni**, translated by Maria Piotrowska, William Morrow & Co., 1982 (Italian original 1981). A first-rate book, one of the best for the 70 knots it covers. Unusually clear illustrations, using color photographs of colored cord. Contains some rare and useful knots hard to find elsewhere, such as a bowline when the standing part is under tension (pp. 80-81) and the self-locking Poldo tackle (p. 118). One of the best collections after Ashley. Paperback.
- **[The Knot Book](#)**, by **Geoffrey Budworth**, Sterling Publishers, 1985. More comprehensive than most of the general collections of useful knots, with exceptionally clear descriptions and illustrations, by one of the greatest living experts on knotcraft. But for even better books by the same author, see the next two titles. Paperback.
- **[The Complete Book of Knots](#)**, by **Geoffrey Budworth**, Lyons & Burford, 1997. This is an elegant and useful book. The word "Complete" in the title is the only false note. It covers all the well-known knots and an unusually large number of lesser-known knots, new knots, and knot tricks. (He is the only major knot compiler who acknowledges that new knots are still being discovered.) The instructions and illustrations are very clear. Budworth



amazon.com.  
click here  
SHOP  
HERE  
NOW!

Hot Categories:

- [Books](#)
- [Electronics](#)
- [Music](#)
- [Camera & Photo](#)
- [Kitchen & Housewares](#)
- [DVD](#)
- [Computer & Video Games](#)
- [Toys and Games](#)
- [Software](#)
- [Wireless Phones](#)
- [Tools & Hardware](#)
- [Video](#)
- [Outdoor Living](#)
- [Gifts & Gift Certificates](#)
- [Outlet](#)

Privacy Information

includes a brief historical note on each knot, and a useful table on the best knots for different spheres —sailing, fishing, climbing, and so on. One of the best collections after Ashley. Paperback.

- **[The Ultimate Encyclopedia of Knots and Ropework](#)** by **Geoffrey Budworth**, Lorenz Books, 1999. How do you top the misnamed Complete Book of Knots? With the misnamed Ultimate Encyclopedia of Knots. This book is the first lush, coffee-table book of knots ever published. It's not as comprehensive as it appears, with 256 pages (to Ashley's 620) and roughly one knot per page (to Ashley's 5-7). The large, color photographs are more beautiful (for knot fanciers) than instructive. The knots are well-chosen from all fields and are marked with icons for their common applications. A worthy collection, but Budworth is starting to repeat himself. Hardback.
- **[The Forensic Analysis of Knots and Ligatures](#)**, by **Robert Chisnall**, Lightning Powder Co., 2000. If you're reading this page, then you're probably among the top knotting experts in your town. Hence, you may eventually be asked by police to help analyze knots and ligatures left at crime scenes to learn what they reveal about the person who tied them. Chisnall's book is the best ever written on the subject and the only one still in print. Knotting expertise is not enough to do well in this field. You need Chisnall's many years of experience dealing with murder, suicide, and accident, working with police, preserving evidence, and testifying in court. Hardback.
- **Climbing knots.** Also see the [rope rescue books](#).
  - Climbing is too dangerous for you to rely on your knotting common sense. Many classic knots that work beautifully in fiber rope, with its high friction, slip in modern synthetic climbing rope. Some useful climbing knots, like the Munter Hitch and Klemheist, simply aren't known in other domains like sailing or fishing. Carabiners make some knots unnecessary and at the same time give rise to the need for creative new knots. Finally, climbers often tie in with flat nylon webbing, which raises new knotting challenges not always covered by the knots evolved for leather straps. These are the main reasons why climbing-specific knot books are useful.
  - **[Knots for Climbers](#)**, by **Craig Luebben**, Chockstone Press, 1995. Short, clear, and well-illustrated. Paperback.
  - **[Climbing Knots For Lefties and Righties](#)**, by **John McMullen**, ICS Books, 1997. Not only one of the most thorough and best-illustrated of climbing knot books, but the only knot book of any kind I've seen that gives more than a passing nod to left- and right-handed versions of practical knots. Paperback.
  - **[Knots and Ropes for Climbers](#)**, by **Duane Raleigh**, Stackpole Books, 1998. Roughly as thorough as Luebben, less thorough than McMullen. Has longer prose commentaries on each knot than either of the other books. Clear illustrations. Paperback.
- **[The Art of Knotting and Splicing](#)**, by **Cyrus L. Day**, Naval Institute Press, 4th ed., 1987 (first edition, 1947). A jumbo knotting guide illustrated with black and white photographs, brought up to date (especially for synthetic cord) by Ray O. Beard, Jr. and M. Lee Hoffman, Jr. Large enough to contain tips and tricks the ordinary primers and manuals cannot include. Paperback.
- **[Knots and Splices](#)**, by **Cyrus L. Day**, International Marine, 1953. A thin, short classic. Combines a good selection of knots with black and white photographs. The photographs are not as clear as those in contemporary books, but are clear enough. Still worth buying if you need to fit your knotting manual into your pocket. Paperback.
- **[The Complete Book of Knots and Ropework](#)**, by **Eric C. Fry**, David and Charles, 1996. Another good book by a knoter who knows better than to use the word "Complete" in the

title (see Budworth 1997 above). Ninety-five knots well-illustrated with black-and-white photographs. Unlike other general knot manuals, this one gives half its space (as opposed to a quarter or less) to decorative knots. This book reprints Fry's *Knots and Ropework* and *Practical and Decorative Ropework* in a single volume. Paperback.

- [\*\*The Complete Guide To Knots and How To Tie Them\*\*](#), by **Walter F. Gibson**, Lifetime Books, 1997 (original 1961). Gibson is yet another knowledgeable knottist who doesn't know what "complete" means. More inclusive than the run-of-the-mill collections I omit from my book list, but not as thorough or well-illustrated as most that I do list. About a third of the book is devoted to magic tricks.
- [\*\*Stage Rigging Handbook\*\*](#), by **Jay O. Glerum**, Southern Illinois University Press, second ed., 1997 (original, 1987). Detailed instruction in all the knots, ropework, and hardware needed to rig a theatrical stage, plus the mathematics for calculating loads and forces. The definitive handbook for this field. Paperback.
- [\*\*KnotCraft: The Practical and Entertaining Art of Tying Knots\*\*](#), by **Allan and Paulette Macfarlan**, Dover Publications, 1967 (original 1967). What sets this book apart from other short collections of useful knots is the well-researched introductory chapter on the history of knotting, many illustrated applications for different knots (as opposed to the knots themselves), and sections on knot games and magic. Paperback.
- [\*\*The Handbook of Knots\*\*](#), by **Des Pawson**, DK Publishing, Inc., 1998. An excellent handbook by one of the co-founders of the International Guild of Knot Tyers. A very wide selection of knots, very well-illustrated with color photographs of colored cord. Each knot is described and photographed in several steps. One of the best knot collections after Ashley. Bound in stiff, flexible covers to withstand wear and tear. (For a while my link took you to the wrong book in Amazon.com. I've fixed it. My apologies to Des Pawson and those who wanted to buy his book.)
- **Rope magic**
  - If you are reading this, then you probably carry a hank of cord in your pocket wherever you go. If you do, you might as well know a few tricks. But even if you don't like to astound your friends, there are some nice tricks in these books that have helped me in my (pathetically unsuccessful) assault on the [world knot tying speed record](#).
  - [\*\*Fun With String\*\*](#), by **Joseph Leeming**, Dover Publications, 1974 (original 1940). Most of the "fun" is rope magic, but some is ordinary knotting and knot crafts. Paperback.
  - [\*\*Self-Working Rope Magic\*\*](#), by **Karl Fulves**, Dover Publications, 1990. More illustrations per trick than other magic books. Paperback.
  - [\*\*Abbott's Encyclopedia of Rope Tricks for Magicians\*\*](#), by **Stewart James**, Dover Publications, 1975 (original 1945). Named "Abbott's" after the original publisher. At 400 pages, this is the most thorough collection of rope tricks I've seen. Paperback.
  - [\*\*Magic with Rope, Robbon, & String\*\*](#), by **Bill Severn**, Stackpole Books, 1982. Clear and well-illustrated. Paperback.
  - Some of the other books I list in the Knot Tying section (notably, **Ashley**, **Gibson**, and the **Macfarlans**) also contain a good selection of knot tricks.
  - By the way, the single best knot trick I've ever found is at pp. 98-99 of Louis Kauffman's **On Knots**, a mathematical treatise listed below with the [books on knot theory](#). I'm sure you've seen the trick in which someone ties an overhand knot by crossing their arms before picking up the cord, and then uncrossing them. Kauffman shows you how to do the same trick without crossing your arms first. The version of

this trick in Ashley #2576 and Budworth 1977 [p. 151] is not nearly as good.

- **Rope rescue.** Also see the [climbing knot books](#).
  - Books on rope rescue contain ordinary knots, climbing knots, some knots rarely used elsewhere, and comprehensive coverage of harnesses, anchors, and rigging for rescues under many different circumstances. Unlike most knot books, which simply show the tying steps for a selection of knots out of context, these books show the knots and rigging procedures in action, with tips on safety, alternatives, and when to apply what. As in climbing, this is an area where the stakes are high and learning from the experience of others can make the difference between life and death.
  - [Engineering Practical Rope Rescue Systems](#), by **Michael G. Brown**, Delmar, 2000. A large book (322 oversized pages) on the full-scope of rope rescue, emphasizing the practical. It avoids asserting that there is just one way to rig a given rescue, and shows the safety and speed issues which would help you choose among alternatives. It is one of the few books willing to disclose mistakes in earlier books, and to go beyond the basics on some technical subjects, e.g. the metallurgy of rescue hardware, legal and professional regulations, and highlines. Illustrated with black-and-white drawings and photographs. Paperback.
  - [CMC Rope Rescue](#), edited by **James A. Frank**, CMC Rescue Inc., 1998. A large book (208 oversized pages) on rope rescue in nearly all settings. This makes it more general than the specialized works below, which is a plus if you want orientation or flexibility, a minus if you work in a special field of rope rescue. Black-and-white drawings. Paperback.
  - [Swiftwater Rescue: A Manual for the Rescue Professional](#), by **Slim Ray**, CFS Press, 1997. A large book (243 oversized pages) covering its special topic, rescue from whitewater rivers and floods, in great detail. Many black-and-white drawings and a few photographs. Paperback.
  - [Confined Space and Structural Rope Rescue](#), by **Michael Roop, Thomas Vines, and Richard Wright**, Mosby-Year Book, 1998. Color drawings and photographs illustrate this large book (384 oversized pages), focused on rescues from confined spaces and other difficult locations. Paperback.
  - [On Rope: North American Vertical Rope Techniques](#), by **Bruce Smith and Allen Padgett**, National Speleological Society, new edition, 1996. A large book (382 oversized pages) on rope techniques for vertical ascents and descents, for example in "caving, search and rescue, firefighting, rope rescue, mountaineering, window cleaning, river runners, rock climbing, aborists, event riggers, military operations, challenge courses, nautical applications, and rappellers" —to quote the title page. Numerous black-and-white drawings and a few photos. Very detailed text. (The "new edition" of 1996 and the "second edition" of 1997 are apparently the same; at least they have the same ISBN.) Hardback only.
- [Nautical Knots and Lines Illustrated](#), by **Paul and Arthur Snyder**, International Marine, 1997. A short book with some material not covered in longer books on the standard knots. Clear black and white photographs, several per knot to show successive stages. Paperback.
- [Knowing the Ropes: A Sailor's Guide to Selecting, Rigging, and Handling Lines Aboard](#), by **Roger C. Taylor**, International Marine, second edition, 1993. Goes well beyond the basic boating knots. Covers essentially all the applications for rope on shipboard, with abundant detail on technique, efficiency, and safety. Clear black and white drawings. Paperback.
- [Chapman's Nautical Guides: Knots](#), by **Brion Toss**, Hearst Marine Books, 1990. A

remarkably clear and useful handbook of boating knots, more comprehensive than other knotting books limited to one domain (more than 100 knots covered). Bound in flexible covers to stand up to the wear of a working life. Lucid illustrations by Gae Pilon. One of the best collections after Ashley. For Toss's *magnum opus*, see the next entry.

- **[The Complete Rigger's Apprentice](#)**, by **Brion Toss**, International Marine, 1998. Toss's *Rigger's Apprentice* and *Rigger's Locker* reprinted (and synthesized) in a single volume. Toss is the only contemporary writer who can compare to Clifford Ashley and Hervey Garrett Smith in technical knowledge, literary skill, and nautical authenticity. These very recent books are already classics. Loaded with knowledge and lore one fears is slipping away, even if elegantly preserved in books like this one. Illustrated with wit by Robert Shetterly. One of the few must-have books after Ashley. Hardback only.

## Books on Knot Theory

- **[The Knot Book: An Elementary Introduction to the Mathematical Theory of Knots](#)**, by **Colin C. Adams**, W.H. Freeman and Co., 1994. One of the two best introductions to mathematical knot theory (with Livingston, below). Introduces all the basic terms and concepts, with well-designed exercises. Also includes open questions to challenge advanced readers. Hardback only.
- **[Knots and Surfaces](#)**, by **N.D. Gilbert and T. Porter**, Oxford University Press, 1997 (original 1994). An introduction to knot theory and the topology of surfaces, showing their connections to one another and to such related fields as graph theory and group theory. Clearly written and illustrated. Presupposes no knot theory and only undergraduate mathematics. Paperback.
- **[On Knots](#)**, by **Louis H. Kauffman**, Princeton University Press, 1987. A serious treatise that I recommended above for a great knotting magic trick at pp. 98-99. Not an introduction to knot theory, except for the mathematically able. If you've read one of the good introductions (by Adams or Livingston, for example) and want more, this is a good book to try. Wonderfully apt and playful illustrations. Hardback only.
- **[Knot Theory](#)**, by **Charles Livingston**, Mathematical Association of America, 1993. One of the two best general introductions to mathematical knot theory (with Adams, above). Illuminates the field from the perspectives of geometry, combinatorics, and algebra. Hardback only.
- **[Symmetric Bends: How to Join Two Lengths of Cord](#)**, by **Roger E. Miles**, World Scientific Publishing Co., 1995. A fascinating mix of mathematics and practical knot-tying. Miles gives the mathematics of the symmetric bends (like the Hunter's bend and the Zeppelin bend), sixty variations on the theme, and instructions for inventing new ones. Hardback only.
- **[Knots and Links](#)**, by **Dale Rolfsen**, Publish or Perish, Inc., 1976. One of the classic textbooks in the field. Clear and thorough, but (like Kauffman) not an introduction except for those with a mathematical background. Especially helpful is the appendix (by James Bailey and Ali Roth) on prime knots and links. Paperback.
- **[Knots](#)**, by **Alexei Sossinsky**. The most readable introduction I've seen. What it lacks in thoroughness, it provides in clarity. Very readable introductions to a miscellany of knot theory topics from the elementary to the somewhat advanced. If it were more thorough or systematic, I'd rank it among the best introductions to the field. Hardback.
- **[History and Science of Knots](#)**, edited by **J. C. Turner and P. Van De Griend**, World Scientific Publishing Co., 1996. This is the most gratifying book on knots to be published in a long time. It proves that knotting by prehistoric peoples can be studied. It proves that knotting can be regarded as one of the earliest and most widespread technologies on which civilization

depends. It's expensive (\$78) and only available in hardback. But if you always knew that there was more to the study of knots than either the knot-tying manuals or the mathematical treatises let on, but didn't know where to put your hands on it, here it is. Hardback only.

## Books on Knot Art

- [Celtic Knotwork](#), by **Iain Bain**, Sterling Pub. Co., 1992. A step-by-step guide for beginners, emphasizing the construction of grids to fit the shape in which you'll be working. Lovely drawn illustrations of the techniques, photographs of historical specimens. Becomes quite advanced by the end. Paperback.
- [The Complete Book of Decorative Knots](#), by **Geoffrey Budworth**, The Lyons Press, 1998. A thorough guide to decorative knots with sections on lanyard knots, button and globe knots, Turk's heads, mats and hitching, and plaits and braids. (Thorough does not mean "complete", as Budworth and his publisher should know.) Clear drawings, usually many per knot. In addition to instructions, each knot is accompanied by a few words on its applications and history. Paperback.
- [Chinese Knotting](#), by **Lydia Chen**, Echo Books, n.d. An ancient and beautiful art, almost destroyed by the Cultural Revolution. Lydia Chen has done more than anyone else to preserve and revive it. Stunning color photographs of classical and contemporary examples, many of the best by the author herself. Distinctively Chinese and quite different from Western decorative knotting. This is the book that persuaded me that "decorative knotting" is a true art, not mere decoration. Hardback only.
  - If you like Chen's book, you will also like **Hanamusubi: Traditional Japanese Flower-Knots** by **Toshiko Tanaka**, Kyoto Shoin Co., Ltd., 1993. Paperback. Unfortunately, Tanaka's book is not available from Amazon.com.
- [Encyclopedia of Knots and Fancy Rope Work](#), by **Raoul Graumont and John Hensel**, Cornell Maritime Press, 4th ed., 1952. Over 700 pages of knot descriptions and photographs. There are better books for practical knots, but for decorative knots it is unrivaled in its scope and detail. Hardback only.
- [The Book of Ornamental Knots](#), by **John J. Hensel**, Cornell Maritime Press, 1990 (Original, 1973). Hensel is the co-author of the *Encyclopedia of Knots and Fancy Rope Work* (above). While the larger work is more like a museum, this one is much more a primer. A good introduction to large knotting projects (belts, mats, wall hangings) by one of the masters. Illustrated with black and white photographs. Paperback.
- [Celtic Design: Knotwork: The Secret Method of the Scribes](#), by **Aidan Meehan**, Thames and Hudson, 1991. A step-by-step guide for beginners. Elegant illustrations and calligraphy by the author. Builds up to some complex designs. Paperback.
- [The Book of Decorative Knots](#), by **Peter Owen**, Lyons & Burford, 1994. This is the best introductory book I've seen on decorative knots. It's not encyclopedic, it's not intimidating, and it presupposes no knotting sophistication. Short with clear black and white line drawings and concise descriptions. (Having said that, it wouldn't take much practice for the beginner to outgrow this book.) Paperback.
- [How to Draw Celtic Knotwork](#), by **Andy Sloss**, Blandford Books, 1995. Unlike the other Celtic knotting books listed here (by Bain, Meehan, and Sturrock), Sloss breaks Celtic knotting designs down into the distinct lines and square modules which may be combined to make complex designs. Because each line and module can be named, he produces a notation for arbitrary patterns. The modules are illustrated for hand-drawing and computer graphics. Paperback.

- [The Arts of the Sailor](#), by **Hervey Garrett Smith**, Dover Publications, 1990 (original 1953). This book is about half and half practical knots and sailors' knot art. I've arbitrarily decided to list it with the art books. Smith is like Ashley in that he draws his own, very clear illustrations, and writes with the authentic saltiness of an old sailor. This is one of the few knot books that is as enjoyable to read as it is to use. Smith wrote a subsequent book, [The Marlinspike Sailor](#) (International Marine, 1993, original 1960) that covers much the same ground as **Arts of the Sailor**, but with a slightly greater tilt toward artful knotting. It also has a useful appendix on splicing woven, synthetic cord. Both are paperbacks.
- [Celtic Knotwork Designs](#), by **Sheila Sturrock**, Guild of Master Craftsman Publications, Ltd., 1997. A step-by-step guide for beginners. Handsome illustrations. Paperback.



Also see this complete and up-to-date list of [all Amazon products pertaining to knots](#).

---

**Contents**

[Knot Tying](#) | [Knot Theory](#) | [Knot Art](#) | [Knot Discussion](#) | [Knot Software](#) |  
[Knot Videos](#) | [Knot Books](#) | [Knot Gallery](#) | [Awards](#) | [Top](#)



---

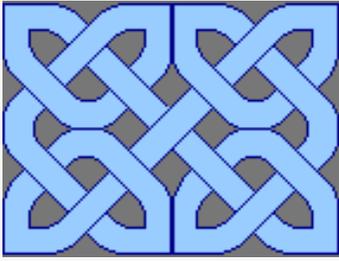
**This page moved** on December 12, 1997. You are already at the new URL.

To catch users who type the old URL, or other incorrect variations on the correct URL, I have set up several aliases at my server. If you type **/peters/** (rather than **/~peters/**) or **/suber/** (rather than **/~peters/**), or **html** (rather than **htm**), then an alias will automatically redirect you to this page. But these URLs are incorrect and I cannot promise that the aliases correcting them will be supported forever. Please make sure that the link or bookmark that got you here has the correct URL:

**<http://www.earlham.edu/~peters/knotlink.htm>**

See my policy on [dead links](#).

Last revised June 2, 2004. 



[Peter Suber](#), [Department of Philosophy](#), [Earlham College](#), Richmond, Indiana, 47374,

U.S.A.

[peters@earlham.edu](mailto:peters@earlham.edu)

[Copyright](#) © 1996-2004, Peter Suber.

[Artwork credits](#)

[< Back](#)

# *The Art of Knot Tying*



[Knots on the Web](#)

[Ropers Knot Page](#)

[The Knotting Dictionary](#)

[The International Guild of Knot Tiers](#)

[The Young Sailor's Guide to Knot Tying and Sailing](#)

[The WWW Knot Index](#)



© 2001 Owens Yacht Sales, Inc.  
371 Canal Park Drive  
Duluth, MN 55802 U.S.A.  
Tel: (218) 722-9212  
FAX: (218) 722-4730  
Toll Free: 1 (800) 879-2684  
[e-mail: owens@owensyacht.com](mailto:owens@owensyacht.com)

# knots

---

## Navigation

[Search/Browse](#)

[Main Page](#)



[Recreation](#)



[hobbies and  
crafts](#)



[knots](#)

## Guides

[Knots on the Web](#)



keywords: **decorative knots, knots,  
mathematical knot theory**

[Ropers Knot Page](#)



keywords: **knots**



# RECYCLE-A-BIKE

# BIKE SALE



## Martin Combs

[roundturn@hotmail.com](mailto:roundturn@hotmail.com)

PO Box 9573

Chesapeake, Virginia 23321

United States

## KNOT INFO

[INTERNATIONAL GUILD OF KNOT TYERS](#): A good organization if you are interested in knots, and knotwork.

[THE PACIFIC AMERICAS BRANCH OF THE INTERNATIONAL GUILD OF KNOT TYERS](#):

[ONLINE KNOT MUSEUM](#): The only photos of knotwork on the net that I know of. (The knot photos are under the poetry)

["FID-O"](#): If you are going to be doing some splicing you might want to have a look at some of these cool splicing tools.

[BOOKS ON KNOTS AND TALL SHIPS](#): Also a good video on decorative knotwork and a good book on the U.S.

Lifesaving Service, and a couple of knot tying materials sources. And for the bellrope makers the elusive brass thimble.

[KNOTS ON THE WEB](#): An excellent site with lots of links to other knot sites, nice artwork also.

[ROPER'S KNOT LINKS](#): Another excellent website with categories (sailing, climbing, fishing, etc.) take a look you'll like it.

[KNOT TYING VIDEOS BY MARTIN COMBS](#): A couple of videos for sale that will assist you in making a bellrope and also boatswain pipe lanyards.

[ANDERSON LEATHER](#): Check out the photo's of the Corvette (the other photos are good also)

[DIETZ LANTERNS FOR SALE](#): My favorite brand of kerosene lantern, good to have on hand for emergencies, I used mine for 7 days after Hurricane Isabel

[DAVID GOODCHILDS BOOK SITE](#): A good source for nautical classics a few good knot books also.

[TOMMY COMBS CARVINGS](#): My Dads page with his waterfowl carvings. (If the link doesn't work you can use this address and type it in: <http://www.freeyellow.com/members2/ladybug1998/index.html>)

[NIKI'S MACRAME PAGE](#): Info on macrame and links to other macrame sites

[Turks Heads and Mats By T J Bartruff](#): Turkeyshead Information

[DAVID MORGAN BRAIDING SUPPLIES](#): Looking for a source for Kangaroo leather in the USA they have it. Other good braiding supplies also.

[Marlinespike.com: Tim Whittens Knotwork](#): Great examples of bellropes and chest becketts and he sells them also, excellent knotwork.

[KNOT TYING COMPUTER PROGRAMS](#): By Frank in Sisters Oregon, have a look in there he has some demos and a screen saver.



### KNOT TYING RESOURCES

(This is one of my recently made bellropes, it is made out of several sizes of cotton cord and contains a core made from scraps from other bellropes) I think it came out pretty good, one of these days I'll have to get me a bell.

I have had a lot of requests about instructions to construct a bellrope like the one in the photo so I purchased a good tripod and have put together a video showing how I put one together step by step so if you would like a copy contact me and I'll give you more info.

**ONE OF MY GOALS WITH MY BELLROPES**: I would really like to have one of my bellropes make it to the silver screen as one of the props in a movie, so if any producers, directors, prop suppliers, whoever, anyone in the business that might be able to use a bellrope in some of their scenes, just let me know.

"NEW" Check out the E-Bay link in the links, a very easy to use tool for looking for knot items for sale in the e-bay online auctions, use it to find

books, knotted items, tools, etc. (You can pick up some pretty good deals in here sometimes and you can also sell some of your own things)

---

**CARRICK BEND PATTERNS:** I am looking for different carrick bend type patterns anchors, crosses, mats, whatever, (they could be any design) if you are interested in this area of knot tying please let me know and maybe we can trade ideas and swap around some information.

**KNEW KNOT KNEWS** (If you have heard something new in the knot tying world let me know and I might be able to post it)

I'm no longer in Coos Bay, I now reside in Chesapeake Virginia, my e-mail address is still the same so keep in touch.

**JUST REPUBLISHED:** A. Hyatt Verrills, "Knots, Splices and RopeWork: A Practical Treatise" First published in 1912 with a second edition in 1917. It contains all the usual knots (well drawn) along with some other more unusual ones such as the "French Shroud Knot", the "Alternative Eye" and the "Flemish Eye", etc. For information on obtaining a copy contact David Goodchild see the link for David Goodchild in the links section.

( I recieved a copy of this book recently, it had a few things in there that I hadn't seen before, even a section in the back on rope halters for horses. It's hardback and has a classy look about it there on the bookshelf, it's a must if you are a knot tying enthuseist and knot book collector.)

**NEW WEBSITE: THE KNOT BOARD** a bulletin board for the knot tying community. (just look over in my links section)

---

I've created this web page to assist in gathering information on sources for knot tying information and sources for knot tying materials. I've been fooling around with knots for the past 17 years and I have found that it is not easy to find a lot of materials used in knot tying and fancy ropework (especially here in Alaska) If you are interested in finding sources for information in knot tying check out my links section. If you are interested in finding sources for knot tying materials drop me an e-mail and I'll send you a copy of the e-mail message that I keep on file with a list of sources for materials, tools, books, etc. ( After some suggestions I have gone ahead and posted my list of sources at the bottom of this web page)

Also if you are looking for information on a specific topic send me an e-mail and I might be able to tell you where to find the information you are looking for or I might be able to put you in contact with someone that knows more about it.

Also I'm always looking for sources so if you know of any let me know and I'll add them to my list.

Sources: **THIS IS MY CURRENT LIST THAT I UTILIZE IF YOU KNOW OF ANY OTHER SOURCES FOR SUPPLIES LET ME KNOW AND I'LL INCLUDE IT.**

1. LEE VALLEY TOOLS 12 EAST RIVER ST. OGDENSBURG, NY, 13669 USA TELE:1-800-871-8158 in CANADA also LEE VALLEY TOOLS P.O. BOX 6295, Sth J OTTAWA, ONTARIO K2A 1T4 CANADA

CARRIES A GREAT VARIETY OF TOOLS FOR JUST ABOUT EVERYTHING THEY HAVE AN ITEM CALLED JAPANESE GARNISH AWLS THAT MAKE VERY GOOD PRICKERS, THEY ALSO CARRY WAXED POLYESTER SAIL TWINE, AND A NICE SELECTION OF KNIVES. (THEY HAVE A VERY GOOD CATALOG WITH LOTS OF NEAT STUFF)

2. THE KNOT SHOPPE PO BOX 202607 ANCHORAGE, AK 99520

[KNOT KNOTES:](#) A good website by another fellow knothead has some links to some good animations.

[BOOKERS CUSTOM CORDAGE:](#) Some interesting patterns in braided cords, they might even be able to do made to order patterns of your own design.

[DAVE DOES KNOT WORK:](#) A fellow knot artisian that offers his work for sale he also offers an instructional video on how to make the mysterious monkeyfist.

[CALLAHAN'S KNOT PHOTO ALBUM:](#) Some great photos of knotwork, (you got to have a look at these)

[KNOT CHAT \(Most of the time on sunday at 6PM Pacific\) :](#)

This page has been visited  times.

TELE: (907)274-2321 E-MAIL: the\_knot\_shoppe@prodigy.net

GOOD FOR JUST ABOUT ANY KIND OF CORD, A VERY GOOD SELECTION OF GOOD QUALITY PARACHUTE CORD, IN JUST ABOUT EVERY COLOR YOU COULD ASK FOR. SCREW THREADED NEEDLES ALSO THAT ARE JUST ABOUT THE NEATEST TRICK TO COME ALONG IN YEARS FOR KNOT TYERS. JUST TELL HIM WHAT YOU ARE LOOKING FOR AND HE'LL TELL YOU IF HE'S GOT IT OR CAN GET IT. (HE'S GOT BEADS, SPLIT RINGS AND LOTS OF OTHER THINGS THAT YOU WOULDN'T THINK OF USING FOR KNOT TYING TILL HE TELLS YOU ABOUT THEM)

3. FOOTROPE KNOTS 501 WHERESTED ROAD IPSWICH, IP2 8LL UNITED KINGDOM

LOTS OF STUFF, WRITE TO THE OWNER DES PAWSON HE'LL SEND YOU A NICE LITTLE CATALOG WITH JUST ABOUT EVERYTHING FOR KNOT TYING IN IT. THEY DO CUSTOM WORK ALSO, KNOTBOARDS, FENDERS, BELLROPES, ETC.

4. S-T LEATHER COMPANY P.O. BOX 78188 ST. LOUIS, MO 63178-8188 TELE: (314) 241-6009

THESE FOLKS CARRY THAT OLD TIME WAXED LINEN SAIL TWINE, THEY HAVE A GOOD CATALOG ALSO WITH GOOD LEATHER WORKING SUPPLIES THAT MIGHT BE USED WITH KNOT TYING.

5. MYSELF: MARTIN COMBS PO Box 9573 Chesapeake, Virginia 23321 E-MAIL: roundturn@hotmail.com

IF YOUR LOOKING FOR SOME OF THE HARD TO FIND KNOT BOOKS FROM OVERSEAS (ENGLAND, SCOTLAND, AUSTRALIA) (check out my books on knots and tall ships in the links section of my web page) I have a couple of materials that I use myself that I am now offering, including good quality 3 strand cotton cord in 5 sizes, and also solid brass thimbles like the one in the eye of the bellrope in the picture above.

6. TANDY LEATHER PO Box 791, Fort Worth, TX 76101 USA <http://www.tandyleather.com/>

LOTS OF LEATHERWORK SUPPLIES THAT YOU MIGHT BE ABLE TO USE FOR KNOT TYING WORK

7. R&W Enterprises 404 Nash Road P.O. Box 50420 New Bedford, MA 02745-0014

Tel. 508/997-3933 Fax 508/997-9990 Lots of different lines to use .

8. Wrisco Industries Inc. 6075 W 115th St Alsip, IL 60803 (708)385-7000 This source was suggested to me by Mr. Jackson as a source for venetian blind cord (says they have every color under the sun) \$51.36 / 1000 yard spool 1.4mm nylon cord Part # 160080

[Sign My Guestbook](#)  [View My Guestbook](#)

# FUN WITH KNOTS

or...I'm at the end of my rope

I found these links on Scouts\_L

---

**Animated knots for Scouts and Guides**

<http://www.mistral.co.uk/42brghtn/knots/>

**Australian Scouting Knotting Index**

[http://www.scouts.asn.au/knot\\_idx.html](http://www.scouts.asn.au/knot_idx.html)

**Best Knot Site on the Web**

<http://www.earlham.edu/suber/knotlink.htm>

**Knot Knots**

<http://dfw.net/~jazzman/knotter/knot.htm>

**Knotting programs for Windows**

<http://members.aol.com/idfrank/knots.html>

**Learning to tie knots**

<http://www.bsw.net/~bgibson/knots/> [with animations]

**Rope making instructions**

<http://www.northnet.org/ropeworks/>

**Rope making page**

<http://www.northnet.org/ropeworks/text/r.html>

**Ropers Knots Page**

<http://ww.realknots.com/knots> (with lots of further links)

**Turk's Head woggle**

<http://www.ccil.org/~dkohn/woggle.html>

**Woggle World, the Neckslide Nook**

<http://members.tripod.com/~cubclub/>

**WWW Knotting Index**

<http://www.realknots.com>

**Knot quiz**

<http://www.erols.com/astro/knotquiz.htm>

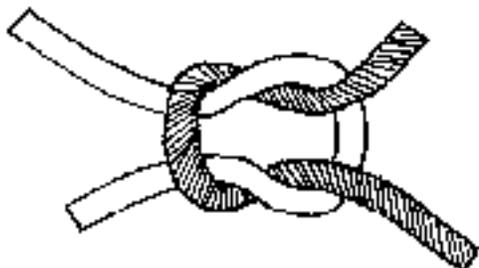
[Return to Applegate Way](#)

# Knopar på svenska och engelska

---

## Råbandsknop

Reef Knot (Square Knot (A.E.))



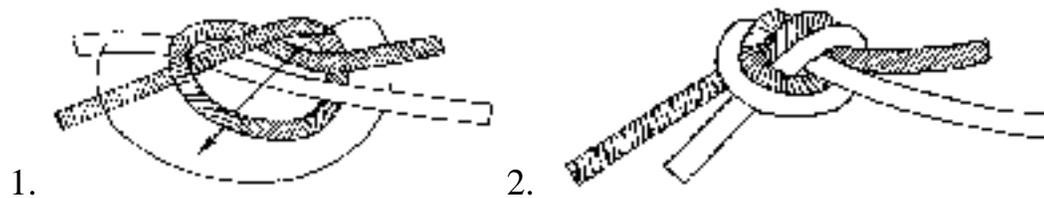
## Fiskarknop

Fisherman's Knot



## Vattenknop

Water Knot

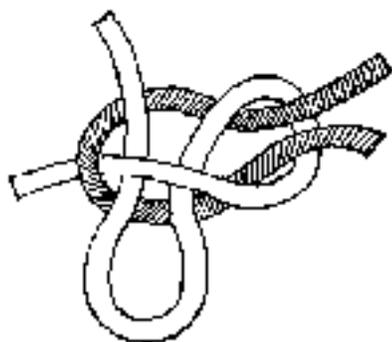


# Skotstek

## Sheetbend



Normal

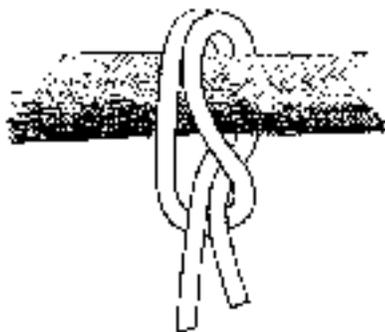


Skotstek med bukt

---

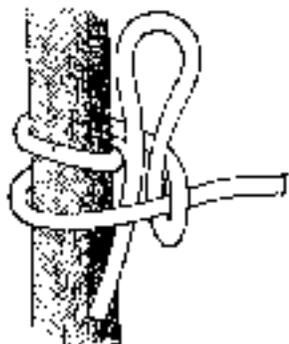
# Lärkhuvud

## Lark's head



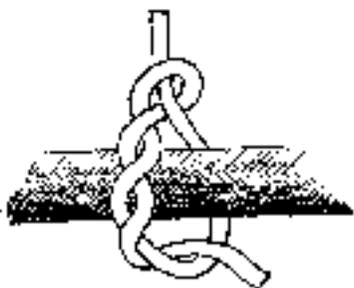
# Nyckstek

## Round Turn

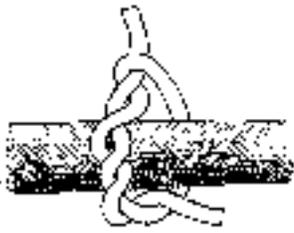


# Timmerstek

## Timber hitch



**RÄTT!**

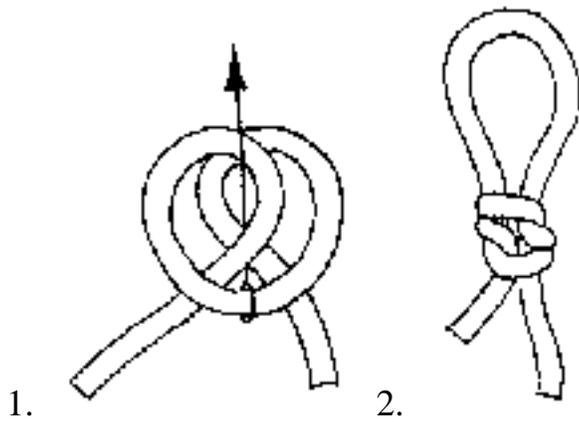


**FEL!!!**

---

## Kärleksknop

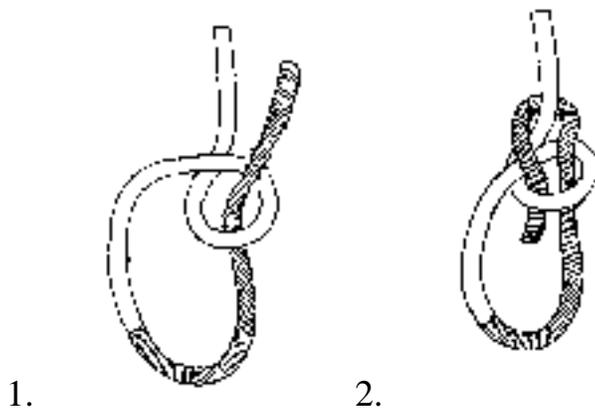
### Fisherman's Loop



---

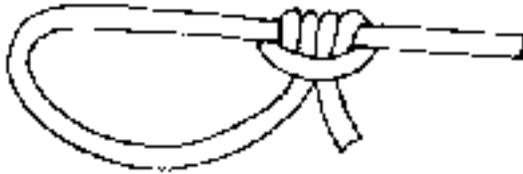
## Pålstek

### Bowline



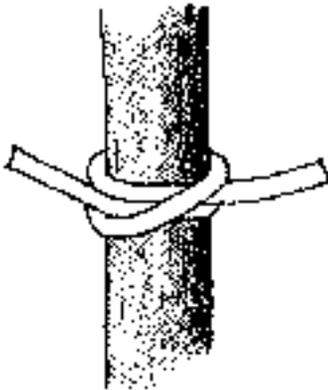
# Prusik

Prussick



# Dubbelt halvslag

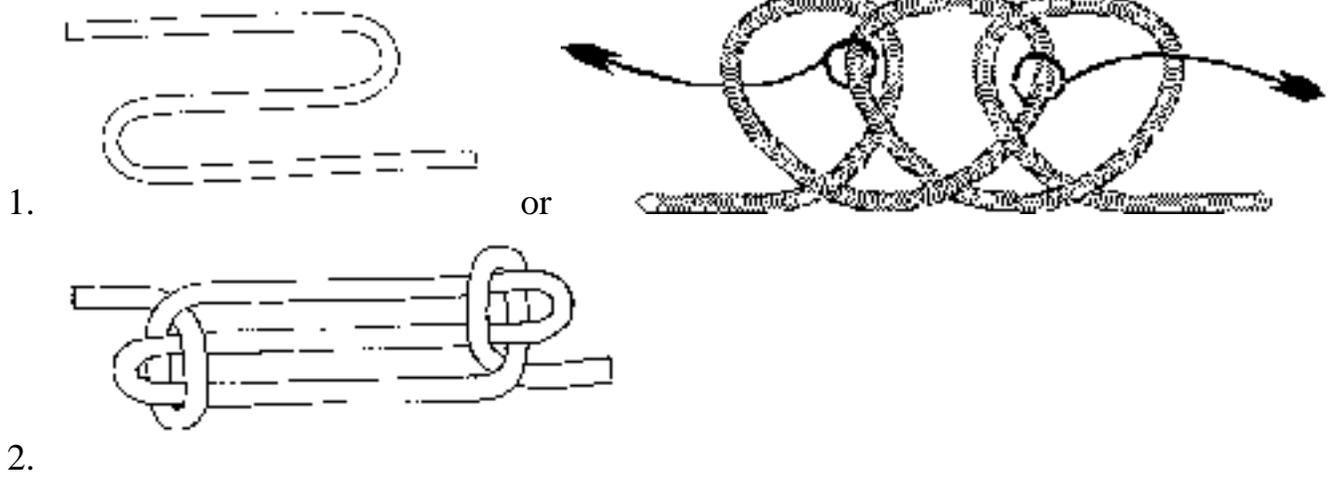
Clove hitch



---

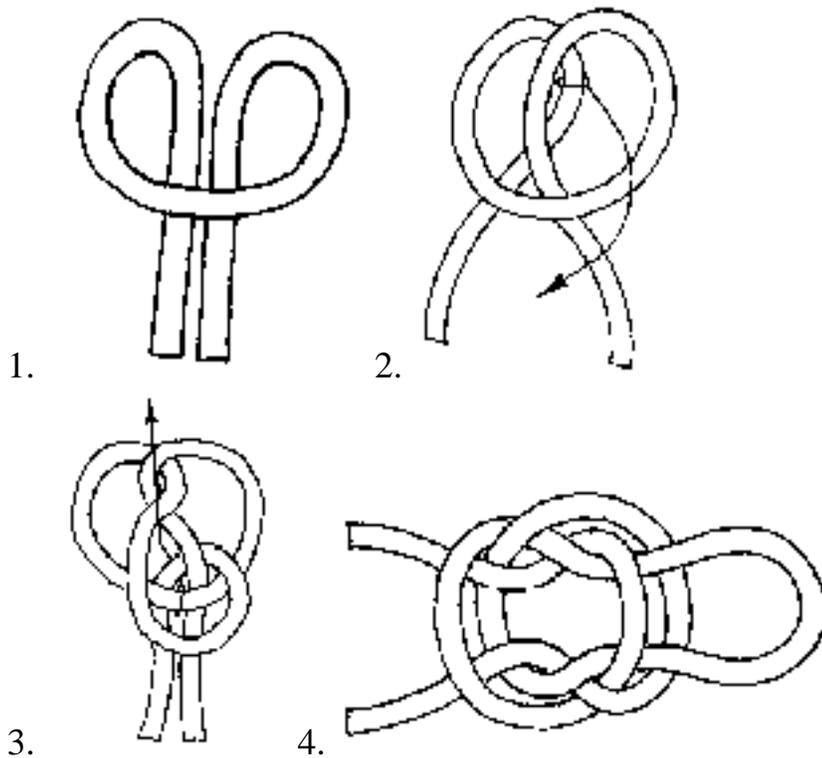
# Trumpetstek

Sheepshank



## Engelsk säckknop

### Jug Sling Hitch

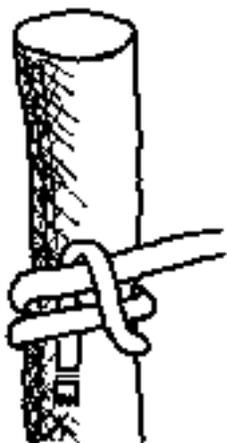


# Tagling

## Whipping

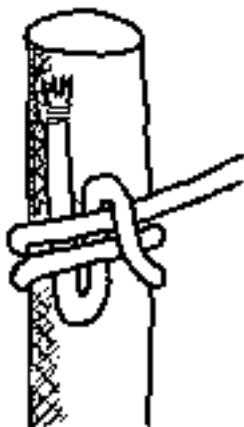


## Fiskarstek



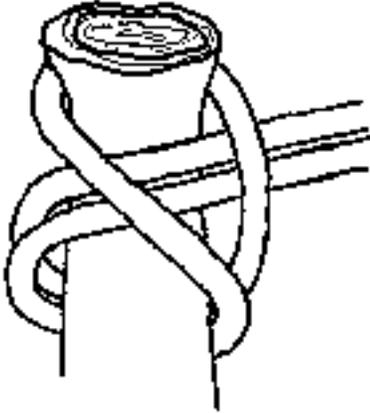
---

## Fiskarstek med bukt



# Pollarstek

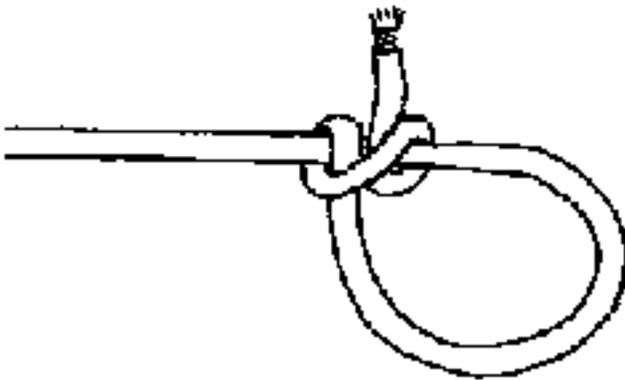
## Pile Hitch



---

# Flaggbänd

## Buntline Hitch



---

Mer information se [Kännets knoplexicon](#)

# Welcome to the



## 42nd BRIGHTON (Saltdean) Scout Group, East Sussex, UK

---

# Get Knotted!

## Animated Knots for Scouts

Welcome to our Animated Knots pages. We hope you find these pages useful and informative.

- |   |
|---|
|  <a href="#">Animated Knots</a>              |
|  <a href="#">Reader Survey Results</a>       |
|  <a href="#">Bibliography</a>                |
|  <a href="#">Knotting Terminology</a>        |
|  <a href="#">Provide a link to this page</a> |
|  <a href="#">Visit our Home Page</a>         |
|  <a href="#">German Mirror Site</a>          |

Eine [deutsche Version](#) dieser Seiten ist bei [ScoutNet Deutschland](#) verfügbar.

---



*Copyright (C) Dick Ruck 1997*

[Ovingdean Saltdean Rottingdean Telscombe Cliffs Peacehaven Newhaven PC Computer Repair, Training and Virus Help](#)

## Six Exploding Knots

- [Clove hitch biting a bight](#)
- [Figure-eight biting a bight](#)
- [Sliding butterfly](#)
- [Sliding sheet bend](#)
- [Sliding Chinese crown](#)
- [Double Carrick bend](#)
- [Table of types](#)

### Overview & Quick Start

- I call these six hitches "[exploding](#)" knots because they untie easily and completely with one tug of the ripcord. Unlike slipped knots that untie with a ripcord, these knots leave absolutely no tangle. Yet they give up nothing in strength or ease of tying.
- To learn to tie them, jump to the illustrations and skip the commentary.
- In each illustration, the line labelled "R" is the ripcord ("running part"). The line labelled "S" is to be attached to the load ("standing part"). Tighten the knot with the "S" line.
- To decide which of these knots is best for which application, see the [table](#) at the end, which presupposes some of the text you might have skipped.
- After learning to tie the knots from the illustrations, read the text if only for safety issues.
- These knots are "probably original" in Clifford Ashley's sense of this phrase.

If you've ever tried to untie a taut-line hitch on a cold morning, then you know why slipped and exploding knots are a good idea. If the knot is tight, especially if the cord is also wet or thin or both, then fingernails will tear on it. Teeth might work, even if you were foolish enough to use them, but most people can't put their mouths the six or seven feet off the ground where the taut-line hitch often resides. If the cord is thin, the knot cannot be worked with gloves on, and if the morning is cold, the knot cannot be

worked with gloves off. If you have to cut your knots, then you don't belong in the wilderness.

## Slipped and Exploding Knots

A *slipped*, *slipping* or *slippery* knot is one that replaces the end of the cord with a bight (the end doubled over itself) at the last step, to stick through the last opening before tightening. Just yank the *ripcord*, the end that hangs free, to undo the knot. This is a vast improvement over unslipped knots.

Don't mistake a slipped knot for a *sliding* knot. A knot slides if it moves over the cord, like a noose. Bowlines don't slide, for example. A taut-line hitch should slide; it would be nice if it also slipped. Most knots designed for strength should not slide.

The only trouble with slipped knots is that, after slipping, the cord is usually tangled and must be untangled. Certainly untangling the kind of tangle we're talking about is always easier than untying, and one is lucky to have grievances so small when one is cold, hungry, tired, wet, and bug-bitten. But it would be elegant and desirable to overcome this little problem. The *exploding* knot is a refinement of the slipped knot that does just that. When you pull the ripcord of an exploding knot, the ends fly apart, leaving no tangle at all.

Exploding knots are not merely elegant and fun, as you will see in the field. If exploding knots save your cord, or your fingernails (or teeth!), your time, or your temper, they can save your trip.

We need a few more terms before we begin. The *standing part* of a cord is the end attached to the load. The *running part* (or *the bitter end*) is the other end. The running part "runs" because it is the end in motion when the knot is tied. With exploding knots, however, just as much of the action takes place on the standing part, as we'll see. In the illustrations below, "S" stands for the standing part, "R" for the running part. Don't mix these up! With most exploding knots, if you mistake the running and standing parts, then the load will be attached to the ripcord. Ouch!

A *bight* is technically distinct from a *loop*. But any of these knots can be tied with loops instead of bights if you wish. Technically, a loop allows the ends of a doubled section of cord to cross, while a bight does not.

A sliding knot *locks* if some simple tug will tighten its grip on the standing part so that it will no longer slide. Another simple bend or twist should unlock it.

## Exploding with a Bang or with a Whimper

Exploding knots require a balance of opposites: the knot must be tight enough to hold its load securely, but loose enough to let the ripcord slide through. A well-tied exploding knot will achieve this balance. The load on the standing part will always tighten the knot while preserving an island of relaxation somewhere inside where the ripcord lies like a sleeper in a tent in a thunderstorm. Learning to tie them so that they

achieve this balance is the most difficult aspect of exploding knots.

A general tip for achieving this balance is to tighten these knots flat (except [#1](#)). Don't let them curl up into balls or cubes. If they are kept flat while tightened, then the further tightening that comes from the load will not cause them to curl up.

If the knot is overtight, the ripcord may become too tightly bound inside the knot to pull. If the knot is well-tied, this overtightening will never arise from the tug of the load on the knot. But imperfect tying, combined with the added friction on the cord from rain or dew, may occasionally clutch the ripcord. Even with a clutched ripcord, however, an exploding knot is much easier to release than a non-exploding knot.

For all the knots presented here, the problem of tight ripcords can be cured either by *unlocking* in the usual way (described for each locking knot), or by an alternate kind of exploding release we may call *whimpering*. If the knot is grabbed like a knob, and pulled in a certain direction, then the bight that composes the ripcord will simply pull out, freeing the knot in a quiet explosion --not a bang, but a whimper.

Sliding knots will not whimper. When you pull a sliding knot, it will either slide or tighten. Whimpering knots, essentially, have two ripcords, one hanging free and one running around a spar or attached to the load. Hence, even though the two non-sliding, whimpering knots here (knots [#1](#) and [#2](#)) tighten as the load pulls, it is possible to whimper the knot if the load pulls in the "right" direction. So whimpering knots should not take critically heavy loads.

The advantage of non-whimpering knots, then, is strength in unpredictable situations (moving or jerking loads). The advantage of whimpering knots is convenience of release when the primary ripcord is seized by moisture or overtightening. After a whimpered release, you still have all the advantages of an explosion, with no winding to unwind.

If you didn't follow a point or two of this "knot theory," don't worry. Practice the knots, and you'll see what's going on.

## These Six Knots

Of the exploding knots I've developed, these six fall into a natural family (they are all hitches with various properties), they are the most versatile and easy to tie, and they have undergone the most refinement and testing. Three slide and three don't. All the sliding knots lock and unlock. Two of the three non-sliding knots whimper, one doesn't. In every case, the knots explode by pulling the ripcord, which is always the end of the running part. A [table](#) to help you pick the knot just right for your application follows at the end.

The three sliding knots (knots [#3](#), [#4](#), [#5](#)) are named after traditional non-sliding knots that they resemble. The resemblance, obviously, has a limitation, since these knots slide (and explode) while their namesakes do not. The names are a convenience for remembering these knots, but should not confuse you about their functions or the

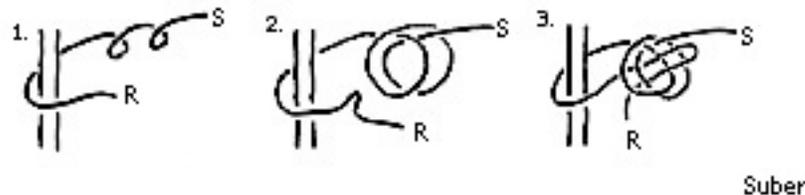
situations in which they might be useful or dangerous.

I describe the knots as if they were to be used to tie a load (pack, horse, canoe, clothesline, tarp) to a fixed object (spar, bollard, tree), but all of them have other applications.

I believe that the first five of these knots are original. The sixth is original only in its exploding form. None of them appears, for example, in the 600 pages of Ashley's encyclopedic *Book of Knots* (Doubleday, 1944). I say "original" but not "new," for it is impossible to say whether crafty sailors, cowboys, climbers, loggers, surgeons, quilters, or embroiderers have stumbled across them before.

---

## 1. Clove hitch biting a bight (exploding, whimpering, non-locking, non-sliding).



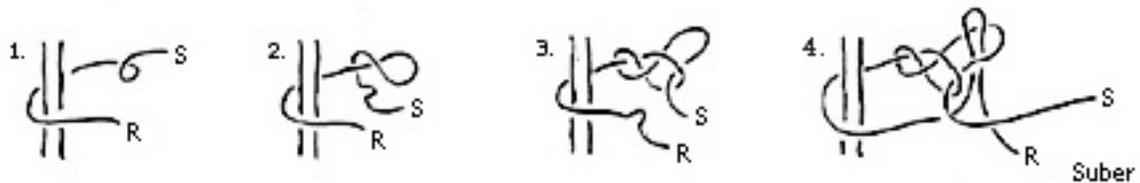
This and the sliding sheet bend (knot [#4](#)) are the easiest to tie of the six knots presented here, which makes it the easiest of the non-sliding knots. It is so easy that even when I have the time for something fancier, I will often tie this knot. It has the advantages and disadvantages of whimpering.

Start a clove hitch on the standing part. Instead of popping it over a fence or dock post, however, pop it over a bight from the running part. Tighten by pulling the standing part. Don't let the two "coils" of the clove hitch drift too far apart while tightening. There is no need to worry about tightening this knot flat; there's only one way to tighten it, and it's the right way. Whimper by pulling the knot away from the cord that forms the bight inside the clove hitch. (If the standing part came into the spar from the right and running part from the left, as in the illustration, then whimper by pulling the knot out from the spar and to the right.)

This knot, under the name **Exploding Hitch**, was featured as the Knot of the Month in the October 1999 issue of *Boating Magazine* (p. 64).

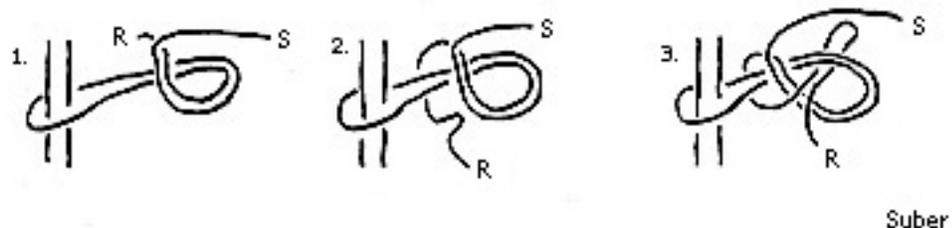
---

## 2. Figure-eight biting a bight (locking, exploding, whimpering, non-sliding).



This is easy knot to tie that also has the advantages and disadvantages of whimpering. Tie a figure-eight on the standing part, and stick a bight of the running part through it at the last moment. Tighten it flat so that it will not curl up and lock the ripcord. Whimper by pulling the knot away from the cord that forms the bight inside the figure-eight. (If the standing part came into the spar from the right and running part from the left, as in the illustration, then whimper by pulling the knot out from the spar and to the right.) Lock by holding the knot and pulling the non-whimpering cord (the line from the knot to the spar on the right on the right side of the spar). Unlock by flattening the knot.

### 3. Sliding butterfly (sliding, locking, exploding, non-whimpering).



I call this knot a sliding butterfly because it looks like a butterfly knot, not because it acts like one. It can even fool knot-so-smart climbers momentarily into thinking it is a butterfly, until you slide it for them. (Don't expect it to make a secure loop as a real butterfly does.)

After the running part wraps around a tree or post, lay it alongside the standing part. Grab the two lines as if they were one, and make a loop by twisting counterclockwise. Take the running part alone now, without the standing part, and wrap it over the doubled lines and stick a bight of it through the doubled loop. Tighten by pulling the standing part.

Tightening this knot proceeds in two stages. First, the slack is taken up, then the knot capsizes. "Capsize" is the nautical term for the sudden twist or transformation that takes place in some knots when they are tightened. For example, sailors start a bowline by capsizing a half-hitch. For this knot, however, we should say that it "metamorphosizes," since it is only after the transformation that it looks like a butterfly.

Lock by holding the knot and pulling on the non-sliding line. Unlock by putting your thumbs on the butterfly's "wings" and bending up and down, or by pulling the sliding ends apart hard, or by flattening the knot.

#### 4. Sliding sheet bend (sliding, locking, exploding, non-whimpering).



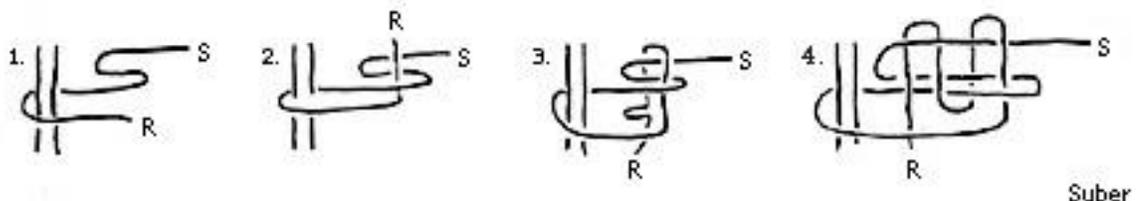
This knot has to be studied closely to see its kinship to the sheet bend. If you don't see the resemblance, don't bother; just enjoy it. (It should not be used like a regular sheet bend to join two different lengths of cord.) This is my favorite sliding exploding knot.

When mastered, this knot is not only very easy, but enjoyable to tie, leading the hand into unusual, efficient hand-gestures. A few twists, with almost no pokes or pulls, and you are done. Until mastered, however, it will often fall apart in your hands before it is finished. Tighten flat, not in a ball. It can make so tight a grip on the standing part that you may have to unlock it a bit before it slides. That should give you some comfort if you use it as a taut-line to hold your clean wet clothes. For a variation of this knot for heavier taut-line applications, see the [sliding Chinese crown \(#5\)](#).

Make a bight in the standing part between the spar and your load. Grab the running part (already wrapped around the spar) and make a loop in it by twisting counterclockwise. Slide the original bight through this loop, making a new loop on the other side. (With practice, this step can be done in the same counterclockwise twist that created the loop.) Stick a bight of the running part through this new loop, and tighten by pulling on the standing part.

Lock by holding the knot and pulling on the non-sliding line. Unlock by pulling the two sliding ends apart hard, or by flattening the knot.

#### 5. Sliding Chinese crown (sliding, locking, exploding, non-whimpering).



This may be the hardest to tie of the knots presented here, although it can be tied in three or four seconds with practice. The slide is controlled by one more bend in the rope than the sliding sheet bend (knot [#4](#)) which makes it stronger when locked. For taut-line applications meant to hold heavier loads, like wet tarps, it is better than the

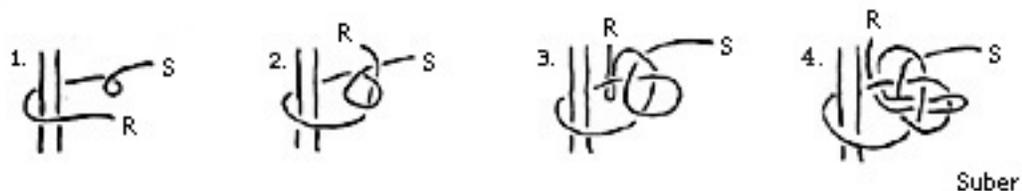
sliding sheet bend. But don't let its "difficulty" stop you from trying it even for light loads, like a sliding "buckle" belt. (Slide it tight around your waist, then lock; explode when diarrhea attacks.) Like the sliding sheet bend, it can grip the standing part so hard that you may have to unlock it a little before you can slide it.

This knot is a sliding and exploding variation on the Chinese crown (Ashley #808, #1032). It also bears a certain resemblance to a non-sliding double Carrick bend (see knot #6). You could use it to amaze your friends who know that double Carrick bends don't slide, if you had any friends like that. Like the double Carrick bend, this knot should be tightened flat, otherwise it will become a cube that will neither slide nor explode. Because it slides, do not use it like an ordinary double Carrick bend to join two lengths of cord together.

Make an S-shaped curve in the standing part, with the bottom of the "S" toward the spar and the top of the "S" toward the load. Stick the running part up through the lower right-hand curve of the "S" from behind. Wrap the running part over the top of the "S" and when it emerges at the bottom of the "S" stick a bight of the running part through the upper lefthand curve from the front. Hold the new loop that results as you tighten by pulling the standing part.

Lock by holding the knot and pulling the non-sliding line. Unlock by pulling the sliding ends apart hard or by flattening the knot.

## 6. Double Carrick bend (locking, exploding, non-sliding, non-whimpering).



Make a loop in the standing end by grabbing it and twisting counterclockwise. Pass the running part under this loop (not through it yet) and over the top of the standing part. Then pass it under the next length of standing part. Make two bights at this point: (1) find the running part that passed under the original loop, and pull it up through that loop into a bight, and (2) take the end of the running part and make a bight of it. Pass the second of these through the first of these, and tighten by pulling the standing part. For best results (cleaner explosions) the ripcord should lie under the standing part it faces, not over.

This knot can be tightened into a cube, which locks the ripcord. Tighten it slowly so that it remains flat instead. Lock by holding the knot, and pulling the entire bight that holds the ripcord, or by pulling either of the non-ripcord lines. This knot has the advantages and disadvantages of non-whimpering.

The traditional (non-exploding) double Carrick bend is rated the strongest known bend (knot for tying two cords together). The variation that makes it explode should not affect its strength, although it will increase the chances of misadventure from another cause. To use it as a bend, follow the same directions, but treat the two ends of cord that come around the spar as if they were the ends of two distinct cords.

Do not use any of the other five knots as bends (for tying two cords together). Either one cord will be the ripcord for the knot, or it will slide through it. (I have another, more original, exploding bend that I'll put on the web soon.)

Despite its unmatched strength, the double Carrick bend is seldom used by mountaineers because it has been difficult to tie. I'd like to think that this version, with or without the exploding variant, might revive its use.

Six Exploding Knots					
Sliding			Non-Sliding		
Strength (2 bend)	Convenience (1 bend)		Strength (non-whimpering)	Convenience (whimpering)	
<a href="#"><u>Sliding Chinese crown (#5)</u></a>	<a href="#"><u>Sliding butterfly (#3)</u></a>	<a href="#"><u>Sliding sheet bend (#4)</u></a>	<a href="#"><u>Double Carrick bend (#6)</u></a>	<a href="#"><u>Clove hitch biting a bight (#1)</u></a>	<a href="#"><u>Figure-eight biting a bight (#2)</u></a>

---

This article has been translated into Dutch by Pieter van de Griend, "Zes Exploderende Knopen," *Het Knoopeknauwertje*, 9 (December 1997) 8-13.

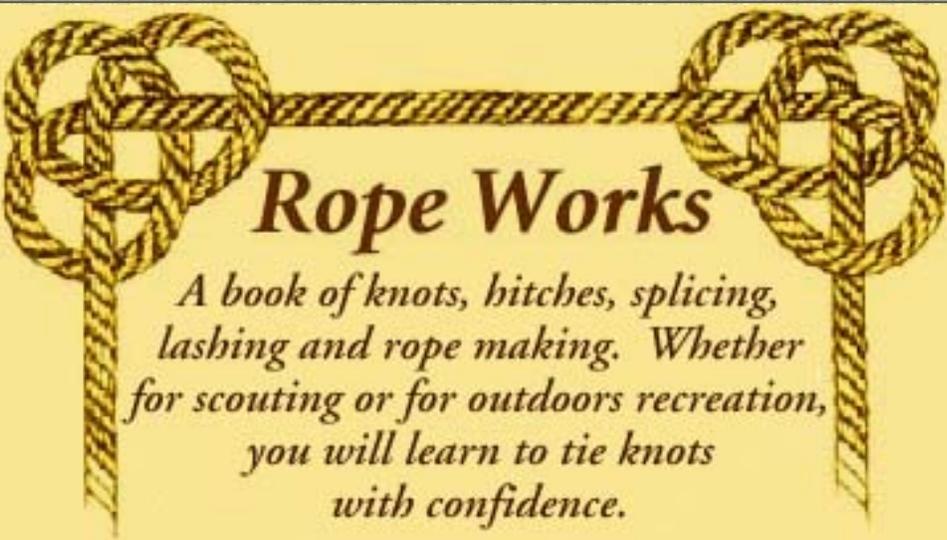
---

Also see my page of [\*\*Knots on the Web.\*\*](#)



[Peter Suber](#), [Department of Philosophy](#), [Earlham College](#), Richmond, Indiana, 47374, U.S.A.  
[peters@earlham.edu](mailto:peters@earlham.edu). Copyright © 1997, Peter Suber.

<a href="#">Introduction</a>
<a href="#">Knots &amp; Hitches</a>
<a href="#">Splicing</a>
<a href="#">Lashing</a>
<a href="#">Making Rope</a>
<a href="#">Links</a>
<a href="#">Knotboard of the Month</a>
<a href="#">Archive</a>
<a href="#">Ordering</a>



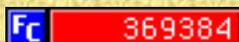
**Rope Works**  
*A book of knots, hitches, splicing, lashing and rope making. Whether for scouting or for outdoors recreation, you will learn to tie knots with confidence.*

**This site was updated JUNE 23, 2002 :**

---

**Rope Works can now be ordered by credit card Through PayPal**

---



FastCounter by LinkExchange

FastCounter by LinkExchange

<http://www.fastcounter.com>



**GUESTBOOK**

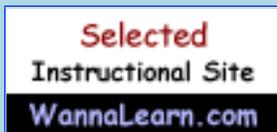


E-Mail

# Marlinspike

## Knowing Your Knots

2000 Award Winner



- The Bowlines
  - [The Bowline](#)
  - [The Bowline on a Bight.](#)
  - [The Portuguese \(Spanish\) Bowline.](#)
- Hitches -- Tying to an Object
  - [The Clove Hitch](#)
  - [Two Half Hitches](#)
  - [The Buntline Hitch](#)
  - [Buntline Hitch](#) A repeat using a JAVA script which allows control of the speed and direction, and allows stop-action.
  - [The Rolling Hitch](#)
  - [Tying to a Horn Cleat](#)
- Bends -- Tying lines together
  - [The Sheet Bend](#), and a modification:  
[The Becket Bend on a Bight](#) as a towline towing bridle connection.
  - [The \(Full\) Carrick Bend](#)
  - [The Anchor Bend](#) Technically a Hitch.
- Stopper Knots -- making a stop in the bitter end of a line
  - [Simple Stopper Knots](#) The Overhand and Figure 8 Knots.
- Miscellaneous

- [Relative Strengths of Common Knots](#)
  - [Splicing Double Braid](#)
  - [The Monkey's Fist](#)
- 

Return to:

- [The Shooting Star Home Page.](#)
- [US Coast Guard Auxiliary District 8WR](#)



[BRMRG Home](#)  
[Information](#)  
[Newsletter](#)  
[Training](#)  
[SAR Links](#)  
[Searches](#)  
[Hug-A-Tree](#)  
[Members](#)  
[Supporters](#)  
[ASRC Home](#)  
  
[User Page](#)

# The BRMRG Knot Review

---

[-- Schedule --](#)
[--- FAQ ---](#)
[--- Levels ---](#)
[--- Documents ---](#)
[Knots --](#)  
[-- Training Guide ---](#)

Written and developed by [Jason Dalton](#) 1995-1999

*This Web page is for the training and reference of the **Blue Ridge Mountain Rescue Group Inc.** It is not intended to replace competent training on how to safely and correctly tie knots used for Wilderness Search and Rescue. Please seek instruction if you are interested in learning to tie these knots, and use this resource as a practice and refresher aid..*

Click on a knot and you will get an illustrated tutorial on how to tie it and the usage for each knot. Memorize all of this information.

## FTM Knots

- [overhand](#)
- [square knot](#)
- [figure-8](#)
- [figure-8 bend](#)
- [figure-8 loop](#)
- [bowline](#)
- [taut-line hitch](#)
- [girth hitch](#)
- [prüssik](#)
- [water knot](#)
- [barrell knot](#)
- [ASRC triple redundant seat harness](#)

## FTL Knots

- [sheet bend](#)
- [frost knot](#)
- [butterfly knot](#)
- [one-way knot](#)
- [bowline-on-a-coil](#)
- [load-releasing hitch](#)
- [cross-chest harness](#)
- [Münter hitch](#)

(C) [Copyright](#) Blue Ridge Mountain Rescue Group Inc.

---

# Välkommen till knopar och makrame

[bildarkiv](#)

[literatur](#)

[material](#)



Knopar , Makrame,  
Repflaskor

Tjäna pengar på  
din hemsida!

TradeDoubler

[nästa](#)

[Epost](#)

027502

---

# Josella Simone Playton

---

Seit dem Merger zwischen GeoCities und Yahoo! haben sich dort die Benutzungsbedingungen in **unakzeptabler Weise** geändert. Deshalb haben wir alle GeoCities-Seiten rausgerissen. Diese WebSite sollte jetzt in sich leidlich konsistent sein.

Die Entsprechung der alten EingangsSeite bei GeoCities wird <http://www.Josella-Simone-Playton.de/index.html> sein.

Die GeoCities Sites bleiben zunächst stehen, werden aber **in keiner Weise mehr gewartet**. Die Josella Simone Playton HomePage ist **hier**. Ob es woanders noch eine Mirror-Site geben wird ist noch nicht entschieden. Hier einige weitere Links:

---

[\*Zum HochSeilNest \(Deutsch\)\*](#)

[\*Zum HochSeilNest \(Bilder - \(das ist hier\)\)\*](#)

[\*In die WeltHöhle \(Deutsch, kapitelweise, HTML\)\*](#)

[\*HomePage English\*](#)

[\*HauptSeite Deutsch\*](#)

[\*Andere HomePages\*](#)

[\*Zum WebRing WebFehler\*](#)

[\*Web-Site Pflege\*](#)

**Andere Websites vom selben WebMaster:**

# Die QuantenRente

---

Das HochSeilNest und die meisten in der C`T veröffentlichte Story sind schon umgezogen, ebenso das alte GästeBuch von GeoCities, welches nicht mehr weitergeführt werden kann. Die WeltHöhlenTrilogie ist ja sowieso schon hier.

Der Roman Deadlock ist bei [TelePolis](#), wird aber ebenso bald hier zu finden sein.

Die Photos vom HochSeilNest auf dieser Seite werden demnächst in eine eigene Seite ausgelagert.

---

Ältere Eintragungen:

Seit 1998-11-07: Die [WeltHöhlen-Trilogie-Mirror-Site](#).

Am 1998-04-14: Ich habe das Material etwas umgeordnet, damit nicht immer alle Bilder gleichzeitig geladen werden. Außerdem habe ich Hinweise über das eingefügt, was inzwischen nicht mehr existiert.

Weil die Telekom am 1998-11-01 ein Einsehen hatte und nun jedem MitBenutzer 10 MegaByte WebSpace ermöglicht, spiegele ich [hier](#) die [WeltHöhlen-Trilogie](#).

Vorübergehend parke ich hier zwei Stories, die in Arbeit sind: [PiceaAbies](#) und [Die andere Seite des Himmels](#). Beide Stories haben noch Defizite.

Weiterhin definieren wir gerade ein [Universelles PartitionsSystem](#), das seit dem 9. Dezember 1997 in Arbeit ist. Das unfertige Papier erscheint hier - der flüchtige Leser wird eine rudimentäre Ähnlichkeit mit dem PartitionsSystemen auf PC bemerken - das UPS ist aber einfacher. Es soll keine Einführung sein, eher ein 'RFC'.

---

Hier also die Photos:

---

[Zum Bild](#)

Die Achtschlaufe - Variationen des AchtKnotens (und des Webleinensteks) sind die am häufigsten eingesetzten Knoten am HSN.

---

[Zum Bild](#)

Der AchtKnotenStopper (Gut) und der ÜberhandKnotenStopper (PfuiBähBäh).

---

[Zum Bild](#)

## Der Palstek.

---

[Zum Bild](#)

Für den HochSeilNestBau weniger wichtig: Der HenkersKnoten.

---

[Zum Bild](#)

Eine von meinen 3\_600 'versehentlich' gesähten SonnenBlumen (1997).

Belichtung 1/78 Sekunde

---

[Zum Bild](#)

Im unteren Teil des Bildes das 6 Meter Sisal Nest, im oberen Teil das 12 Meter Nest mit meiner SchlafStätte - Die Decken sind gerade gegen Regen in PlastikFolie gut eingepackt, was man auf dem Bild aber nicht erkennen kann.

Das 6 Meter Sisal Nest existiert seit dem 1998-03-30 nicht mehr.

---

[Zum Bild](#)

Die AnlegeLeiter, an einem der tragenden Bäume mit zwei Ketten und zwei Vorhängeschlössern gesichert.

Seit dem 1998-03-30 wird die Leiter woanders aufbewahrt.

Belichtung 1/29 Sekunde

---

[Zum Bild](#)

Perfekte Tarnung - Das HSN ist in der von der 'Wibke' gerissenen Lücke. Man sieht es in Wirklichkeit kaum, auf diesem Photo gar nicht.

Belichtung 1/205 Sekunde

---

[Zum Bild](#)

So sieht eine StrickLeiterSprosse aus der Nähe aus (PolyHanf 12 mm, gedreht).

AufnahmeZeitPunkt 97-09-17 12:38:38 Belichtung 1/8 Sekunde

---

[Zum Bild](#)

Der Schatten links von der BildMitte ist von meiner SchlafStätte auf dem 12 Meter Nest.

AufnahmeZeitPunkt 97-09-17 13:18:56 Belichtung 1/75 Sekunde

---

[Zum Bild](#)

Aussicht vom Nest nach NordWesten.

---

[Zum Bild](#)

Die halbabgeschlossene AnlegeLeiter.

Dieses ist die unsichere Aufbewahrung der AnlegeLeiter, die die beiden Teenager am 2000-07-12 überwunden haben.

---

[Zum Bild](#)

Die entsicherte AnlegeLeiter.

Im Vordergrund ist die SisalSchlinge zu erkennen, auf der die halbabgeschlossene Leiter ruht.

---

[Zum Bild](#)

Höchster Sonnenstand.

Dieses Bild ist am 22. Juni aufgenommen und zeigt den Schatten des HängeBrückenBettes etwa zur MittagsZeit.

---

[Zum Bild \(200 kB\)](#)

Das neue HängeBrückenBett.

Der LattenRost ist länger als 2 Meter, und er ist durch GewindeStänden, die man hier nicht sieht, versteift. Die TrageSeile sind nicht mit dem LattenRost verbunden, sondern führen unter ihm durch.

AufnahmeZeitPunkt 00-06-28 13:20:28 MESZ

---

[Zum Bild \(200 kB\)](#)

Blick nach Süden unten.

Über den SüdRand des Nestes hinweg sieht man in den niederen Buchen- und BirkenWald. Bei Regen ist es im Sommer ein dampfender Dschungel. Im Vordergrund eines der TrageSeile des

HängeBrückenBettes, das ein niedriges Geländer bildet.

AufnahmeZeitPunkt 00-06-28 13:21:55 MESZ

---

[Zum Bild \(200 kB\)](#)

Blick nach Süden.

In der Ferne ist irgendwo die BenediktenWand.

AufnahmeZeitPunkt 00-06-28 13:22:05 MESZ

---

[Zum Bild \(200 kB\)](#)

Das Trocknen der Decken.

Nach dem heftigen Regen vom 1. auf den 2. Juli ist unser Nest voll mit zum Trocknen aufgehängten Decken, wie ein altes SegelSchiff.

AufnahmeZeitPunkt 00-07-02 15:56:49 MESZ

---

[Zum Bild \(200 kB\)](#)

Die beiden westlichsten Bäume.

Hier zeigt sich, wer wirklich schwindelfrei ist.

AufnahmeZeitPunkt 00-07-02 15:57:50 MESZ

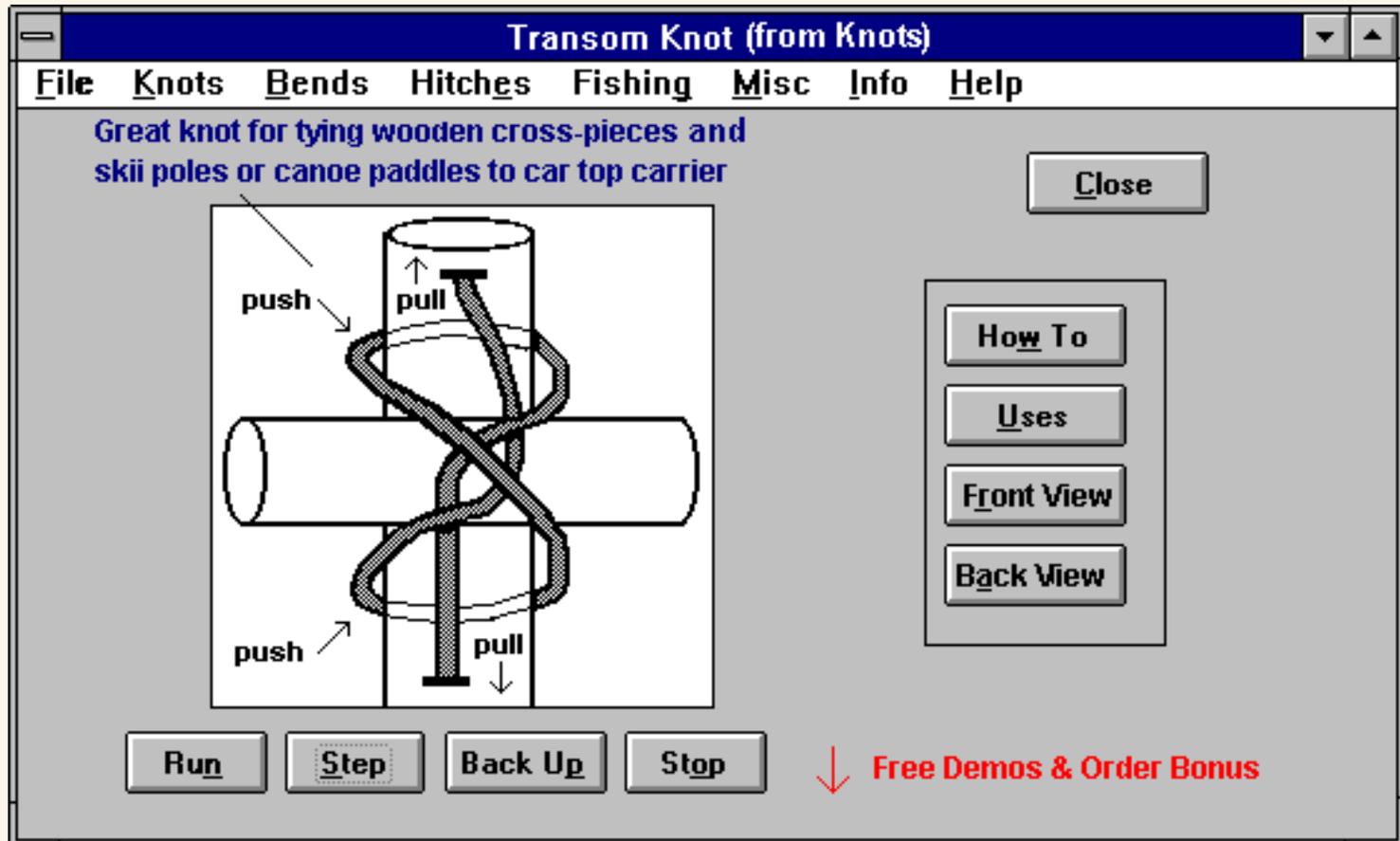
---

© 1997 Josella Simone Playton 1997-09-03 23:21:22 MESZ

© 2000 Josella Simone Playton 2000-07-29 23:00:00 MEZ

© 2002 Josella Simone Playton 2002-11-19 20:00:00 MEZ

## Knots & Fishing Knots - Animated Knot Tying Programs for Windows



**Knots & Fishing Knots** are unique programs. **There are no other similar programs - anywhere, any place. None!**

Download a [Free Demo](#) of *Knots* or *Fishing Knots* now! Takes two minutes.

After you download a demo, [Register Online](#) to unlock the full program.

Click for [Program Details](#).

**Summer Bonus:** Register *Knots* or *Fishing Knots* and receive 14 animated [Bowlines](#) **free**.

Just email the [author](#) with proof of purchase.

"In our opinion, this has to be the best knotting aid ever! ...truly amazing..." Scouts Australia, NSW Branch.  
"A large number of knots, taught with great clarity. Better instruction than books or videotape." Peter Suber of Knots on the Web.

"... very well planned and easy to use... genuinely worthwhile... the author is to be congratulated." Stuart Grainger, past President of the International Guild of Knot Tyers.

"Fantastic programs! Super easy to run, and if you fish or boat -- an absolute must." JC Kollodge, Inventor of the Compound Fishing Rod.

"I've learned more about knots, bends and hitches in the past few days with *Knots* than in 40 years of sailing. I cannot recommend this program enough for novice and Master." D E Windisch, Soleil C&C 41, Marina del Rey.

- Learn knot tying via animation with front and back views of finished knot.

- Auto run or single step forward and backward. It's as easy as pointing and clicking.
- Written instructions, proper usage and popular variations to basic knot.
- ***Knots*** (37 knots) suitable for sailors, boaters, fishermen, scouts, campers, and outdoorsmen. With 9 fishing knots.
- ***Fishing Knots*** (34 knots) emphasizes the special knots used by fishermen and anglers. Excellent for fly fishing. Also contains basic boating knots.
- All diagrams can be printed. Great teaching aid for Scout and Sailing Masters. Includes Knotting Terminology and Help

Requirements: Windows 3.1, 95, 98 or NT and about 3.5 Meg of Hard Drive. A mouse is recommended, but not needed.

Get a [Free Demo](#) of ***Knots*** or ***Fishing Knots*** now!

Download a demo, then [Register Online](#) to unlock full program.

[Program Details](#)

Got a question on knots or either of the programs? [E-mail the author](#).

The author is a member of the **International Guild of Knot Tyers (IGKT)** - the world authority on knots and knotting.

Previous visitors 6500+. Number of visitors since accidental counter reset on 7/6/98:

00056803

**Don't forget!** Register ***Knots*** or ***Fishing Knots*** and receive 14 useful and easy to learn animated [Bowlines](#) **free**. Just email the [author](#) with proof of purchase.

[Links to other sites of interest](#)

((c) Know Where Software 1996 - 2000 All Rights Reserved)



# Knot

*Yes, I know that some of the graphics on this page are broken. Restoring them from backup will be something of a hassle and, frankly, is not that high on my list of priorities, so don't count on it getting fixed very soon. --pH*

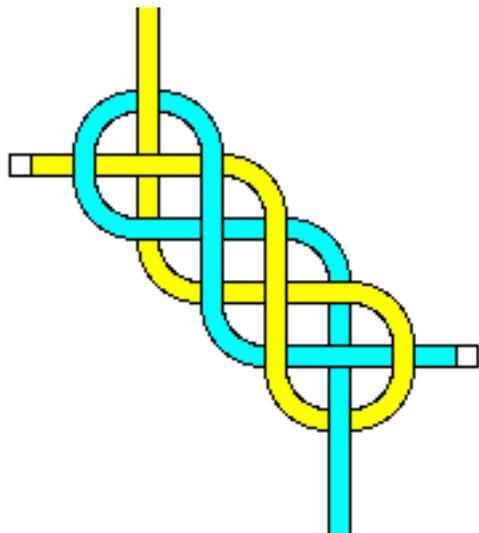
## Bends

[Graphic of Basketweave Bend]

[Added 12/14/97] This knot is a sort of compromise between the Double Harness Bend [Ashley 1421] and the Barrel Knot [Ashley 1413], though I find it easier to untie than either. Others may disagree, however. I developed it mainly to satisfy my (perhaps irrational) preference for what Ashley calls "cruciform" bends, bends from which the bitter ends emerge at opposing right angles.

[Alternate graphic of Basketweave Bend]

[Added 12/22/97] Although the first graphic above gives a (slightly) better idea of the shape of the knot, it can actually be drawn with fewer crossings (10 vs. 12) as in the second illustration.



[Added 3/13/98] This version, although it has even more crossings (14), gives a very good idea of the final shape of the knot, and of its attractive appearance.

[Added 12/30/97] To point out some other relatives of this knot: it bears a certain resemblance to the Surgeon's Knot [Ashley 1209], but the knot it actually resembles most closely is Ashley 1450, which Ashley developed as a hawser bend; the above is essentially a symmetrical version of that knot.

[Added 1/13/98] Though I realize that it may turn out that this knot is not original to me, in the meantime, to have a more convenient method of referring to it I tentatively dub it the "Basketweave Bend", because of the appearance of the back face of the knot. It, too, can be tied (in

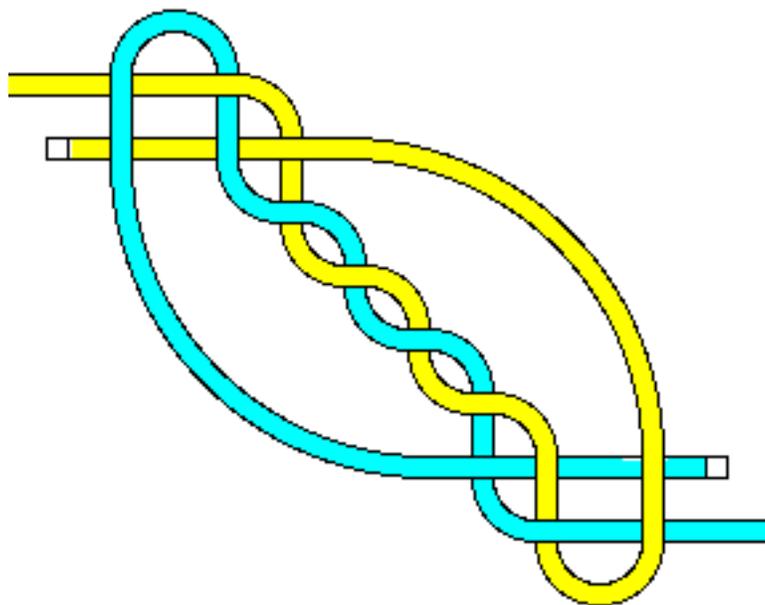
loop form) to a ring without first knotting the rope (see below). Perhaps I'll add a graphic showing the method for that.

[Added 1/26/98] If loosened sufficiently, then capsized by pulling on the bitter ends, Basketweave transforms into Ashley 1451, another excellent bend related to the Full Carrick.

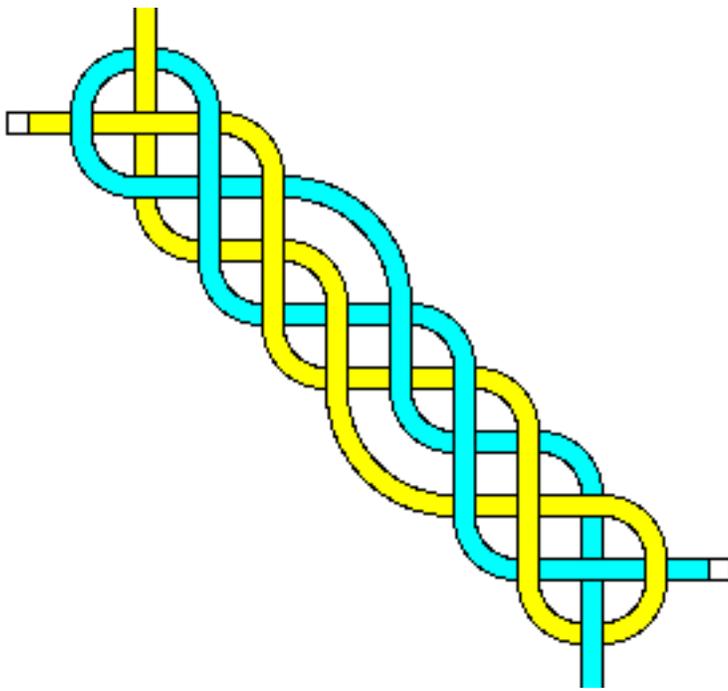
[Added 3/2/98] I was told a week or two ago that Basketweave is described in the latest issue of *Knotting Matters*, which (shame on me) I don't get since I haven't joined the IGKT yet.

[Added 3/16/98] There are essentially two ways to generalize this knot if the resulting bend is to remain symmetrical. If one thinks of the tying method as twisting the ends together twice as for a Surgeon's Knot, then tucking the ends (this can be best seen from the topmost illustration), one can increase the number of twists and then either:

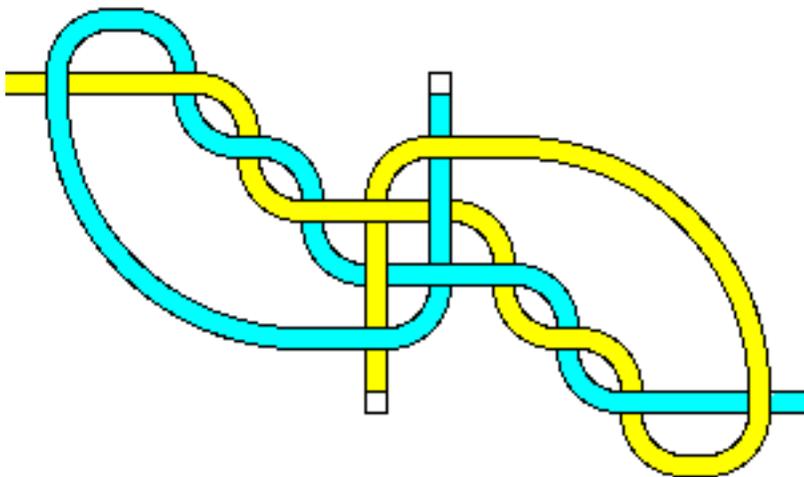
1. tuck the ends at the center still, which preserves the basketweave appearance but makes the knot much more difficult to undo, or
2. tuck the ends at the same distance from the ends (as if finishing a sheet bend), which preserves the liftable loops at the ends of the knot which make the original Basketweave so easy to untie. The result is shown below, with the number of twists increased to three. (Four or more seems to be overkill, in my estimation. Perhaps in fishing line they might be needed--haven't tried it yet.) As the knot is tightened the added twist transfers itself to the outside of the knot, which results in less basketweaviness, but also an attractive corkscrew appearance.



I believe this knot to be nearly as secure as the Barrel Knot, slightly bulkier, but much easier to untie.



[Added 3/21/98] This shows the Double Basketweave Bend after the twist has been transferred to the outside.



[Added 3/27/98] This shows option 1 above, which I think of as the "Barrel-Weave" bend, as it shares characteristics of both the Basketweave Bend and the Barrel Knot. It seems to work well even with four twists, although here it is only drawn with three.

[Added 4/9/98] I have received the following from Brian A. Glennon, rigger:

In reference to you new knot, the "Basket Weave Bend", I believe you have re-discovered the SENNIT BEND first developed by two mountain climbing enthusiasts: C.E.I. Wright and J.E. Magowan in 1928 and a current diagram of this bend may be found in the book: 'The History and Science of Knots' by Turner & Van de Griend (1996) page 159.

[Graphic of  
Chicago Bend]

[Knot posted 10/26/97] This knot, which I (briefly) believed original (see below), bears the same relationship to Hunter's Bend as Ashley 1452 (Ashley's Bend) does to Ashley 1408 (note: *not* Ashley 1409!), i.e. similar in structure (and therefore in method of tying), but with the direction of the final tuck of the ends through the central nip of the knot reversed, which makes it more easily untied.<sup>1</sup> Hunter's Bend is depicted below.

[Graphic of  
Hunter's Bend]

Another way of thinking about this knot, or rather the relationship between this one and Hunter's Bend, is that each is formed by taking one of the differing sides of a Lineman's Loop (Ashley 1043) and duplicating it symmetrically.

<sup>1</sup>[Added 10/30/97] To amplify on this comment: this depends partly on how the knot is drawn up. If it is tightened primarily with tension on the standing parts, the knot is very easily untied by pulling on the outer loops, though still not as easily as Ashley's Bend with its "unwinding" action. If drawn up firmly by the bitter ends as well as the standing parts, it assumes a shape whose cross-section is smaller than that of Hunter's Bend (which might be advantageous in certain conditions) but becomes more difficult to untie than before.

[Added 11/23/97] Yet another way of thinking about this knot: it is quite similar to a Full Carrick Bend With Diagonal Pull, Capsized (Ashley 1439). The two knots differ only by two crossings, as can be seen by comparing the above graphic with the Carrick Bend, below:

[Graphic of  
Carrick Bend]

[Added 3/19/98] An aside about the Carrick Bend: by following this diagram (or the one below for the Carrick Loop(s)) one can tie the Carrick Bend "pre-capsized", which might be preferable to the usual method of tying it as two overlapping loops, then capsizing it by pulling on the standing parts. If not sufficiently loose, the knot fails to capsize completely, and the intermediate form is not as strong as when completely capsized, which is according to Ashley "one of the strongest of bends".

[Added 12/10/97] Yet *another* way of thinking about this knot: it is quite similar to Ashley 1453, an asymmetrical but easily untied bend. The two knots differ only in the way one end is tucked. I'll add a graphic illustrating this as soon as I get the time.

[Graphic of  
Ashley 1453]

[Added 12/11/97] As promised, here is the new graphic: just tuck the upper end as indicated by the arrow, and "my" bend is converted to Ashley 1453. A slight correction to the above paragraph: although it appears asymmetrical when tied this way, or for that matter by following Ashley's diagrams, Ashley 1453 *can* be manipulated into a symmetrical form.

[Added 12/22/97] It turns out that this knot *is* pretty new, but it is *not* original to me. Robert M. Wolfe first brought it to the attention of the knotting community in 1996. He has dubbed it the "Chicago" bend, or simply the "C-bend".

Darn.

---

## Loops

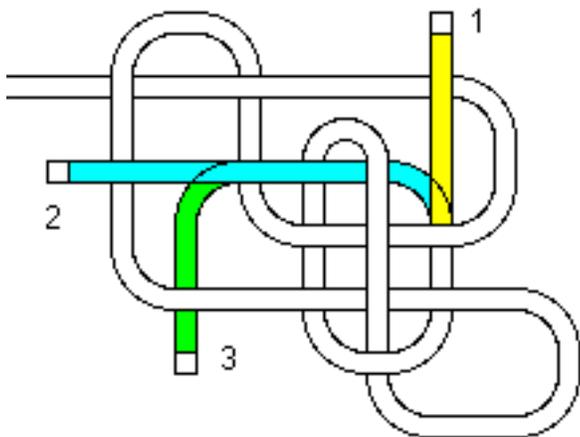
[Added 12/22/97] Here is my latest idea: The Angler's Loop [Ashley 1035] is strong, secure, and easily tied, even in the bight. Its only disadvantage is that it is difficult to untie. Why not therefore add a twist so that its "core" (highlighted in yellow) is a figure-eight instead of an overhand knot? This makes it easier to untie. The original Angler's Loop is below on the right, my proposed variant on the left. It remains to be seen, however, whether there is any reason to prefer this variant when one could use Ashley 1043 (the second graphic), which has essentially the same virtues and is even easier to untie. Ashley 1043 is more lopsided, but the lines running together around the top make it more attractive, at least to my eye. The greater lopsidedness *may* make it weaker, but I have yet to test that hypothesis.

[Angler's loops, modified and original]

[Ashley 1043]

[Added 01/11/98] One disadvantage of the above loops (and other popular loops such as the figure-eight loop) is that if they are used as hitches to a ring or other such object, they require one to tie an overhand knot or figure-eight in the rope before reeving the end through the ring, unlike the dependable old bowline, which does not. Of course one is not supposed to depend on a bowline anymore in these days of synthetic line, so I began experimenting with tying the Carrick Bend as a loop knot. (I know about the double bowline, but that's too easy. Quit spoiling my fun. 8-)> )

In the following diagram, option 1, in yellow, yields a straightforward Carrick loop. Option 2, in cyan, is a variation which should be more secure, but may be slightly less strong. It is sort of half Carrick, half Chicago. Option 3 (green) might be a reasonable compromise between the previous two in strength and security. (Note: these strength and security rankings are guesses based on the geometry of the knots; I need to get going on my stress tests.)



[Added 3/19/98] I still haven't done rigorous stress testing, but I must admit that of these three variants I am most fond of option 2.

---

# Binder Knots

[Added 12/30/97] A thought about binder knots: Ashley neglects to point out that the Constrictor With an Extra Turn [Ashley 1252] can also be tied in the bight; his method of tying the Constrictor by taking a round turn, lengthening a bight, and lifting it over with a twist (described at Ashley 1188) produces it, if one starts with a clove hitch instead of a round turn.

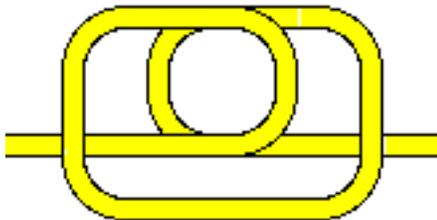
Ashley 1201 can also be tied in the bight, at least in principle (when lifted off the post, it capsizes to nothing without access to the ends), but puzzling out the exact method eludes me so far and may not be worth the trouble. As Ashley says, it is rather ponderous.

[Added 3/2/98] I've discovered the method, after some time away from this subject. Diagrams will follow as soon as I get the time.

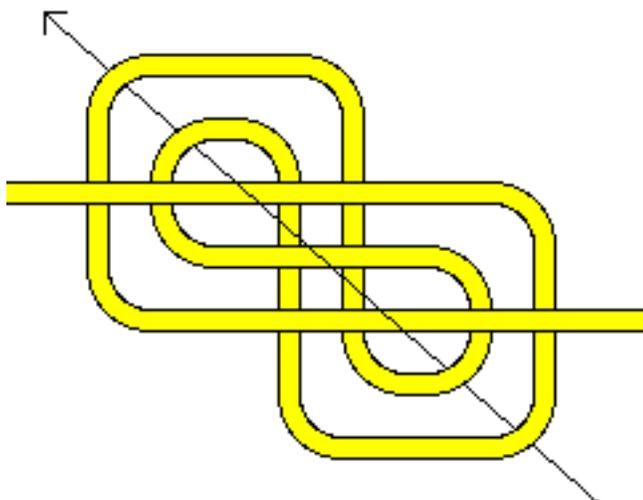
[Added 3/3/98] Here we go. First throw two bights of opposite handedness:



Lap one over the other:



Twist the combined loops into a figure eight, and insert whatever the knot is to be tied around as shown by the arrow.



Finally, tighten and adjust to smooth out the extra crossings.

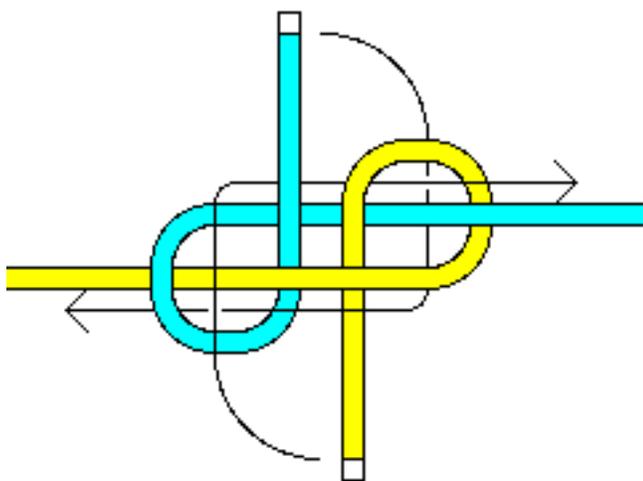
This knot is very similar to a recently discovered knot called the *Boa knot*; in fact, if the bight on the left in step one, above, were of the opposite handedness, a Boa knot would result. However, as best I can tell the Boa knot is inferior to this one; it is harder to draw up, no more secure (possibly less so), and less attractive in appearance.

[Added 7/29/98] One slight advantage that the Boa Knot seems to have over Ashley 1201 is that it introduces no twist into the rope when tied in the bight, while 1201 does; thus, if one tied a series of such binder knots in succession in the bight of a single rope whose ends were fixed, the rope would eventually start to kink using 1201, but not the Boa. However, it is difficult to imagine a situation in which this one point would outweigh the other ways (described above) in which 1201 seems superior to the Boa.

For comparison, the Constrictor knot also introduces no twist, but the Constrictor With an Extra Turn [Ashley 1252] produces even more than 1201. The Clove Hitch produces the same amount of twist as 1201.

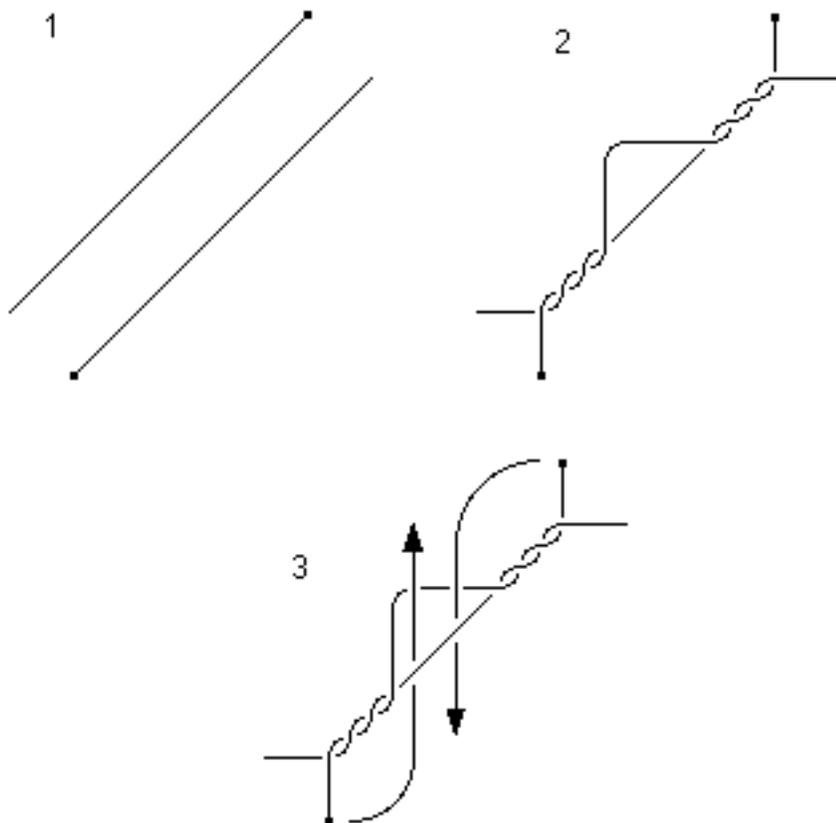
## More on (possibly) new ways to tie old knots

[Added 3/4/98] The Flemish/Figure-eight bend and loop are popular for their strength, but much is made of how time-consuming they can be to tie. While this is true of the loop in cases where one can't just tie a figure-eight in a doubled end (as when hitching to a ring, say), it needn't be true of the bend form. Much easier than tying a figure eight in one end and following it back with the other (the standard method) is this: tie a Thief's Knot with long ends, then wrap each end around and tuck it through again. I'll make up diagrams when I have time, but the method should become clear if you just tie a Flemish bend by whatever method you know, then untuck each end once.



[Added 3/13/98] Here's the diagram. I think it pretty much explains itself.

[Added 3/19/98] Just a brief comment: this is exactly analogous to Ashley's method of tying a Ring Knot (Ashley 1412).



[Added 3/26/98] A simple method of tying a Barrel Knot (Ashley 1413, except this results in the ends opposite instead of parallel). With fewer twists this yields a Double Harness Bend (Ashley 1420), or with even fewer a Thief's Knot (this is how I begin the Flemish Bend, above).

# Miscellaneous Notes

[Added 6/30/98] I recently, at a friend's request, created some [new knot graphics](#) to illustrate the IGKT's [six-knot challenge](#).

[Some material relating to Desmond Mandeville's *Neat and New Bend*, previously presented on this page, was removed on 12/14/97.]

---

Please email me, Paul Hahn, at [manynote@library.wustl.edu](mailto:manynote@library.wustl.edu), if you have any comments regarding the above.

Campfire (Home)

Troop 480 Information

The 1923 Scout Creed

Links Relative to Scouting

Links to other Troops across America

Troop 480 Calendar

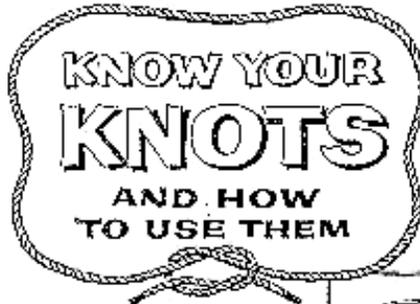
Here's a Jerky Recipe

Some Basic Knots

Our Album

# What a knot page! This is not to say that this is not a page, but a knot page. If you enjoy tying knots, visit these sites:

[GORP - Knot of the Week](#)-good all-around outdoor site.  
[42nd Brighton \(Saltdean\) Scout Group UK](#)-many animated knots for Scouts.  
[Knots on the Web \(Peter Suber\)](#)-incredibly vast list of knot resources.



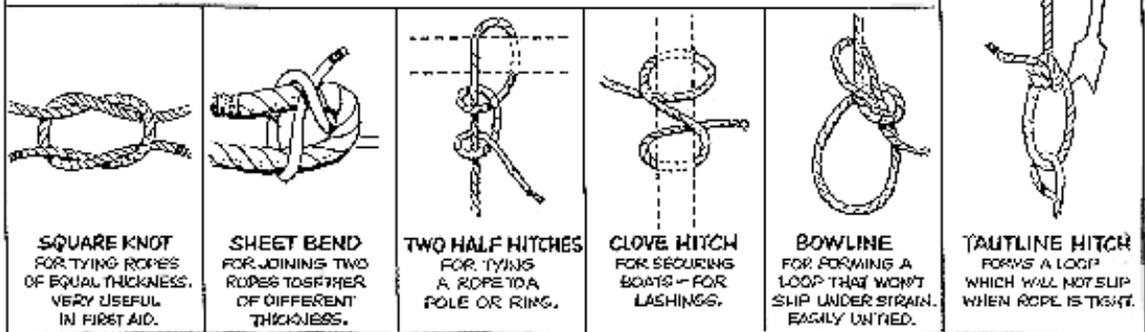
YOU CAN TELL AN OUTDOORSMAN BY HIS ABILITY TO TIE THE RIGHT KNOT AT THE RIGHT TIME. A SCOUT KNOWS SEVERAL KNOTS AND THE PURPOSE OF EACH. HE CAN TIE THEM IN THE DARK OR IN THE DAYLIGHT. HERE ARE THE TESTS OF A GOOD KNOT: 1. STAYS ITS PURPOSE. 2. HOLDS UNTIL UNTIED. 3. EASILY TIED. 4. EASILY UNTIED. ...TIPS ON KNOT-TYING: USE A SIX-FOOT PIECE OF 1/4 OR 1/2 INCH ROPE - NOT TWINE OR STRING! PRACTICE TYING EACH KNOT IN THE SITUATION IN WHICH IT WILL BE USED.



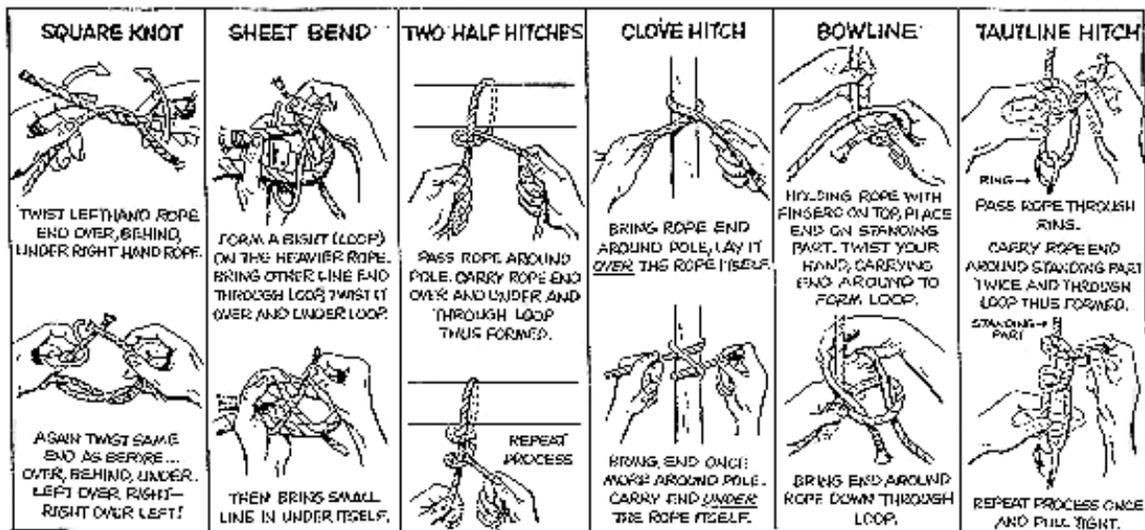
BEFORE TYING KNOTS LEARN HOW TO **WHIP** A ROPE TO KEEP IT FROM UNRAVELING



## THESE ARE SOME USEFUL KNOTS



## HERE'S HOW TO TIE THEM



Click here for:



Printable forms, checklists, maps and reports in PDF format. You must have the free Adobe Acrobat Reader plug-in to view and print these files. Get the latest version here:





[\[Campfire\]](#) [\[Troop Info\]](#) [\[Scout Creed\]](#) [\[Related Sites\]](#)  
[\[Other Troops\]](#) [\[Calendar\]](#) [\[Scouting in Woodbury\]](#)

Last update performed on February 24, 2002  
©2002 xSiteDesign

# Baidarka Instruction Manual



## Building the 6.6m and 5.28m

### Dyson Baidarka

*(Editor's Note: Craig nicely sent me a stack of photo's to scan in. In the interest of disc space I did not include all of them. For some I substituted pictures I already had for [Tom Clark's](#) article. Nick)*

You are about to build one of the lightest, fastest, most comfortable and most seaworthy kayaks available. This 2000 year old design will be a delightful surprise on your maiden voyage.



### What type of boat should I build?

My first skin boat was the 6.6 Meter 2 hatch design with rudder and sail. What a gorgeous craft..... I could not believe how well it paddled and sailed my first time out. Great primary stability, (so good that secondary stability has fortunately not yet been experienced). It handles well in rough seas and is quite speedy in calm water. Depending on crew -- expect 3.5 -- 4.5 knots average over all.

I included 1/2" X 3" ship's teak battens in my first kayak which ran the length of inside deck. These 4 strips definitely added to the appearance of the craft's interior, but after some time I found that the extra weight (15lb) was not worth the trade off in weight and foot room. I then removed these wood battens and found car top loading and unloading to be much easier.

The finished 6.6m Baidarka weighed 86lb with the wood battens and 71lb without the battens. This was with the 26 oz. skin. The construction time was approximately 200 hours. I would expect the same finish time from a first time builder with moderate mechanical ability.

The 6.6m Baidarka also paddles reasonably well solo from the rear seat. Be sure to put a cover over the front hatch. Paddling the 6.6 by yourself is a good work out. It is not difficult to make above 3 knots.

Sailing the 6.6m Baidarka is exhilarating. The sail rig (for down wind sailing only) can be made for about \$30 to \$50 but I decided to have the mast made for the Baidarka on a large wooden lathe at a cost of \$47.00. The sail was made by a local sail maker for \$150. I later put windows in the sail as this helps the pilot see where he is going. Of course a wind at your back is best as there is no center or side board to keep you from slipping side ways. Experimenting with different wind directions is a lot of fun. But be very careful as a strong side wind will capsize you. I also attached cleats (need picture??) and reinforced them with stainless steel braces running forward and attached to station #4. Be careful not to position anything on deck where it might interfere with your paddling stroke or bang up your knuckles.

For the rudder system I used the designed set up and attached "Necke" steering pedals to aluminum sheet metal brackets sewn to the stringers. Cabling was easily run through plastic tubing and affixed with plastic wire ties (see pic 1). To draw and lower the rudder I tried many different approaches and found that the rigging (see pic ??) worked best. The rudder sometimes needs a tap from your paddle if you have pulled it to the full up position. This is especially true if there is sand in the mechanism.

The 5.28m (17.32 ft.) is also a wonderful craft. It weighs less (38lb) with the 14 oz skin, is a single and doesn't have a sail. Also, at George's urging I am trying this Baidarka without a rudder and find it very stable and tracks well.

I am very pleased with the 5.28m Baidarka's performance in calm water as well as a rough confused sea. It is wonderful to be able to toss this boat on your shoulder and just walk down to the shore. As opposed to needing a set of wheels or a strong partner (see pic ??) which are necessary with the 6.6m Baidarka.

Construction time of the 5.28m Baidarka is less than 100 hours depending on your experience. I purchased the tubing already bent for this craft and saved at least 15 hours work. Bending tubing can be difficult and wasteful the first time around as it takes a "special touch" to get it right. Although it is fun to learn this technique.

## USEFUL TOOLS

- Band saw or saber saw. I prefer a 1/4" wide blade with 16 teeth per inch (TPI)
- Bic lighter
- Clamps ("C", handy, spring type)
- Deburring tool
- Drill press or hand drill. A small drill press is almost a necessity.
- Files (1/2" round, 3/4" round, flat)
- Grinder or belt sander (optional)
- Hand sander (optional)
- Hemostats

- Leather glove. See pictures for various themes on this item. Cut and modify to suit yourself.
- Metric tape measure (24 ft.). This may be hard to find but it is convenient when laying out the stations.
- Net needle
- Respirator mask (for coating and cutting fabric)
- Seam ripper (optional)
- Sewing Needles. Sail makers needles both straight and curved are a must.
- Small tube cutter
- Soldering iron with flat cutting tip
- Spring loaded center punch
- Tube bender 1/2"
- Vise
- Wire cutters
- Work bench



Tubing Bender

Assorted Tools





Modified Gloves

I understand that it is possible to mount the station supports on a shop wall and build outward instead of upward. Good Luck

## SUPPLIES NEEDED

- Acetone (less toxic than Xylene)
- Contact cement (not water soluble type)
- Cutting lubricant
- Electrical ties
- Fine tip marker for layout
- Foam blocks (for holding kayak while painting)
- Foam plugs (for tubing ends)
- Nylon washers (for tie down points)
- Paint brushes
- Ply-wood for tube bending patterns
- Silacone sealant (for tubing ends)
- Steel "tie" wire (for holding frame parts in place)
- Tubing splices (if susing short tubing length)
- Vaseline (for bending tubing)
- Xylene



Materials from the kit

## SHEET METAL PARTS

At first one might be a bit over taken by the massive number of holes (6.6 m = 1,730 and 5.28m = 1,300) that must be drilled but I have found with proper center punching they go rather quickly.



The burnished combing

First of all, don't bother laying everything out with dye and scribing cutting lines. It is faster and much cleaner to cut out the part patterns from the blueprints and then glue them in place with rubber cement, wall paper glue or double sided tape. Be sure to leave 1/2 inch border around the cutting lines. This way you have a better view of where you are cutting.

Hole drilling started with an automatic or self loading spring type center punch. I have found it best to center punch all the holes after taping the blueprints to the aluminum. This way if your pattern moves while you are working you can realign easily on the center punch marks.

Drill the 1/2" and 3/4" holes, in the bulkhead pieces, which end up being cut in half when you band saw the outside of the pieces. If you don't drill these holes first you will have to hand file them later.

An adjustable hole cutting bit "fly cutter" is the only economical way of cutting the large diameter holes. Be very careful to hold the metal tightly in place and use the right speed on the drill press. Look out for the spinning arbor it is a real knuckle buster. Be sure to use a wood backing plate when cutting these holes. A good tip when using the "fly cutter" is to cut half way through the metal and turn it over and finish your cut from the other side. Somehow this just works better.

Some have used a saber saw to cut the larger holes.

Most of the sheet metal cutting is done with a band saw or saber saw. (stop picture) Practice with scrap to be sure you have the right blade. I use a 1/4" 16 TPI blade for this. Some suggest 18 TPI, 3/8-1/2 inch blade.

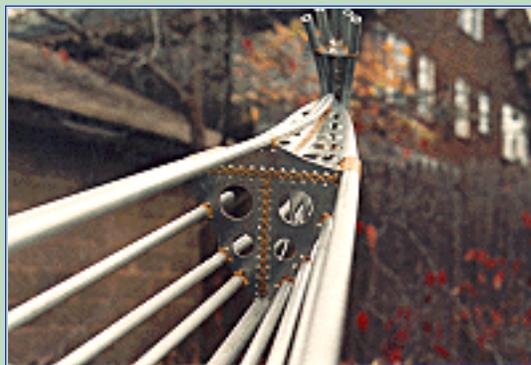
After all the cuts are finished file and deburr the edges. The deburring tool pictured (pic #) is a wonderful and cheap tool for this operation. Otherwise you can simply use a hand file.

Drill the small lacing holes and use a single flute counter sink on both sides of the hole. Be sure to visually re-inspect each hole for a clean counter sink otherwise you will end up breaking your lashings. This inspection can be done also by feel. Running your fingers over the holes. The ideal counter sink would be as follows.

Insert picture of counter sink

Clean all pieces with Acetone, solvent or soap and water. This is done so that later the epoxy will stick to the lashings and aluminum. You might also burnish these flat parts to make them look better. Scotch Brite works well.

## LACING THE STEM (BOW) AND STERN



Bow of [Tom Clark's](#) Baidarka

Note: discuss types of thread etc. I have no input on this....

Lacing all the pieces to together is a simple task but takes a bit of time and concentration. Use steel wire or electrical ties and bind all pieces together in place. Use a single length of the nylon thread and a straight needle.

George sells good needles, straight and bent, but you can get all kinds of other sizes and shapes at your local sewing shop.

The stern top piece is called out to be pre-bent in between the center line of holes. I have done this and the bend tends to follow either one set of holes or the other and thus becomes off center. So be careful. I have also just pulled this piece in place and lashed it down. This works well.

Start your lashing wherever you please but be sure to hide any knots so you can't see them.

Also, be sure to position knots where the skin won't later touch them and create a lump.

TIP: It is best to use thread length of no more than twice the width of your arm span otherwise you will spend a lot of time untangling unwanted knots and snarls.

## **CORROSION:**

Corrosion is a problem when using any type of metal for construction. The most important thing to consider is not to have more than one type of metal in contact with another, i.e. aluminum tube with a brass plug or stainless steel bolts. This combination will create a very accelerated corrosion situation. Many thoughts have been considered regarding the frame corrosion problem including anodizing and coating the frame parts. Both solutions have their own adverse effects. For example, anodizing makes the metal more brittle and will wear off in areas of friction. This will then concentrate any corrosion. Another problem is that coatings and anodizing will crack when flexed. As this craft is built to flex the problem of cracking is obvious.

The best solution so far is to simply use the tubing and sheet aluminum as supplied and keep your kayak well flushed with fresh water.

After a time you will notice some corrosion but don't be too concerned as it will eventually cover itself with a white film and thus slow down its sewing progress. Eventually, your frame will become structurally impaired but this happens to all types of craft as well as our own bodies. How you take care of your craft and body dictates how long it will last.

## **TUBE BENDING AND CUTTING**



A Hi-Tech vise

I have found that cutting tubing with a band saw leaves a cleaner edge than a tube cutter. This is important when you are using tube splices. Be sure to have a square cut so the butt joints match well. If this cannot be done on the band saw then use a tube cutter.

Tubing can be purchased in three different configurations. The best is full lengths, but UPS does not ship packages over nine feet. Therefore you can either pick up full lengths or pay for extra shipping.

I have found that splicing the tubing after it has been cut to 9 ft. lengths is satisfactory but be careful to have the splices fully inserted into each piece.

The third way to purchase the tubing is to have it cut and bent by George. Pre-bent tubing is well worth the added cost. You might be able to purchase lengths locally but I have not had much success finding the right wall thickness. I think the local salespeople put it to those of us who only purchase small amounts at a time.

Note: That lengths in cm on the plans are for finished lengths.

Do not cut your rib tubing exactly to length before bending. It is best to leave 2-4 inches on each side of the tube so that you can cut to length, matching the blueprint, after the bend is done. You will see the wisdom in this after you do your first bend. Installing splices to connect the tubing is a little tricky. I have experimented with different ways of inserting splices including heating the tubing (not recommended). The best way is to mark the center of each splice for reference as to how much splice goes into each tube. Without this reference you may end up with a short piece of splice in the tube, thus creating a weak spot.

Note: Be sure that all the ends of the tubing are cut flush.

Be sure there are no burrs on the ends of the tubing or else the splices will gall (bind). Next compress the splices with vice grips or a vice and slide the splice into the tubing as far as possible

do the same on the other end of the splice. At this point you must hold one piece of the tubing in a jig or some other type of contraption. I simply held the tubing flat and secure by screwing a piece of wood to my work bench with the tubing in between. This holds the tubing straight and secure. I then hammer the two pieces together using a piece of wood to protect the end of the tubing. Keep an eye on the center of the splice. If one side is going in to the tube too fast use vice grips to hold it in place until the other end catches up. If a splice is loose expand it by putting a screw driver blade into the slot and twist.

Note: The cut and bent tubing that George sells come with a set of plans and markers on each cut tubing. Be sure to follow this direction.

I used 2 sheets of 3/4" pressed board (ply-wood is better) screwed together as my jig for bending. I then used 2" X 3/8" aluminum doweling for positioning pegs. You will be well served to look carefully at the pictures and read the text in the book Baidarka regarding tube bending.

Note: You will only need to purchase a 1/2" tube bender as sends the 3/4" tubing already bent and slotted.

Be sure to practice a few bends before you work with the final parts.

The blue prints have pivot points plotted where you place the tube bender alignment dowel. As with the flat metal parts, glue, tape or paste the blueprints to the jig board, and work from the print. You may use the same board for different tubes. I got a bit mixed up with drilling all those holes in one board. It may be better to can flip the board over and start again on the back side. Be sure that any subsequent hole layouts do not come near previously drilled holes, otherwise your new hole might drift into another hole used on a previous bend. I used a hand drill for most of the holes.

I used a dowel jig attachment on a hand drill to make my holes were perpendicular to the flat surface of the board. The size of the hatch coaming can be changed to accommodate different sized paddlers. It can be made wider or longer depending on your needs. If you have long legs you may want to make this part longer. If you have a large bum you may want to make this part wider. I would suggest going to your local kayak shop and trying different size hatches then build yours to fit your needs. A spacer in the hatch coaming sheet metal part should make up for any added length due to your modification. **SHOW PICTURE FOR LOCATION**

In bending the hatch coaming tubing... I made it match the drawing which was pasted to a bending jig. The upward bend of the tubing was done by putting plywood over the coaming ring and having my son stand on it, then slowly bending it upward a little at a time till it met the drawing....

As for bending the hatchway tube, there are no bending centers on the drawing because it is an incremental bend, you just walk the bender around the tubing following over the pattern. A symmetrical job is possible by starting in the middle of the tube, (clamp the beginning solidly to your table) and bend one half of the coaming, then flip it over and bend the same half again (same goes for ribs). This way you are infinitely more likely to end up with two halves that mirror each other than trying to bend the whole thing from one end to the other. Getting a good hatchway on the first try is tricky but not impossible. Take your time...

## ASSEMBLING THE FRAME



The most critical part of this operation is to have the frame supports cut out and precisely placed on the strong-back (work bench)

I built a work bench (see Pic) out of 3/4" pressed board and 2X4's. This made a nice flat surface on which to work. My frame supports were made from 3/4" pressed board and were attached to the bench with dry wall screws. (see pic). Any old scrap from 1/4" on up will make good frame supports.

Alignment of the frame supports is done by running a piece of nylon thread through each frame support and then centering the supports on the thread. Attaching the top portion of each station is done by sewing in place a gussett or knee. You will find that there are three different types knee design for this area.

### 1. The insert design.

Where the knee is inserted into a slot made in the tubing. This is the strongest support but is time consuming to do and some think it is over engineered for the strength needed. 2. The bent tab design

This design is very strong but incorporates two pieces for each joint. It too is a bit over engineered.

### 3. The simple design

The simple design is the one that comes with the plans as of today. It is very easily cut out and installed but does not provide rigidity until the ridge beam is installed.

I have used all three types of installation and found each to be acceptable. I will stick with the simple design as it takes less time.

Once the knees have been cut out and holes drilled, assembly takes place in a large vice or calmping device (pic). The two pieces of tubing must be held flat and in place while the knee is sewen in place. A tight lashing does the trick. Don't forget to put plugs in the ends of the tubing.

Putting the frame together is a matter of simply starting at the bow and working aft. Be sure to check and double check alignment of each station as well as being sure that all ribs are vertical. George suggests marking each rib from the blue print as to where each stringer goes later on.

Don't forget to file the 3/4" groove in each station before attempting to put the frame together.

As each part goes into place, tie it with either wire or plastic ties. Then remove them as you do your lashing.

## LASHING THE TUBING



Lashings will show through the skin so don't be concerned. Knots tied in the wrong place will also show. You might want to put a small piece of fabric over the lashings and inside the outer skin to protect against chaffing in the stem and stern areas where the gunwale terminates.

Note: You might want to put a piece of fabric over the lashings which attach the gunwales to the stem and stern. These areas are somewhat sharp. This application will prevent the skin from chaffing.



I have also found that there are only two basic knots used in lashing the kayak together. The overhand loop and the half hitch. The overhand loop (see pictures) is used to start or anchor the lashing and the half hitch is used for finishing the lashing. In the case where you run out of thread, I do not try to attach two lengths together, instead I simply start again with another knot.

Lashing the tubing is simple but tedious. Be sure to use the half hitch tie off method in the diagram. This will pull the lashing tight and hold it in place. It is also a good idea to melt the ends of the lashings with your Bic lighter. An alternative is to leave the lashings ends long and burn them off later with a soldering iron.

You will want to use a net needle (see Pic) for this operation as well as have your hand or hands covered with leather gloves with all but the little fingers removed.

You might turn the frame upside down for tying the lower lashings. This makes it easier on your back. the frame regains its shape when reattached to the frame.

## EPOXYING THE LASHINGS

After the frame is lashed together and aligned leave it attached to the frame supports. This will keep it in shape during the epoxy.

I have used West Systems epoxy and found it to be very easy to work with. Any "laminating or coating" epoxy will do. The thinner the better. INSERT CANADIAN BRAND OF EPOXY

Be sure to read and understand the instructions on the epoxy. Otherwise you may end up with a coating that doesn't dry properly.

Clean all surfaces with Acetone.

Lightly brush on a coat of epoxy to all lashings. Look out for drips and do not try to do the under side of the lashings. Reinspect for drips frequently.

After the first coat dries (per the instructions) remove the frame from the supports and turn it over. Now coat the bottom of the lashings. A second coat may be applied over the first coat.

This operation will increase the stiffness of the frame.

## ATTACHING THE SKIN



You'll probably be so excited at this point that you will want to rush. DON'T... This is a very important phase of construction and should be done with care to provide a pleasing look. It also doesn't take that long, so take your time. Mistakes made here can be irreversable. You may want to install carrying handles prior to attaching the skin. I used 1/4 inch nylon rope with 3/4 inch PVC handles. Attaching these in the vicinity of the aluminum sheet stations is a good idea as this is a very strong area. (see picture)

I would suggest that you use the 14 or 15 oz skin for most applications. For the double 15oz X 72" wide skin is OK. I used the 26 oz skin on my 6.6 and found it to be nice looking, easy to work with, but very heavy and overkill as to puncture resistance. The 24 oz skin also soaks up a lot of Hyplon. On the 6.6, I would have saved about 12 pounds if I had used the lighter skin.

Nylon shrinks. This is very important as you do not want to make your initial fitting too tight. One's tendency is to pull the skin too tight. I found while constructing my second boat that you can leave the skin fairly wrinkled and still end up with a tight fit after shrinking is complete.

### **Notes on shrinking:**

1. Even a heavy fog in the air will shrink your boat's skin noticeably.
2. It only necessary to use a fine mist from a spray bottle.
3. Don't bother putting your boat in the sun to dry, it will shrink
4. in the shade.
5. Nylon shrinks 10%, hence, so you will see a tighter fit around the midsection of the boat as there is more material in this area. Leave this area really loose.
6. Even 6 months after you boat is finished you will still notice shrinkage and expansion due to water inside your boat and the ambient temperature.

What we are trying to do is find a middle ground on the tightness issue. The stringers and gunwales of my 6.6 Baidarka bend and release due to temperature even after 2 years.

How lose is too lose before you shrink? Be able to easily put your thumb in between the fabric and deck stringer. **DO NOT USE A HEAT GUN TO SHRINK THE FABRIC** except in very small defined areas such as around the hatch coaming or to take out specific wrinkles.

The first step is to turn your frame upside down and rest it on a few of the station supports. Snap a center line on the cloth and center the cloth on the keel.

Be sure to ask George to ship you 1 foot of extra cloth if this is your first boat. You'll find out why later. I held my material in place with easy clamps. 3 or 4 should do the job nicely. Now stitch a single running stitch along the gunwales to hold the fabric in place.

Use a large curved needle and don't be afraid to make this a tight stitch. 3" upholstery needles work well also.

Turn the boat over and cut away all fabric not needed with a hot knife. Be sure to leave an over lap of at least 2 inches on the deck stringers. Do not cut fabric away from the stem, stern or hatch coaming yet.

Now start in the middle of the kayak and work outward fore or aft. Run a basting stitch (single line with curved needle) along the deck stringer. This will hold the fabric in place while you sew and

cut the final seam.

I have in the past cut through the deck stringer lashing with the hot knife during this operation. In subsequent cutting and sewing operations I have taken a piece of 1/2" PVC pipe and cut it in half on the band saw. I then place this over the deck stringer and use it to back up my hot knife cuts. When finished with the cutting and sewing I simply remove this spacer. In addition, this extra spacer allows for a looser fabric.

I use two needles to sew this deck seam. I start by marking each side of the fabric with sewing marks (1cm apart) and then proceed by using a cross stitch.

IXIXIXIXIXIXIXIXIXIXIXI (X on top I under the skin)

Use a single thread. Cut away about 6 inches of the fabric then sew with one needle and then the other. Be sure to keep the seam straight. Use a hot knife to smooth rough edges on the fabric before you sew. When finished this seam is extremely strong. Don't be concerned about the seam unraveling as Hyplon seals this area well.

Once you have reached the stem area be sure to baste enough extra fabric in the (inside mouth area) of the jaw.

Start sewing along the top of the stem, up around and into the mouth area. Continue sewing and cutting fabric until the end of the mouth area is reached then start going forward toward the Horn or Prow area. Stop about 3 inches before the top of the prow. Now turn the kayak upside down and make your bottom cut starting at the point where the fabric begins to be loose. Cut away excess fabric and start sewing up the prow and stop about 3 inches before the top of the prow.

The top of the prow is finished at your own discretion. I have done a (dart) type of inverted peace sign and also a (cap) type of seam. (see Pics). As discussed previously, practice will reward you with a better job.

The stern area is also a little tricky in that as you approach the narrow stern the seam tends to pull off center. In order to reduce this tendency, alternate from side to side every 2 inches or so. Camp the opposing side as you go aft.

The vertical stern stitching is done after folding the fabric inside of itself about 1/2 inch then working up and down the vertical stern sewing holes.

The fabric around the aft keel area must be lashed and sewn to make a water tight seal.

Attaching the skin to the hatch coaming is not tricky although it is a bit time consuming.

First, sew the lower part of the skin to the bottom of the hatch coaming. When sewing a long seam like the hatchway circumference, you can save time (and a knot or two) by starting with (about) 3 circumferences of twine, use half the length going clockwise, then the other half counterclockwise, you'll meet back where you started. The two stitches are out of phase, so combined they give a

very neat stitch. Hide any knots under the tubing on the inside.

Next cut the fabric at the top of the hatch coaming with a hot knife. Make it level with the top of the coaming. (some people fold it over to the inside of the coaming and sew it there). I cut it at the top and then attach the rope around the hatch coaming with a barber poll type stitch using the top holes of the coaming and putting the fabric in between the metal and rope. Be sure to stretch the fabric as you go in order to take the wrinkles out.

The butt joint of the hatch coaming rope can either be sewn in place or covered with a piece of fabric. I have found that this section looks more finished with a cover piece sewn in place. You might try to leave enough fabric (from the verticle covering of the hatch coaming) in place to pull over this joint.

When the skin is in place and finished take a misting type spray bottle and mist the outside of the skin and let it dry. Be sure to keep the seams straight as this process proceeds. A properly tight skin should feel less taught than a bongo drum and tighter than a well maid bed. Kind of like the skin on your forehead. Try to take additional small wrinkles out with more misting.

## **KEEL WEAR STRIP**

The keel wear strip is very critical to long term use of your Baidarka, especially in the areas of the bow and stern. These areas are exposed to a great deal of wear.

After the skin is installed and shrunk into place cut the wear strip to length and round the edges at each end. Rounding the edges will help keep the strip from coming loose. Use contact cement to attach the strip to the skin. I have found a solvent based product such as DAP Weldwood to work effectively.

I tried a water based cement and found that it did not hold well. Use at least 2 coats on each surface for a tight bond. Be sure to center the strip and run it from the stern all the way up the stem (front).

Do not mask off the area to be cemented as it will leave an ugly line where the glue is not in contact with the wear strip.

After attaching the strip iron it down with a roller device such as a wall paper seam roller.

Note: The material sold by George adheres to the curved section of the Prow well on the 6.6 but wrinkles a bit on the 5.28. You might want to make a few small cuts in this area to make the strip lay down.

Any 1.5 inch webbing should also work for this application but it should be flexible enough to mold to the keel. Some have used additional (left over) nylon material but this is difficult to cut straight.

## REPAIRING THE SKIN.

As you might already know, many kayakers of old were able to make repairs while in the water. This was done by rafting a few boats together and flipping the injured craft upside and making the repair right on the spot. How novel.

The only repair I have had to make so far was when I split the seam on between the two hatches on my 6.6 meter Baidarka. I did this because the skin was too tight and was bending the stringers. I had to release the tension. The repair process in this case was as follows:

Remove all frayed or bulky material with a soldering gun cutting tip. Use a double length of nylon line and a very long needle or curved needle depending on the type of blind sewing needed. Make pilot holes with a hot nail for each stitch opening. This is necessary on the thick fabric but might not be needed on the 14 oz fabric. Sew up the "wound" as well as possible making sure that locking stitches are used so that the seam will not unravel if one stitch gives way.

Next, glue a piece of fabric over the stitches and coat with Hyplon. Minimum of 3 coats. This will hold very well and look fairly good if done with care and attention to detail.

Note: Should the hull of your craft need replacing for any reason, think about cutting a line at the gunwale and removing the old hull. Then sew a new piece of fabric to the hull and cover the seam with webbing. This will save a lot of work, fabric and Hyplon.

## DECK ATTACHMENTS

Deck attachments should be firmly sewn to the ridge beams or deck stringers. A rule of thumb should be that the empty kayak should be able to be supported by a single attachment.

I have used nylon washers purchased at the hardware store. These washers are 1/16 inch thick and are 1/2 inch O.D. X 3/8 inch I.D.. George uses a PVC tubing ? X ?. One of the problems is that it is hard to blind stitch these pieces in place. George uses a curved needle for this purpose. I have used a small person inside the kayak to feed the needle back and forth.

Three or four stitches will hold the rings in place and the knot is terminated by using a double half hitch. I mask the rings and then apply Hyplon around the area covering the stitching.

## HYPLON COATING

Hyplon is a brain burner so be sure to wear OSHA approved breathing mask otherwise you will have problems with mentation during the final stages of the project.

Xylene is the only thinner to use with Hyplon.

DO NOT USE Xylene SUBSTITUTES as they do not mix.

Before you put your first coat on be sure to burn off all fuzz balls on the fabric. this is done with a blow torch or lighter. Without this procedure those little fuzz balls will look like golf balls when filled with Hyplon

Hyplon is very forgiving as it dries out. I was very disappointed with drips and runs during my first boat. But later found that as the material dries out that drips and runs seem to shrink.

My experience with coats of Hyplon has been best with the following formula. First coat mix 50/50 and re-thin during initial application if necessary. Second coat 40% thinner 60% Hyplon  
Subsequent coats 30% thinner 70% Hyplon

Always thin as you apply to keep an easy flowing coat.

Be sure to build a well padded support platform for both the top and bottom of the kayak. Or use foam blocks (see pic) I tried using clearwrap over foam blocks and found that even the clearwrap left wrinkles in the skin. Be very careful in this respect as wrinkles cannot be removed.

I have tied down my boat after more than a month of cure time and found that the tie-down straps left marks in the skin. During each application I would suggest that you start at one end or the other and proceed toward the other end switching sides each 2 feet.

My suggestion regarding coats would be to apply 2 or 3 coats in one day, allow to dry, flip the boat over and do 2 or 3 coats and so on. Try to feather the coats at the gunwales.

## OUTFITTING



A drain plug

Seats are a very personal accouterment of the finished craft. I have tried every conceivable type of seat from regular open cell upholstery foam to Spenco jelly (used on bicycle seats). I have found a closed cell, molded seat sold by Southwind Kayak (So. California) to be very comfortable on the bum during long trips. I also carry along two self inflating camping pillows for comfort. One for my back and one for under my knees. I also pad the knee braces on the 5.26 meter, which are built into the hatch coaming, with 1/2 inch closed cell foam.

Regarding foot peddles, I suggest using rigid peddles in the front cockpit on the 6.6 meter Baidarka and steerable foot peddles on the rear seat. My preference is the fixed pedals be supplied by George and Necke adjustable peddles for the rudder system.

In the single 5.28 meter I have installed Necke adjustable peddles and have tied them off to keep them stable. I may need them later if I decide to install a rudder.

Floatation is also a consideration. I am using beach balls currently but would suggest investing in a good set of puncture resistant floats. Floats are necessary in case your boat fills with water. Be sure to have floats in both ends of your kayak, otherwise it may end up looking like a channel buoy.

Regarding foot peddles, I suggest using rigid peddles in the front cockpit on the 6.6 meter Baidarka and steerable foot peddles on the rear seat. My preference is the fixed pedals supplied by George (Yakima made by North West Design works) and the Necke adjustable peddles for the rudder system.

In the single 5.28 meter I have installed Necke adjustable peddals and have tied them off to keep them stable. I may use them later if I decide to install a rudder.

Floatation is also a consideration. I am currently using a good set of puncture resistant floats. Floats are necessary in case you flip and your boat fills with water. Unless you have a good amount of boyancy you will not be able keep ahead of water sloshing over the hatch coaming. This is a very real senario. Be sure to have floats in both ends of your kayak, otherwise it may end up looking like a channel buoy.

I had my foot pedals poke holes in on of my float bags so be careful not to pinch the bag when adjusting the pedals.

**GENERAL NOTES:** Most hull damage is encountered while transporting the kayak. Roof racks come in many different configurations (see Pic) but it is very important to support the bow of the kayak. A flag on the rear is also important to attract the attention of other dirvers and to remind you of your rear backing limit.

Be careful not to bend your boat when it is filled with water.

## **MODIFICATIONS:**

Hull modifications are possible but not desirable below the waterline as changes in length or width will greatly change the craft's performance.

It is also possible to change the height of the foredeck (for more leg room). This is accomplished by increasing the height of the deck stringer supports.

One of the most popular changes of the design is to either lengthen or widen the cockpit opening to accommodate wider and taller people. This is done by simply changing the size and shape of the

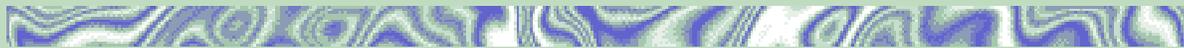
hatch coaming tubing, the coaming flatware and rope. Be sure to order more material if you are contemplating a change.

## SUPPORT:

- **FIRST:** Locate a fellow Baidarka builder in your area For names and phone numbers call Dyson Baidarka & Co. or contact the Baidarka Historical Society
- **SECOND:** Join the Baidarka mailing list on the Internet and post questions there. To join the mailing list send an email item with the following text in the body of the message to [majordomo@imagan.com](mailto:majordomo@imagan.com) "subscribe baidarka"
- **THIRD:** Phone George Dyson at ( 206 ) 734-9226 (probably only fair if you are buying supplies from him.)

## GOOD LUCK

©1996 Craig Kelford Please do not repost, publish, or put this item on ftp or web sites without Craig's permission Craig Kelford II [76763.2331@compuserve.com](mailto:76763.2331@compuserve.com)



[Back](#) to Kayak building page



### [High Performance Wooden Sea Kayak Designs](#)

Send snail-mail to:

Guillemot Kayaks  
824 Thompson St, Suite I  
Glastonbury, CT 06033

Phone/Fax: (860) 659-8847

[Email Guillemot Kayaks](#)

© Nick Schade - All Rights Reserved



# ***Associação Nacional de Cruzeiros***

---

Edifício Álvares Cabral - Cais da Rocha Conde de Óbidos - 1350-352 Lisboa - Portugal  
tel.: +351 21 3958910 / fax.: +351 21 3955117 / email: geral@ancruzeiros.pt

---

## **Arte de Marinheiro**

---

A arte de marinheiro consiste em saber aparelhar um navio a preceito. No tempo da navegação à vela, saber esta arte equivalia possuir um diploma de instrução profissional. Ao contrário dos dias de hoje não havia marinheiro que não soubesse todos os segredos sobre cabos e nós.

A bordo de uma embarcação só existem duas cordas: a do badalo do sino de bordo e a corda do cronómetro. O resto são cabos, qualquer que seja a bitola ou o material de que são feitos.

Básicamente existem 3 tipos de cabos. Os de fibra vegetais (linho, pita, cairo, cânhamo, sisal, algodão, manila) designando-se por enxárcia branca ou alcatroada, os compostos por fios metálicos (arame zincado ou aço inoxidável) e os de fibras sintéticas (nylon, perlon, dacron, kevlar, spectron, etc) mais usados na marinha de recreio.

Os de fibras vegetais não são tão fortes como os de fibras sintéticas e decompõem-se quando molhados. As fibras sintéticas por sua vez detrioriam-se com os raios ultra-violetas do sol, mas a sua variedade e resistência faz com que sejam as mais preferidas na marinha de recreio. Os cabos em aço, por não serem tão flexíveis, não são usados senão no aparelho fixo.



O aparecimento de nós iguais em partes diferentes do globo leva-nos a concluir que alguns deles foram descobertos isoladamente. Julga-se que já eram usados na pré-história pelos homens das cavernas. O nó mais antigo que se conhece foi descoberto em 1923 numa turfeira na Finlândia e cientificamente datado de 7.200 AC.

Também se sabe que os antigos Gregos, Egípcios e Romanos usavam nós com alguma complexidade nas construções de edifícios, pontes e fortificações pelo que não é lícito julgar que apenas os marinheiros são detentores desta arte.

No que respeita ao seu uso na marinha existem registos escritos pelo menos desde o séc.XVII, mas desenhos e figuras mostram que o seu uso é muito anterior a este período.



---

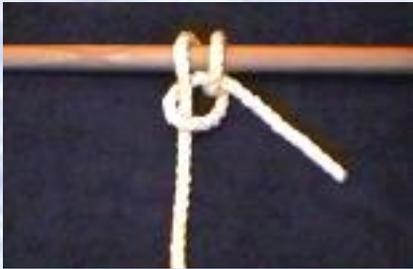
Nós, voltas, falças, mãos, costuras, botões, pontos, pinhas, gachetas e cochins, são trabalhos da *arte de marinheiro*. Os nós são usados quando se pretende unir um cabo a outro, ligar os chicotes do mesmo cabo ou fixar um cabo a qualquer objecto (ex: cabeça, cunho, etc.). Nem sempre se aprendem pelos livros: fazem-se, desfazem-se e tornam a fazer-se sempre que seja possível. A maioria destes trabalhos não tem actualmente utilização prática sendo usados hoje em dia com fins decorativos. Outros porém continuam a ser essenciais em qualquer manobra onde se usam cabos, e por isso tão actuais como sempre o foram.

Um bom exercício consiste em fazê-los com as mão atrás das costas ou de olhos fechados.



### Nós

(Simples, Oito, Frade, Direito, Ladrão, Escota, Pescador, Lais de Guia)



### Voltas

(Fiel, Anete, Redonda, Cunho)



### Outros

(Alça, Falças, Pinha)

---

## Glossário

**Abotoar** - Amarrar ou ligar fortemente dois objectos com botões.

**Alar** - Puxar cabos.

**Alça** - aselha feita no chicote ou num seio de um cabo para receber um trambelho ou passar outro cabo.

**Bitola** - diametro de um cabo.

**Chicote** - extremidade de um cabo.

**Cochim** - entrelaçado de cabos com diversas aplicações a bordo, como defensas, capachos, etc.

**Costura** - trabalho feito nos chicotes de dois cabos para os unir definitivamente ou num cabo apenas para fazer uma *mãozinha*.

**Cote** - volta que se dá como a laçada, mas, depois em vez de o chicote ficar na posição que permite apertá-lo, se puxa por ele na direção do vivo do cabo, ficando assim mordido.

**Descochar** - separar os cordões de um cabo para o desfazer.

**Embotijar** - Cobrir completamente um cabo com um entaçado de fio ou merlim.

**Emendar** - Acrescentar cabo.

**Esganar** - Dar voltas em cruz, comprimindo outras já dadas em botão, cosedura, etc.

**Espicha** - instrumento para trabalhar cabos. Usa-se para alargar os cordões.



**Falçaça** - trabalho feito nos chicotes dos cabos para não descocharem.

**Forrar** - Cobrir completamente um cabo com uma camada de voltas redondas de fio ou merlim.

**Gacheta** - Entrelaçado de cabo, com vários aspectos usado em trabalhos de adorno.

**Gornir** - Enfiar o cabo pelo gorne (abertura).

**Mão** ou **Mãozinha** - espécie de alça num chicote.

**Meia Volta** - cabo que circunda uma única vez.

**Morder** - Entalar ou apertar o cabo para impedir que corra.

**Nó** - entrelaçamento de cabos, quer para os unir, quer para os ligar a um objecto.

**Pinha** - espécie de cabeça de cordões entrelaçados geralmente nos chicotes.

**Recorrer** - Deixar correr as voltas dadas sem as desfazer, folgando-as ou aliviando-as.

**Sapatilho** - aro em meia-cana de forma oval para reforço das alças.



**Seio** - a parte de um cabo que fica entre os chicotes.

**Socar** - Apertar com força e bem, um nó ou uma volta.

**Urdir** - Construir uma pinha.



Página principal da **A.N.C.**



Coloque aqui o seu [correio](#), sugestões, ou informações.

---

Última actualização : 13 de Dezembro de 1999  
Copyright © A.N.C.- Associação Nacional de Cruzeiros

 [Home](#)

 [Boating](#)



We have **7** knots within this category from which you may choose

---

[Bowline](#)

Creates a loop for purposes such as slipping onto a bollard. Quick and will not slip, kink or pinch. Easy to undo.



[Cleat Wind](#)

The recognised way to secure your boat to a cleat. When half formed it presents a holding or adjusting position. Whilst secure, it can still be released very quickly.



[Clover Hitch](#)

A quick way to temporarily secure to a pile or bollard. Handy in that it can be preformed and 'thrown' over a pile.



[Double Half Hitch](#)

Just a quick simple way to secure to a bollard or staunchion in a temporary situation.



[Fisherman's Bend](#)

Usually used for making fast to a buoy or spar.



[Reef Knot](#)

(Figure 8 or Square Knot) - The simplest of knots that will not slip and as easy as the 'granny' anyway. Use only on similar rope thickness. Under stress it can jam and prove difficult to undo.



## Wagoner's Hitch

(Truckies Knot) - Handy for 'strapping' boats to trailers. Advantages are its ease of adjusting and the pull down pressure that can be exerted.



[Click Here  
to Break out  
of a Frame](#)

# BLACK LAKE



## Boating Knots

Knowing how to tie a few basic knots is essential to a boater's security. The art of knot tying is known as "Marlinspike." Good sailors take pride in their ability to chose and tie knots. Below are 7 Basic Knots you should know....If you master these knots, you'll be way ahead of most recreational boaters in your knowledge of marlinespike. For practice, a section of rope six feet long with a diameter of 3/8" is a good size. Tie each knot several times to make a mental picture of the sequence. With practice you'll be able to tie each knot without thinking about it.

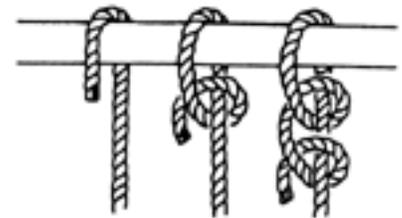
NOTE: The end of the line that you work with in tying knots is called the "Bitter End." The main length of line is the "Standing Part."

---

### Two Half Hitches

This reliable knot is quickly tied and is the hitch most often used in mooring. To tie:

1. Pass end of rope around post or other object.
2. Wrap short end of rope under and over long part of rope, pushing the end down through the loop. This is a half hitch.



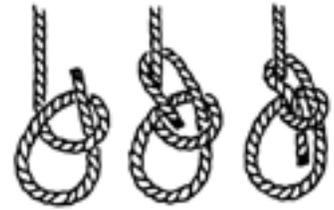
3. Repeat on long rope below first half hitch and draw up tight.

---

### Bowline

This knot doesn't jam or slip when tied properly. To tie:

1. Make the overhand loop with the end held toward you, then pass end through loop.
2. Now pass end up behind the standing part, then down through the loop again.
3. Draw up tight.

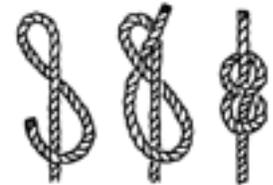


---

### Figure Eight

This knot is ideal for keeping the end of a rope from running out of tackle or pulley. To tie:

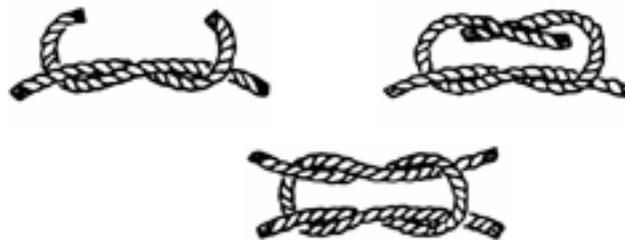
1. Make underhand loop, bringing end around and over the standing part.
2. Pass end under, then up through the loop.
3. Draw up tight.



---

### Square Knot

This knot is used at sea in reefing and furling sails. To tie:



1. Pass left and over and under right end. Curve what is now the left end toward the right and cross what is now the right end over and under the left.
2. Draw up tight.

---

### Anchor Bend

This knot is used to secure a rope or a line to an anchor. To tie:

1. Pass two loops through ring.
2. Place free end around standing line.
3. Pass free end through loops.
4. Complete by making half hitch.



---

### Clove Hitch

This knot is the "general utility" hitch for when you need a quick, simple method of fastening a rope around a post, spar or



stake. To tie:

1. Make a turn with the rope around the object and over itself.
2. Take a second turn with the rope around the object.
3. Pull the end up under the second turn so it is between the rope and the object. Tighten by pulling on both ends.

---

### **Cleat Hitch**



In order to secure the boat to a dock or secure a line to the boat you will probably use the cleat hitch.

1. Take the line to the ear of the cleat furthest from where the line comes from the boat (or load).
2. Take one wrap around the base of the cleat and then start a figure eight across the top of the opposite ear.
3. Finish with a half hitch turned under so that the line is coming away from the cleat in the opposite direction from which it came in.





## Index of Knots and Lashings

---

[Back Splice](#)  
[Bowline](#)  
[Clove Hitch](#)  
[Diagonal Lashing](#)  
[Eye Splice](#)  
[Figure of Eight Lashing](#)  
[Filipino Lashing](#)  
[Fishermans Knot](#)  
[Hunters Bend](#)  
[Japanese Square Lashing](#)  
[Manharness Knot](#)  
[Prussic Knot](#)  
[Reef Knot](#)  
[Rolling Hitch](#)  
[Round Lashing](#)  
[Round Turn and Two Half Hitches](#)  
[Sheep Shank](#)  
[Sheet Bend](#)  
[Square Lashing](#)  
[Whipping of your choice](#)

---

## Other Knotting Resources

- [Knots & Fishing Knots - Animated Knot Tying Programs for Windows](#)
- [Animated Knots for Scouts](#) provided by 42nd BRIGHTON (Saltdean) Scout Group, East Sussex, UK

# Guide to The BSA Knots

Thanks to Michael F. Bowman, the NetCommish, ([mfbowman@usscouts.org](mailto:mfbowman@usscouts.org)), for sharing the artwork displayed here.

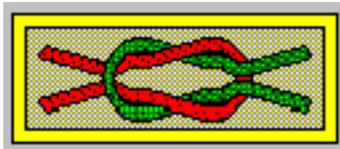
Thanks also to Randy Spradling, Simon Kenton Council, ([freemason@aol.com](mailto:freemason@aol.com)), for his exposition on [How to Wear These Knots](#), from [rec.scouting](http://rec.scouting).

[Full page display of the knots](#) (39K)

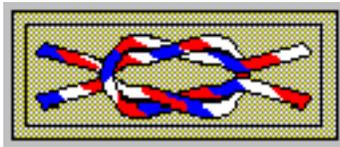
See also Mike Walton's [Knot Page](#) and his instructions for wearing [Devices & Eagle Palms](#) in conjunction with the knots..

---

## Youth Achievement Awards Worn as Adults



[Arrow of Light](#)



[Eagle](#)

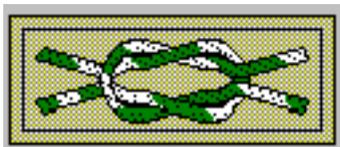


[Quartermaster Award](#)

## Youth Achievement Awards Which May Be Worn as Youth and as Adult

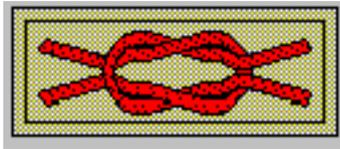


[Religious Award \(Youth\)](#)

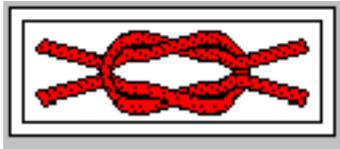


**Hornaday Award**

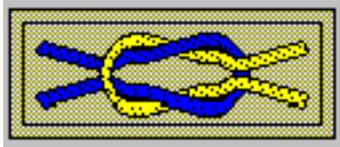
## Lifesaving Awards



**Honor Medal**



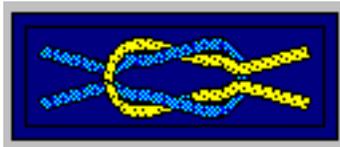
**Heroism Award**



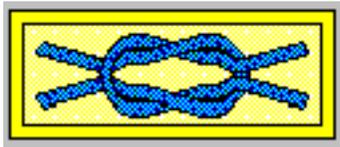
**Medal of Merit**

## Leader Training Awards

**Caution:** These are the latest requirements, sometimes patched from several different sources, that I have at hand and are presented as a guide. To earn any of these awards, you should contact your District or Council Training Committee for the current requirements.



[Cub Scouter Award](#)



[Cubmaster Award](#)



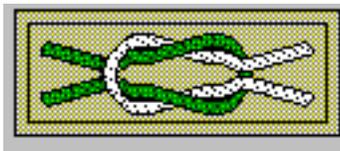
[Den Leader Award](#)



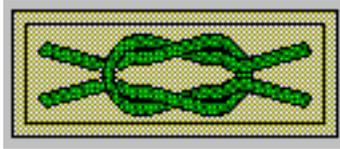
[Den Leader Coach Award](#)



**Professional Training Award**



[Scouter's Key](#)



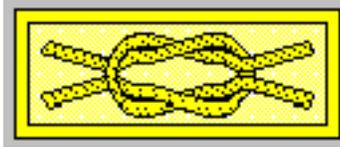
[Scouter's Training Award](#)



Sea Badge



[Tiger Cub Group Coach Award](#)

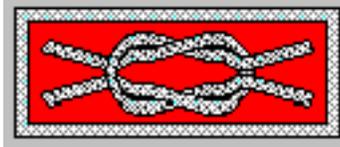


[Webelos Den Leader Award](#)

## Honor Awards

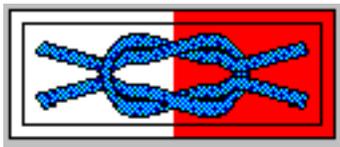


Award of Merit

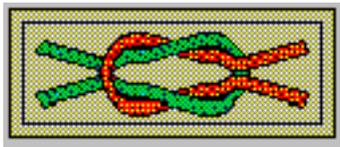


[Distinguished Commissioner Service](#)

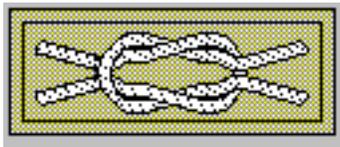
### [Award](#)



George Meany Award

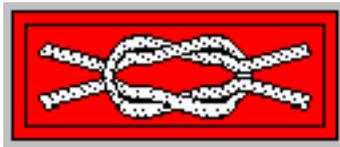


James E. West Award



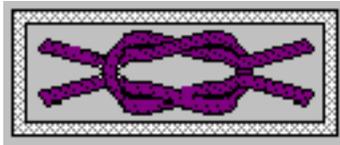
[National President's Scoutmaster Award](#)

of Merit

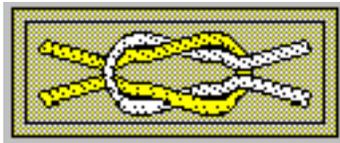


**Order of the Arrow Distinguished Service**

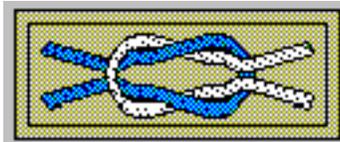
**Award**



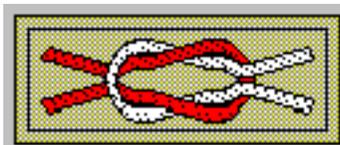
**Religious Award (Adult)**



**Silver Antelope**



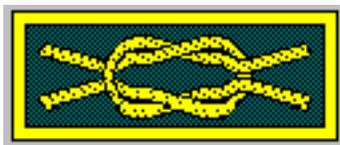
**Silver Beaver**



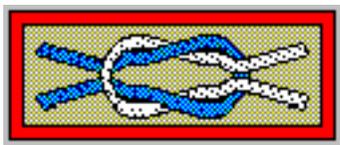
**Silver Buffalo**



**Silver World**



**Spurgeon Award**



**Whitney M. Young, Jr., Award**

---

Return to the [Requirements](#) Page.

Return to Troop **24** Home Page

---

*Last updated: June 30, 1999*

<http://www.emf.net/~troop24/reqs/knots.html>



# Lots About Knots!



Learn to tie these knots!

Courtesy of [Boy Scout Troop 9, Billings, Montana](#)

	<a href="#">Bowline Knot</a>		<a href="#">Clove Hitch</a>		<a href="#">Figure 8 Loop Knot</a>
	<a href="#">Sheep Shank</a>		<a href="#">Sheet Bend</a>		<a href="#">Square Knot</a>
	<a href="#">Tautline Hitch</a>		<a href="#">Timber Hitch</a>		



[Animated knots for Scouts and Guides](#)



[The World Wide Web's Knotting Index](#) - More knot tying

information





[Back to the Scouting Resources Page](#)



[Return to the Pack 982 Home Page](#)